



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

TX 475.2 .T927
Tunstall, Robert Williamson,
Latin ladder : introductory to Caesar /

Stanford University Libraries



3 6105 04926 6690

THE LATIN LADDER

TUNSTALL



SCHOOL OF EDUCATION
LIBRARY

TEXTBOOK
COLLECTION



STANFORD UNIVERSITY
LIBRARIES

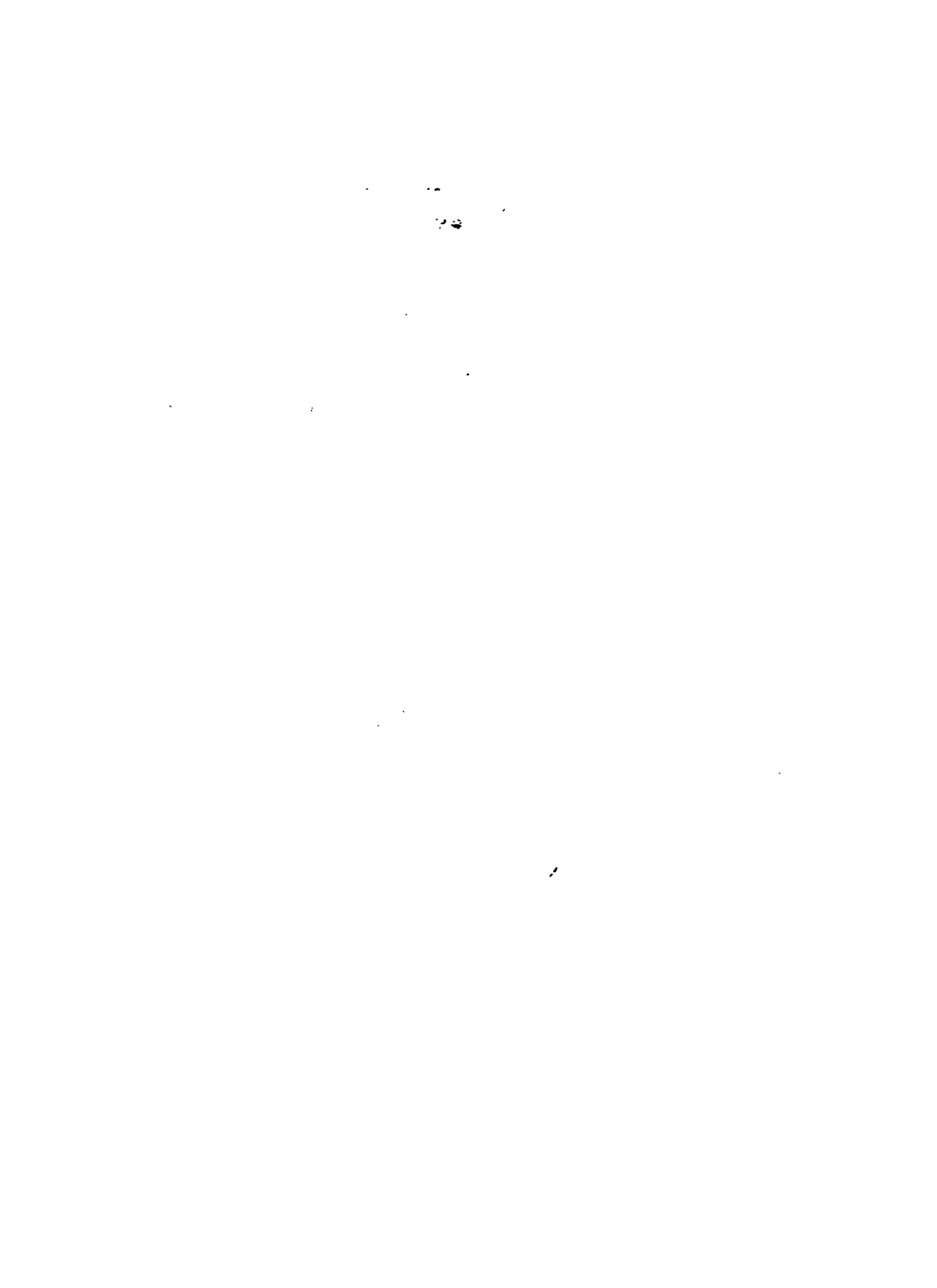




DEPARTMENT OF EDUCATION
LELAND STANFORD JUNIOR UNIVERSITY

THE LATIN LADDER







THE MACMILLAN COMPANY
NEW YORK • BOSTON • CHICAGO • DALLAS
ATLANTA • SAN FRANCISCO

MACMILLAN & CO., LIMITED
LONDON • BOMBAY • CALCUTTA
MELBOURNE

THE MACMILLAN CO. OF CANADA, LTD.
TORONTO



ROMAN LEGIONARY

THE LATIN LADDER

INTRODUCTORY TO CAESAR

BY

ROBERT W. TUNSTALL

THE TOME SCHOOL FOR BOYS

„Wer die Leiter hinauf will, muß bei der untersten Sprosse
schon beginnen.“

New York

THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

1913

All rights reserved

597601

C

COPYRIGHT, 1913,

By THE MACMILLAN COMPANY.

Set up and electrotyped. Published June, 1913.

Norwood Press

J. B. Cushing Co. — Berwick & Smith Co.
Norwood, Mass., U.S.A.

PREFACE

"Most teachers are agreed that slower progress in the first two years would result in more rapid progress in the last two." — G. L., *The Classical Weekly*, April 9, 1910.

"Nine Latin students out of ten turn out to be what the first year makes of them." — PROFESSOR WILLIAM A. HOUGHTON, *The Educational Review*, March, 1906.

"Inflection is the all-important thing in the work of the first year, the thing that must not be slighted, that cannot be postponed. If the pupil in Caesar cannot tell at sight the gender and case of a regular noun, the mode and tense of a regular verb, then your first-year work is a failure." — PROFESSOR H. W. JOHNSTON, *The Classical Journal*, February, 1906.

"The beginner should first be taught very carefully what an inflected language is, how it differs from an uninflected language, and consequently the importance of inflection in the study of Latin. From the first lesson on the first declension he should be taught the structure of a word, and the use of the stem and the ending." — J. E. S., *The Classical Journal*, May, 1906.

"In the treatment of the verb there is need of a very radical revision of the traditional methods. It should be developed synthetically as a logical and regular compound of stem, tense sign, and personal ending." — C. E. JEFFORDS, *The Classical Weekly*, April 9, 1910.

The above interesting quotations might be multiplied almost indefinitely. Being typical, however, they sufficiently indicate the trend of expert opinion on the much-discussed problem of "first-year Latin." They furnish encouraging evidence that the problem is coming to be viewed with an ever-increasing clearness of vision, and justify the following

conclusions : (1) that the work of *the first year in Latin is the most important* of all in the preparatory course ; (2) that the paramount matter in the first year is *inflection* ; (3) that inflection is best taught by emphasizing from the beginning the significance of *stem and ending*.

To these articles of faith, which have inspired *The Latin Ladder*, should be added another, as embodied in the following quotations :

“The gospel of the rod of iron has passed away ; its successor, the gospel of interest, has not yet been accompanied by satisfactory results. Doubtless this is due to the mistaken view of interest which consciously or unconsciously identifies it with amusement.” — W. H. S. JONES, *The Teaching of Latin*, page 65.

“The interest required is not the sort of inducement which is represented by the rubbing of honey round the rim of the cup of medicine. It is rather the pupil's lively desire and readiness to link the new fact to its fellow in the regiment of old facts established in his mind.” — P. A. BARNETT, *Common Sense in Education and Teaching*, page 120.

The last quotation states a verity too often forgotten in school. If the “lively desire” is not conspicuous in the class beginning Latin, its absence is too frequently attributable to a want of “readiness” on the pupil's part, and this want of readiness is doubtless due to one or more of several causes — to the pupil's dulness, to poor teaching, or to the difficulty of the text-book. With the first two of these causes this book is not concerned. For the third, it should be borne constantly in mind that confusion of ideas does not lead to a desire to learn, while a sense of mastery, if anything, may do so. It is essential, therefore, that the beginnings should be simple, and that the whole story should be told, or at least so much of it as may be necessary to make the subject intelligible to the young. Inherent interest in the subject-matter itself must be

looked for in the reading lessons which reward the beginner for his preparatory toil.

The *Ladder* is divided into three parts : Part I, consisting of twenty-one chapters, the object of which may be said to be to orient the pupil ; Part II, forty-eight chapters, the main body of the book ; Part III, principles of syntax, for reference use in Part II. In detail :

Part I is introductory, and contains the following material, treated "piecemeal" in the lesson-book manner :

(1) The indicative active and passive of the four conjugations (including deponent verbs), also the indicative of *sum*,—all in the third person only. Tense stems are introduced in the first lesson proper (Chap. 4), and before the personal endings other than those of the third person.

(2) Nouns of the first and the simpler nouns of the second declension, along with adjectives similarly inflected ; also, an introduction to the third declension.

(3) Three pronouns, used in three cases only.

(4) A few common prepositions treated in some detail.

(5) A chapter devoted exclusively to word order, with illustrative reading matter, — very elementary, designed to emphasize the significance of inflection.

(6) The simpler principles of syntax, the fifteen rules thus introduced being summarized at the end of Part I.

Part II, the main body of the book, presents forms and syntax in *alternate chapters*. The forms are given in the orderly sequence of the grammars. In the alternate chapters on syntax, questions leading up to the composition work and followed by illustrative sentences in Latin form a catechism on the principles set forth in Part III.

Every fifth chapter in Part II is a reading lesson. Every seventh chapter is followed by a review. The reading lessons (even those in Part I) consist of continuous narrative. Those of Part II are based on *Viri Romae* and the Helvetian War.

Part III contains a systematic presentation of the principles of syntax, to be used for reference in Part II, and to facilitate review work when needed. For the sake of greater completeness, this section covers a little more ground than is actually needed in Part II, containing, for example, some uses of the subjunctive in independent sentences as well as the more common uses in dependent clauses.

The vocabularies have been selected with much care, being based on Professor Lodge's helpful book, *The Vocabulary of High School Latin*. The vocabulary reviews following each seventh chapter contain only such words as are printed in full-face type in that book, so that the final word-list for review (in 489) contains only five hundred and three words for mastery.

A full index has been provided.

From the above description it will be seen that the *Ladder* is a compromise between the old and the new type of beginner's books, and that an effort has been made to combine in one book the advantages of both types. Thus, Part I touches upon many things in a fragmentary way as an introduction to the subject, while Part II takes up the matter of inflection in a more systematic manner, but is relieved of monotony by the alternating chapters on syntax as well as by the regularly recurring reading lessons.

A graph representing the difficulties of inflection for beginners would mount highest, first at the *third declension*, then would sag somewhat until the *verb* is reached, when it would rise to a yet higher level. In recognition of these facts of experience, particular care has been exercised in the treatment of these two topics. Thus :

Chapter 4 deals with the *verb* "as a logical and regular compound of stem, tense sign, and personal ending." Nearly one-half of the chapters in Part I deal with the verb in this way, and at the end of this part the whole is summarized for review (149). Personal endings for the first and second persons are postponed to Chapter 39 (following pronouns), after which twelve more chapters are given exclusively to the verb.

Again: the *third declension* is treated in Part II in a single chapter. It is believed that this subject, the source of so much trouble to beginners, has been greatly simplified by the treatment given in Chapter 23.

In the sixty-nine chapters of the book the only uses of the subjunctive introduced are those expressing purpose, result, and indirect questions, and the subjunctive with *cum*. Supplementary lessons follow, however, which deal with temporal clauses, clauses after verbs of fear, conditions, and complex sentences in indirect discourse.

For convenience, the book is divided into chapters, but the chapters have been so "punctuated" with exercises that they may easily be divided into lessons of suitable length.

Possibly some may object that the first part of the book moves slowly. To others this feature will doubtless appeal as a merit. As a matter of fact, however, the pupil who masters Part I will be able to make a synopsis in the third person of any regular verb for the indicative active and passive, besides making much headway in the declensions, learning fifteen fundamental principles of syntax, and acquiring a vocabulary of about one hundred and twenty words. This is surely enough for the time required for mastery. The teacher of the class beginning Latin perhaps needs above all others to be cautioned against undue haste. *Morare paulisper, ut festines*, or, as Bacon puts it, "Stay a little that we may make an end the sooner," is for such teachers a good motto.

Grateful acknowledgment is made to Miss A. S. Rainey, of the Central High School, Washington, D.C., who read the book in manuscript, and offered many suggestions, the adoption of which has added materially to its practical value. Thanks are also due to my assistant, Mr. Charles Mead Benham, for his help in the proofreading.

THE TOME SCHOOL FOR BOYS,
January 30, 1913.

CONTENTS

PART I

CHAPTER	PAGE
1. Definitions	1
2. English and Latin Compared	7
3. Pronunciation	9
4. Formation of Three Tenses	13
5. Three Tenses of moneō	15
6. Formation of Three Cases	17
7. The Second Declension	19
8. Three Cases of bonus, -a, -um	21
First Review	23
9. The Use of Paradigms	24
10. READING LESSON	28
11. First and Second Declensions, <i>Continued</i>	30
12. Third Conjugation, Principal Parts	33
13. Fourth Conjugation, Ablative of Means	35
14. The Perfect System (Active)	37
15. Some Prepositions in Common Use	39
Second Review	42
16. Sum, I am , the Principle of Identity	43
17. Passive Voice, Ablative of the Agent	46
18. Passive Voice, <i>Continued</i>	48
19. Three Cases of the Third Declension	50
20. READING LESSON	53
21. Passive Principal Parts, Deponent Verbs	54
Summaries of Part I (Verbs, Rules, Derivatives)	56

PART II

CHAPTER	PAGE
22. Review of First and Second Declensions, with Additions	60
Third Review	64
23. Third Declension	65
24. Complementary Infinitive, Two Accusatives	74
25. Fourth and Fifth Declensions	76
26. Accusative of Extent, Ablative of Time, Dative with Adjectives	79
27. READING LESSON	81
28. Declension of Adjectives and Participles	83
29. Partitive Genitive, Genitive and Ablative of Quality, Ablative of Cause	90
Fourth Review	92
30. Comparison of Adjectives	93
31. READING LESSON	97
32. Quam , Ablatives of Comparison, Degree of Difference, Specification	99
33. Formation and Comparison of Adverbs	100
34. Objective Genitive, Ablative of Manner, Infinitive and Subject-Accusative as Object	102
35. Numerals	103
36. READING LESSON	105
Fifth Review	107
37. Dative with Intransitive Verbs	108
38. Pronouns (Forms)	109
39. Personal Endings	116
40. Pronouns (Syntax)	119
41. READING LESSON	122
42. Indicative Active	123
43. Dative of the Possessor, Ablative of Separation	127
Sixth Review	128
44. Subjunctive and Imperative Active, Purpose	129
45. Substantive Clauses of Purpose (Volitive Substantive Clauses)	134
46. READING LESSON	136

CONTENTS

xiii

CHAPTER	PAGE
47. Active Voice, <i>Completed</i>	138
48. Relative Clause of Purpose, Dative of Purpose, Double Dative	140
49. The Verb <i>sum</i>	142
50. Clauses of Result, <i>cum</i> -Clauses	144
Seventh Review	146
51. READING LESSON	147
52. Indicative Passive	149
53. Infinitive as Subject, Direct Questions	151
54. Subjunctive and Imperative Passive	153
55. Indirect Questions, Sequence of Tenses	155
56. READING LESSON	159
57. Passive Voice, <i>Completed</i>	162
Eighth Review	164
58. Dative with Compound Verbs	165
59. Deponent Verbs	167
60. Participles, Ablative Absolute	171
61. READING LESSON	175
62. Ablative with <i>utor</i> , etc., Accusative Supine	176
63. Periphrastic Conjugations, Dative of the Agent	177
64. Irregular Verbs	181
Ninth Review	189
65. Gerund and Gerundive	190
66. READING LESSON	193
67. Substantive Clauses of Result	194
68. Simple Statements in Indirect Discourse	196
69. Word Groups	199
WORD LIST (503 Words)	201
General Review	204
SUPPLEMENTARY SYNTAX —	
I. Temporal Clauses	207
II. Clauses of Fear	208
III. Clauses of Condition	209
IV. Complex Sentences in Indirect Discourse	211

	PAGE
SUPPLEMENTARY READING —	
Idioms	213
Helvetian War, <i>Completed</i>	213
MISCELLANEOUS MATTER —	
I. Words, Phrases, Mottoes, etc.	220
II. Common Abbreviations Explained	221
III. Numerals	222

PART III: SYNTAX

· (*For reference use in Part II*)

AGREEMENT	224
SYNTAX OF THE CASES	225
SYNTAX OF THE ADJECTIVE	234
SYNTAX OF THE PRONOUN	235
SYNTAX OF THE PREPOSITION	238
SYNTAX OF THE VERB	239
INDIRECT DISCOURSE	256
LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY	261
ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY	277
INDEX	287

THE LATIN LADDER

1. The first part of the document is a list of names and addresses of the members of the committee.

2.

THE LATIN LADDER

PART I

CHAPTER 1

DEFINITIONS

"It is the general experience of those who teach beginners of Latin in the high school that the first two or three weeks must be spent in driving home such facts as, for example, that a noun may not be conjugated nor a verb declined with impunity."—HECKER, *The Teaching of Latin in Secondary Schools*, p. 29.

1. Parts of Speech. In Latin, as in English, there are eight parts of speech :

Nouns, which are *names*, and Pronouns, which are *substitutes* for nouns; Adjectives and Adverbs, the two kinds of *modifiers*; Verbs, *asserting* words; Prepositions, Conjunctions, and Interjections, words that *do not change* in form.

(a) The so-called Articles in English are limiting adjectives.

2. Subject and Predicate. Every sentence consists of two necessary parts: the Subject, or that about which something is said, and the Predicate, or what is said of the subject. Each may consist of one word or of several.

SUBJECT	PREDICATE
<i>Stars</i>	<i>shine.</i>
<i>Many stars</i>	<i>are shining in the sky.</i>

3. Inflection. In the sentence, *Caesar's enemies killed him*, we see that the words used are modifications of the words *Caesar*, *enemy*, *kill*, and *he*. *Caesar* is changed to *Caesar's* to denote possession or relationship. *Enemy* is changed to *enemies* to denote more than one enemy. *Kill* is changed to

killed to show that the act of killing took place in the past. *He* is changed to *him* because required after the verb *killed*. Such changes in the form of a word for a change in use or meaning are called Inflection. We shall find later that inflection is a very, very important thing in the study of Latin. English also had formerly many inflections, but now has few remaining.

4. Number and Case. The changes, or inflections, made in nouns and pronouns, and (in Latin) adjectives also, indicate their Number and Case. In Latin, as in English, there are two Numbers (Singular and Plural). English has, however, only three Cases (Nominative, Possessive, and Objective), whereas Latin has six. The names and uses of the Latin Cases will be learned later.

5. Declension. The inflection of nouns, pronouns, and adjectives is called Declension; they are therefore said to be "declined." We decline a noun, etc., by giving all the case-forms in both Singular and Plural. Thus, the English personal pronoun *he* would be declined as follows:

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOMINATIVE	<i>he</i>	<i>they</i>
POSSESSIVE	<i>his</i>	<i>their</i> or <i>theirs</i>
OBJECTIVE	<i>him</i>	<i>them</i>

(a) A model like the above, giving all the inflections of a word, is called a Paradigm.

6. Syntax. By Syntax is meant the part of grammar which deals with the *relations of words in sentences*. Thus:

(a) The Nominative has two uses: it is the case of the *subject* (2), as *He runs* (not *him runs*). It is also used after certain verbs of *incomplete meaning*, like the verb *be* (*is, are, was, etc.*), to complete their meaning, as *The man is a poet*. Here *poet* is called a Predicate Noun, and is said to be in the same case as the subject *man*.

(b) The Possessive denotes *possession* or *relationship*.

(c) Some verbs denoting action may be followed by a noun or pronoun to show *upon whom* or *upon what* the action is exerted. Thus, in the sentence, *The man struck the boy*, the noun *boy* names the person affected by the action of the verb *struck* and is called the Direct Object of the verb. It is in the Objective Case, or, in Latin, the Accusative Case.

(d) Verbs are sometimes divided into two principal classes: Transitive verbs, or those with an *object* expressed, and Intransitive verbs, or those with *no object* expressed. The same verb is sometimes Transitive (as *Cain killed Abel*) and sometimes Intransitive (as *Thou shalt not kill*).

7. Gender. Gender in English is determined by sex, that is, nouns or pronouns referring to males are Masculine, to females, Feminine, and to sexless objects, Neuter. Also names common to both sexes (as *parent, cousin, bird*, etc.) are said to be of the Common Gender. In Latin, however, although the names of males are always Masculine and of females always Feminine, yet the names of sexless objects are not always Neuter, but are often Masculine or Feminine, according to rules to be learned later. English is therefore said to have Natural Gender, and Latin to have both Natural and Grammatical Gender.

8. Conjugation. The inflection of verbs is called Conjugation. We "conjugate" a verb by giving all its forms in regular order. Just as nouns, etc., are inflected for Case and Number, so verbs are inflected for Voice, Mood (or Mode), etc., as explained in paragraphs 9–12 below.

9. Voice. There are two Voices, — Active and Passive. When the person or thing affected by the action of a verb (6, c above) is the *direct object* of the verb, the verb is said to be in the Active Voice; when the person or thing affected is the *subject* (2) of the verb, the verb is said to be in the Passive Voice. Thus, *The man struck the boy*, — Active, because *boy*, the person struck, is the *object*; but *The boy was struck by the man*, — Passive, because *boy*, the person struck, is the *subject*.

10. Mood (or Mode). There are three Moods, — Indicative, Subjunctive, and Imperative. The Indicative states a thing as a *fact* or asks a *question* (as *The boys are playing ball; are they playing ball?*). The Subjunctive states a thing, not as a fact, but as *wished* or *supposed* or the like (as *God bless you! If I were king*, etc.). The Imperative *commands* or *requests* (as *Play ball, boys!*).

11. Tense. "Tense" means *time*, but also includes the *kind of action*. There are *three* kinds of time (past, present, and future) and *two* kinds of action (incomplete and completed); hence there are *six* Tenses. Learn these thoroughly and in the following order:

Present, Imperfect (= *past*), and Future, denoting *incomplete action* in present, past, and future time respectively;

Perfect, Pluperfect (= *past perfect*), and Future Perfect, denoting *completed action* in present, past, and future time respectively.

(a) A frequent use of the Present tense, in both English and Latin, is called the Historical Present. To make a story more vivid, we may carry ourselves back into the past and speak of past events as if still going on. Thus, *After conquering Gaul, Caesar returns to Italy*, meaning *returned*.

12. Number and Person. These terms have the same meanings in Latin as in English.

(a) Verbs have the same Number and Person as their subjects, that is, they "agree" with their subjects in Number and Person.

13. Verbals. Two other parts of the verb are the Infinitive (or the Infinitive Mood, as it is also called) and the Participle. The Infinitive is a *verbal noun*, that is, half verb and half noun, and is usually preceded by the preposition *to* (as *to hunt, to swim*, etc.). The Participle is a *verbal adjective*, that is, half verb and half adjective (as *hunting, swimming*, etc.). Other parts of the verb will be learned later.

14. The Finite Verb. The Indicative, Subjunctive, and Imperative, being the only forms of the verb having *person*, are

together called the Finite Verb, because the action or state denoted by the verb is *limited to certain persons*. ("Finite" means *limited*.)

15. The Latin Verb. The following paradigm (5, a) is the translation of a Latin verb in the Indicative Mood. The unfinished tenses should be completed and the whole thoroughly memorized by the pupil.

INDICATIVE MOOD

ACTIVE VOICE

PRESENT TENSE

PASSIVE VOICE

Singular

- | | |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. I see, am seeing, do see | 1. I am (being) seen |
| 2. You see, are seeing, do see | 2. You are (being) seen |
| 3. He sees, is seeing, does see | 3. He is (being) seen |

Plural

- | | |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. We see, are seeing, do see | 1. We are (being) seen |
| 2. You see, are seeing, do see | 2. You are (being) seen |
| 3. They see, are seeing, do see | 3. They are (being) seen |

IMPERFECT TENSE

Singular

- | | |
|--|--------------------------|
| 1. I was seeing, saw, did see ¹ | 1. I was (being) seen |
| 2. You were seeing, saw, did see | 2. You were (being) seen |
| <i>etc.</i> | <i>etc.</i> |

FUTURE TENSE

Singular

- | | |
|-----------------|---------------------|
| 1. I shall see | 1. I shall be seen |
| 2. You will see | 2. You will be seen |
| 3. He will see | 3. He will be seen |

Plural

- | | |
|-----------------|---------------------|
| 1. We shall see | 1. We shall be seen |
| <i>etc.</i> | <i>etc.</i> |

¹ Although the Imperfect and the Perfect have two meanings alike in English, yet they differ in Latin in the way these meanings are applied. Thus, the Imperfect implies *continued or repeated* action (*I saw him every day*), while the Perfect denotes a vague, indefinite past action (*I saw him*) without reference to duration, etc.

ACTIVE VOICE

PERFECT TENSE

Singular

1. I have seen, saw, did see ¹
2. You have seen, saw, did see
3. He has seen, saw, did see
etc.

PASSIVE VOICE

1. I have been seen, was seen
2. You have been seen, were seen
3. He has been seen, was seen
etc.

PLUPERFECT TENSE

Singular

1. I had seen
etc.

1. I had been seen
etc.

FUTURE PERFECT TENSE

Singular

1. I shall have seen
2. You will have seen
etc.

1. I shall have been seen
2. You will have been seen
etc.

(a) Throughout the verb the pronouns *she* and *it* may be substituted for *he* in the Third Person Singular.

16. Caution. Learn the following names for the Present and Imperfect :

Present Indefinite, *I see*

Imperfect Indefinite, *I saw*

Present Progressive, *I am seeing*

Imperfect Progressive, *I was seeing*

Present Emphatic, *I do see*

Imperfect Emphatic, *I did see*

Be careful to distinguish the Progressive forms of the Active Voice (*I am seeing* and *I was seeing*) from the corresponding Passive forms (*I am seen* and *I was seen*). The Progressive forms end with the Present Participle in *-ing* (*seeing*), but the Passive forms with the Passive Participle (*seen*).

17. Exercise on the Verb. Tell the following tenses in the Indicative Active and Passive of the verbs named :

Imperfect of *give*, 2d Per. Singular ; Perfect of *take*, 3d Per. Plural ; Present of *send*, 1st Per. Singular ; Future Perfect of *lead*, 2d Per. Plural ; Future of *hear*, 3d Per. Singular ; Pluperfect of *choose*, 3d Per. Plural.

¹ See footnote on the preceding page.

CHAPTER 2

ENGLISH AND LATIN COMPARED

18. As an introduction to the study of Latin, let us take a Latin sentence and its English translation, and see what we can learn from a comparison of the two. Examine the following:

gladiō pugnābat, *he was fighting with a sword.*

First, we see that the Latin *alphabet* is apparently the same as the English. This is true, except that in Latin there is neither *j* nor *w*.

Secondly, as **pugnābat** (*he was fighting*) is a verb, and **gladiō** (*with a sword*) is a noun, we might infer that the two languages have the same *parts of speech*. This also is true. In Latin, however, there is no exact equivalent for the two articles (*a* or *an* and *the*), so that **gladius** may mean *THE sword* or *A sword* or simply *sword*, according to the meaning required.

Thirdly, in the Latin sentence the word **pugnābat** comes last, while in the English sentence the verb phrase *was fighting* comes at the beginning. This illustrates a very important difference between the two languages: *the Latin verb* normally (that is, regularly) is the *last word* in its sentence.

Fourthly, the most striking difference between the two languages is shown by the fact that it requires *six English words* to translate the *two Latin words*. Why is this? At the end of paragraph 2 above it was said that **gladius** means *a sword*, but in the sentence itself **gladiō** is translated *with a sword*. The change in the ending of the word (from **gladius** to **gladiō**) made a slight change in its meaning. This change is called *inflection* (3). Latin is a highly inflected language, that is, it can express a great variety of meanings with the same word by merely changing its endings. English, on the other

hand, being poor in inflections, must employ phrases to translate single Latin words.

Fifthly, *pugnābat* suggests our word *pugnacious* (meaning "quarrelsome" or "inclined to fight"), and *gladius* suggests *gladiator*. From this we might suspect that some of our English words are *derived from Latin*. This again is true. In fact, English has borrowed words from almost every other language in the world, and about four-fifths of these borrowed words come from Latin. As an illustration, look at the following list of Latin words and their English derivatives :

LATIN	MEANING	ENGLISH DERIVATIVES
<i>annus</i>	<i>year</i>	annual, annuity, etc.
<i>crēdō</i>	<i>I believe</i>	creed, credible, etc.
<i>dēns</i>	<i>tooth</i>	dental, dentist, etc.
<i>locus</i>	<i>place</i>	local, locality, location, etc.
<i>mēns</i>	<i>mind</i>	mental, de-mented, etc.
<i>ūnus</i>	<i>one</i>	unit, unite, union, etc.
<i>vertō</i>	<i>I turn</i>	in-vert, con-vert, etc.

The verb *vertō* has another form, *vers-*, which combines with *annus* (or *anni-*) to form a word of five syllables in English ; what is the word ? Tell at least one English derivative from each of the following Latin words :

<i>audiō, I hear</i>	<i>mors (mort-), death</i>
<i>brevis, short</i>	<i>oculus, eye</i>
<i>centum, hundred</i>	<i>portō, I carry</i>
<i>decimus, tenth</i>	<i>quārtus, fourth</i>
<i>liber, free</i>	<i>scribō, I write</i>
<i>magnus, large</i>	<i>sōlus, alone</i>

Sixthly, although this difference is not seen in the Latin sentence above and its translation, yet, to complete our comparison, we may add that the two languages differ also in *pronunciation*, as will be learned in the next chapter.

CHAPTER 3

PRONUNCIATION

19. Pronunciation. The correct pronunciation of Latin depends upon two things: I. the *sounds* of the letters; II. *accent*.

(a) By "accent" is meant the emphasis, or stress of voice, put upon one of the syllables. Thus, in English, the noun *rebel* and the verb *rebel*, though spelled alike, differ in pronunciation because accented differently.

I. SOUNDS

20. Sounds of Vowels. The time required to pronounce a vowel is called the *quantity* of the vowel. Long vowels are more prolonged than short ones. A *long* vowel is marked with a macron (ˉ) over it: thus, long *a* is written *ā*. If not marked, a vowel is to be considered *short*. If for any reason we wanted to call special attention to the short quantity of a vowel, it would be written thus: *ă* (short *a*).

LONG VOWELS	SOUNDED AS IN	SHORT VOWELS	SOUNDED AS IN
ā	<i>starve</i>	a	<i>staff</i>
ē	<i>they</i>	e	<i>them</i>
ī	<i>keel (ee)</i>	i	<i>kill</i>
ō	<i>fore</i>	o	<i>for</i>
ū	<i>fool (oo)</i>	u	<i>full</i>

21. Sounds of Diphthongs. A *diphthong* is a combination of two vowels pronounced in rapid succession, almost as a single sound. All diphthongs are long; they therefore do not need to be marked. They are sounded as follows:

DIPHTHONGS	SOUNDED AS IN	DIPHTHONGS	SOUNDED AS IN
ae	<i>aisle (ai)</i>	ui	<i>we (we)</i>
au	<i>owl (ow)</i>	eu	<i>feud</i>
oe	<i>oil (oi)</i>	ei	<i>grey (ey)</i>

22. Consonant Sounds. Most Latin consonants are sounded as in English, but the following points must be noted :

CONSONANTS	SOUNDED AS IN	CONSONANTS	SOUNDED AS IN
c	<i>cat</i> (not <i>city</i>)	x	<i>tax</i> (not <i>tags</i>)
g	<i>gun</i> (not <i>gem</i>)	qu	<i>queen</i>
s	<i>hiss</i> (not <i>his</i>)	bs	<i>caps</i> (not <i>cabs</i>)
t	<i>native</i> (not <i>nation</i>)	bt	<i>ript</i> (not <i>ribb'd</i>)
v	<i>wine</i> (not <i>vine</i>)	i-consonant	see Note below

NOTE. At the beginning of a word, i followed by a vowel is a consonant, and is pronounced like y: *iam* (yam), *already*. So also usually between two vowels in the middle of a word: *maior*, *greater*.

23. EXERCISE

I. On consonants and vowels —

ā	dē	sī	nōn	tū	dux	est
ab	et	in	quod	ut	vīs	urbs

II. On diphthongs —

haec	prae	seu	cui
aut	haud	quae	vae

II. ACCENT

24. Syllables. Compare the English word *care* with the Latin *cārē*. Though they are spelled alike, the former is pronounced *kair*; the latter, *kah'ray*. The English word has but one syllable, the final *e* being silent. In Latin there are no silent letters, every vowel or diphthong being sounded, so that *cārē* is pronounced as two syllables. The number of syllables in a Latin word equals the number of vowels or diphthongs it contains.

(a) In dividing a Latin word into syllables, we should write (and also pronounce) a consonant with the vowel that follows, not with the one that precedes. Thus, *aedificium*, *a building*, is divided *ae-di-fi-ci-um*.

(b) A compound word (one made up of two simple words) should be divided between the component parts. Thus, *adest* (*ad*, *near* + *est*, *he is*), *he is near*, is divided *ad-est*.

(c) When the same consonant is doubled (as **ll**, **mm**, **tt**, etc.), we should divide between them. Thus, **mittō**, *I send*, is divided **mit-tō**.

(d) When two or more different consonants come between two vowels, the division is made after the first consonant, except that a consonant followed by **l** or **r** is not separated from the **l** or **r**. Thus, **duc-tus** and **cas-tra**, but **ā-cris**.

25. Names of Syllables. The last syllable is called the *ultima*, the next to the last the *penult*, and the one before the penult the *antepenult*. Thus, the ultima of **aedificium** is **um**, the penult **ci**, and the antepenult **fi**.

26. Quantity of Syllables. Syllables, like vowels, have quantity (20); that is, are either long or short. But the quantity of *syllables* must be distinguished from that of *vowels*, since a syllable may be long even though it contain a short vowel. Thus, a syllable is *long* if it contains —

(a) a *long* vowel or diphthong: **infert**, *he brings on*; **aequus**, *equal*; or

(b) a *short* vowel, followed by two or more consonants, or by **x** or **z** (called “double consonants”). Thus, the penults of **magister**, *master*, **exit**, *he goes out*, and **gaza**, *treasure*, are long.

27. Rules of Accent.

(a) Words of two syllables are accented on the penult: **pa'rat**, *he prepares*.

(b) Words of more than two syllables are accented on the penult if the penult is *long*. Thus, **parā'bat**, *he was preparing*, **magis'ter**, *master* (penult long by 26, *b* above). But if the penult is *short*, the accent is on the antepenult: **glā'dius**, *sword* (penult **di** being short).

28. The Penult. Remember, the names “ultima,” “penult,” and “antepenult” refer to *syllables*, not to vowels only, and the rules of accent (27) apply to syllables. Hence, as said above (26, *b*), the penult may be long even when its vowel is short. *It is clear from 27 that the important syllable for accent is the penult.* Bearing this fact in mind, accent the following words according to the rules: **la-bō-ris**, **cor-po-ris**, **a-mā-re**, **in-**

cen-dunt, ia-cē-re, ia-ce-re, oc-ci-dō, oc-ci-dō, re-ge-re, cli-en-tēs,
mo-nē-re, au-di-re.

29. Enclitics. In the expression *Tell me this*, the pronoun *me* is pronounced as if a part of the word *tell*: *Tellme*. In such a case we call *me* an *enclitic* (meaning "leaning on"). A few little words in Latin were not only pronounced as a part of the word preceding them, but were actually so written. Three of the commonest enclitics are *-que*, *and*, *-ne*, the sign of a question, and *cum*, *with*, added to certain pronouns. Thus, *senātus populus'que*, *senate and people*; *parat'ne*, *is he preparing?* (*parat* means *he is preparing*); *mēcum*, *with me*.

30.

EXERCISE

Learn to pronounce the following version of the Lord's Prayer in Latin:

Pater noster, quī es in caelis, s̄anctificētur nōmen tuum. Ad-
veniat rēgnum tuum; fiat voluntās tua, ut in caelō, ita etiam in
terrā. Pānem nostrum quotidiānum dā nōbis hodiē. Et re-
mitte nōbis dēbita nostra, sicut et nōs remittimus dēbitōribus
nostrīs. Et nē nōs inducās in tentātiōnem, sed liberā nōs ā
malō: quia tuum est rēgnum, et potentia, et glōria, in saecula.
Āmēn.

Also the following mottoes, etc., some of which might be memorized:

1. Semper eadem ("Always the same," Queen Elizabeth's motto).
2. Rēs, nōn verba ("Deeds, not words").
3. Post nūbēs lūx ("After clouds [comes] light").
4. Via trīta, via tūta ("A worn road [is] a safe road").
5. Aquae guttae saxa excavant ("Drops of water hollow out rocks").
6. Nunc aut nunquam ("Now or never").
7. Haec ōlim meminisse iuvābit ("It will delight [us] some day to remember these things").
8. Nē tentēs, aut perface ("Attempt not, or else accomplish").

CHAPTER 4

FORMATION OF THREE TENSES

31.

PARADIGM (5, a)

TENSE	STEM	ENDINGS
Présent,	parā-	+ t = parat , <i>he prepares</i> (Singular) + nt = parant , <i>they prepare</i> (Plural)
Imperfect,	parā-	+ bā + t = parābat , <i>he was preparing</i> (S.) + nt = parābant , <i>they were preparing</i> (P.)
Future,	parā-	+ bi + t = parābit , <i>he will prepare</i> (S.) + bu + nt = parābunt , <i>they will prepare</i> (P.)

32. Stem and Ending. In studying the above paradigm, notice that each tense consists of two parts: the *stem* and the *ending*. Thus, the present **parat**, *he prepares*, is built up by adding the ending -t to the stem **parā-** (34, b). The imperfect adds to the same stem the ending -bat (plural, -bant), and the future adds -bit (plural, -bunt). In all three tenses the *endings* alone change, and the *stem* remains the same throughout.

33. Personal Endings. The ending -t represents a personal pronoun of the third person, meaning *he, she, or it*, and is therefore called a *personal ending*. In the plural, the corresponding ending is -nt, meaning *they*.

34. Tense Signs. The only difference between the imperfect **parābat** and the future **parābit** is in the syllables -bā- and -bi-, which are therefore called *tense signs*. The sign of the imperfect is -bā- and of the future -bi- (plural, -bu-).

To aid the memory, notice that both tense signs begin with b, and that each contains the same vowel as its English meaning. Thus, -bā- and *was* both contain *a*, and -bi- and *will* both contain *i*. (In the plural, however, -bi- becomes -bu-.)

- (a) The present indicative has *no tense sign*.
 (b) In all forms of 31, notice that a final *long* vowel (*ā*) becomes *short* before -t and -nt.

35. Present Stem. The stem *parā-* is called the *present stem*. Remember then that the present, imperfect, and future tenses (of the indicative) are all built up on the present stem.

36. Review the conjugation of the English verb *see* in 15 for all forms of the present and imperfect; then give three meanings for *parat* and three for *parābat*.

37. Analysis. In 31 it is shown how to *build* the three tenses. The opposite process is *analysis*. Thus, to analyze the form *parābat*, we say: *parābat* = stem *parā-* + tense sign *-bā-* + personal ending *-t* = imperfect indicative active, third person singular, meaning *he, she, or it was preparing, prepared, or did prepare*.

38.

EXERCISE

occupā-, seize
parā-, prepare

pugnā-, fight
superā-, overcome, conquer

vāstā-, lay waste

I. On each stem above (except *parā-*) build three tenses, as in 31, and give all the meanings of each. Analyze each form when built (37).

II. Write in Latin: 1. They seize, it did seize, she will seize (33). 2. She is preparing, they were preparing, he will prepare. 3. He will fight, it does fight, she fought. 4. He overcame, it does overcome, they will lay waste. 5. He is laying waste, they are fighting, they will overcome.

III. Change the following singulars to the plural, and plurals to the singular: 1. *Vāstābat*, *vāstat*. 2. *Superābant*, *superābunt*. 3. *Occupābit*, *occupat*. 4. *Pugnant*, *pugnābit*.

39. English derivatives (18, "fifthly"): *de-vastate*, *in-superable* (the prefix *in-* = *un-*, meaning *not*), *pre-prepare*, *pugnacious*.

CHAPTER 5

THREE TENSES OF MONEŌ

40.

PARADIGM

TENSE	STEM	ENDINGS
Present,	monē-	+ t = monet, <i>he advises</i> (Singular) + nt = monent, <i>they advise</i> (Plural)
Imperfect,	monē- + bā	+ t = monēbat, <i>he was advising</i> (S.) + nt = monēbant, <i>they were advising</i> (P.)
Future,	monē- + bi	+ t = monēbit, <i>he will advise</i> (S.) + bu + nt = monēbunt, <i>they will advise</i> (P.)

41. **Review.** Of what *two parts* does a verb form consist (32)? Of what two parts do the *endings* of the imperfect and future of the stem *parā-* consist? Which of these parts does the *present* indicative lack? Give two *personal endings* with their meanings. Comparing 40 above with 31, do you find any difference between the *tense signs* for the two verbs? any between the *personal endings*? There is, however, one important difference: observe the final vowel (called the *stem vowel*) of the stems *parā-* and *monē-*.

42. **Four Conjugations.** Give examples of the English *infinitive* (13). In Latin the present infinitive active ends in *-re*. Thus, *parāre*, *to prepare*; *monēre*, *to advise*. The vowel before the ending *-re* is the *stem vowel* spoken of at the end of 41 above. Latin verbs are divided, *according to their stem vowels*, into four classes, called *conjugations* (8), as follows:

CONJUGATION	EXAMPLE	STEM VOWEL	CONJUGATION	EXAMPLE	STEM VOWEL
I	parāre	ā	III	regere	e (<i>short</i>)
II	monēre	ē (<i>long</i>)	IV	audire	i

To aid the memory, notice that the *first* conjugation has the *first* vowel (ā) as its stem vowel, the *second* conjugation the *second* vowel (ē), etc. Note carefully that the stem vowels of Conjugations II and III differ only in *quantity* (20), Conj. II having *long* e and Conj. III, *short* e before the ending *-re*.

43. To find the Present Stem. From the preceding paragraph it is evident that if we know the present *infinitive* of a verb, we can find its *present stem*, on which three tenses are built. Simply drop the ending *-re* of the infinitive. Thus, infinitive, *parā-rē*; present stem, *parā-*. So *monē-* is found from the infinitive *monēre*.

(a) Review 34, b. Does this principle apply to final *ē* in 40?

44. Questions. Review 29, and observe the following illustrations of the use of *-ne* in questions: *parat*, *he prepares*, but *paratne*, *is he preparing or does he prepare*¹? *monēbit*, *he will advise*, but *monēbitne*, *will he advise*?

45.

EXERCISE

dēbēre, to owe, ought
et, conjunction, and
habēre, to have
monēre, to advise
vidēre, to see

-ne, 44
nōn, adverb (*negative*), not
tenēre, to hold
terrēre, to frighten

I. Find the *present stems* of the above infinitives (45). Build three tenses on each (except *monēre*), as in 40.

II. Analyze (37) *habent*, *tenēbit*, *terrēbant*, and *vidēbunt*. Review the verbs of 38, and give each in its *infinitive* form.

III. Translate into English or Latin: 1. *Habet*,¹ *habēbant*,¹ *habēbit*. 2. *Dēbent*, *dēbēbunt*, *nōn dēbēbat*. 3. *Terrentne* (44)? *Nōn terrent*. 4. *Monēbitne*? *Vidēbatne*? 5. *Vidēbuntne et monēbuntne*? 6. *Habēbat et tenēbat*. 7. *Pugnābantne et terrēbantne*? 8. *Tenet et tenēbat et tenēbit*. 9. *She does not advise*.¹ 10. *Will he advise*? 11. *They were not holding*.¹ 12. *Did they see*?¹ 13. *They were laying waste and frightening*.¹

46. English derivatives: *ad-monish*, *debt*, *tenet*, *terrify*, *vision*.

¹ Remember the Latin present and imperfect have each *three meanings* in English (15).

CHAPTER 6

FORMATION OF THREE CASES

47.

PARADIGM

CASE	BASE	TERMINATIONS	SINGULAR
Nominative, puell-		+ a	= puella , <i>a or the girl</i> (subject)
Genitive, puell-		+ ae	= puellae , <i>a girl's or of a girl</i>
Accusative, puell-		+ am	= puellam , <i>a girl</i> (direct object)
PLURAL			
Nominative, puell-		+ ae	= puellae , <i>girls</i> (subject)
Genitive, puell-		+ ārum	= puellārum , <i>girls' or of girls</i>
Accusative, puell-		+ ās	= puellās , <i>girls</i> (direct object)

(a) What *cases* are there in English? What *numbers*?

48. Base¹ and Termination. A Latin noun consists of two parts: *base* and *termination*. Thus, nominative singular, **puella** = base **puell-** + termination **-a**. The base usually remains unchanged, but the terminations vary. The base can be found by dropping the termination from the *genitive singular*. Thus, gen. sing. **puellae**; base **puell-**.

49. First Declension. What is *declension* (5)? Latin nouns are divided, according to their *gen. sing.* termination, into five classes or declensions. Nouns like **puella**, with the termination **-ae** in the gen. sing., are of the *first declension*. Notice that in 51 each noun is followed by the gen. sing. termination to show its declension.

50. Syntax. Review 6, *a*, *c*, *d*, and 12, *a*.

Tell two uses of the *nominative*; one use of the *accusative*. What is a *transitive* verb? Give the rule for *verb-agreement*. The *genitive* has several uses, the most common use denoting *possession*.

¹ TO THE TEACHER: Noun *stems* are postponed for future consideration.

Point out in the following sentences the word in each which illustrates one of the foregoing principles, and memorize the rules:

(1) Puella monet; puellae monent. (2) Silvam videt. (3) Galba insulam occupat. (4) Gallia est terra. (5) Puella insulās Graeciae vidēbit.

RULE 1. *Any word that answers the question WHO? or WHAT? before a finite verb (14) is the subject of that verb, and must be in the nominative case.*

RULE 2. *A predicate noun must be in the same case as the subject.*

RULE 3. *If the subject is singular, the verb must be singular; if the subject is plural, the verb must be plural.*

RULE 4. *Any word that answers the question WHOM? or WHAT? after a transitive verb is the direct object of the verb, and must be in the accusative case.*

RULE 5. *The genitive case may denote possession.*

51.

EXERCISE

Britannia, -ae, Britain	insula, -ae, island
Galba, -ae, Galba, a man's name	regīna, -ae, queen
Gallia, -ae, Gaul, a country	silva, -ae, forest
Graecia, -ae, Greece	terra, -ae, land, country, earth
est, he (she or it) is or there is sunt, they are or there are	

I. Tell the *bases* of the last four nouns above, then decline them (47).

II. In preceding chapters the subject was contained in the verb (-t, *he*, etc., or -nt, *they*). In the following sentences, if a separate word is subject, omit the pronoun subject (*he*, etc.) in translating. Apply Rules 1-5.

1. Puellam, puellās. 2. Puellae (give all meanings). 3. Silvās insulārū. 4. Silvās Galliae vāstat.¹ 5. Britannia est insula. 6. Galba regīnam videt. 7. Regīna Galbam nōn videt. 8. Insulās Graeciae occupābant. 9. The queen's, the queens'. 10. He will overcome¹ Greece. 11. Britain and Gaul and Greece are countries.

52. English derivatives: *insulate, silvan (sylvan), terrestrial*.

¹ Remember 18, "thirdly." The rule does not apply, however, to the verb *be*. See 122.

CHAPTER 7

THE SECOND DECLENSION

53.

PARADIGM

CASE	BASE	TERMI- NATION	SINGULAR	BASE	TERMI- NATION	SINGULAR
Nom.	mūr-	+ us	= mūrus, <i>a wall</i>	bell-	+ um	= bellum, <i>war</i>
Gen.	mūr-	+ ī	= mūrī, <i>of a wall</i>	bell-	+ ī	= belli, <i>of war</i>
Acc.	mūr-	+ um	= mūrum, <i>a wall</i>	bell-	+ um	= bellum, <i>war</i>
			PLURAL			PLURAL
Nom.	mūr-	+ ī	= mūrī, <i>walls</i>	bell-	+ a	= bella, <i>wars</i>
Gen.	mūr-	+ ōrum	= mūrōrum, <i>of walls</i>	bell-	+ ōrum	= bellōrum, <i>of wars</i>
Acc.	mūr-	+ ōs	= mūrōs, <i>walls</i>	bell-	+ a	= bella, <i>wars</i>

(a) What is the base of *mūrus*? of *bellum*? What corresponding cases of these nouns have different terminations?

54. Second Declension. Nouns which, like *mūrus* and *bellum*, have the termination *-ī* in the genitive singular belong to the *second declension*. What nouns belong to the *first declension*?

55. Gender. Review 7, and tell the difference between *natural* gender and *grammatical* gender. Learn the following rules of gender for the first and second declensions:

I. Nouns of the *first declension* (nom. sing. in *-a*) are *feminine*, unless masculine by natural gender (sex). Thus, *insula*, *island*, is feminine (*grammatical gender*), but *nauta*, *sailor*, meaning a man, is masculine (*natural gender*).

II. Nouns of the *second declension* with the termination *-um* in the nominative singular are *neuter*; others (with a few exceptions) are *masculine*.

56. Neuter Words. All *neuter words*, whatever their declension, have nominatives like their accusatives, and in the plural these cases have the termination -a.

57. Vocabulary. A collection of words, arranged alphabetically as in 58, with their meanings given is called a *vocabulary*.

NOTE. The letters M., F., and N., given in vocabularies after nouns, indicate their genders; M. standing for masculine, F. for feminine, and N. for neuter.

58.**EXERCISE**

amāre , to love	oppidum , -ī, N., town
amicus , -ī, M., friend	patria , -ae, F., (one's) country, fatherland
arma , -ōrum, N. <i>pl.</i> , arms	pīlum , -ī, N., javelin
fugāre , to rout, put to flight	scūtum , -ī, N., shield
Gallus , -ī, M., a Gaul, <i>native of the country called Gallia</i> (51)	tōlum , -ī, N., missile, weapon
lēgātus -ī, M., lieutenant, ambassa- dor, envoy	

I. Tell the *base* of each noun in the above vocabulary, decline it, and account for its gender. Review the vocabulary under 51.

II. Write down side by side the terminations of **mūrus**, **puella** (47), and **bellum**, with those of **puella** in the middle. Thus:

Sing., Nom.	-us,	-a,	-um
Gen.	-ī,	-ae,	-ī, etc.

III. 1. Mūri, mūrōs, bellī, bella. 2. Scūta lēgātī. 3. Gallia est patria Gallōrum. 4. Galli oppida et silvās habēbant.¹ 5. Gallōs superābant et fugābant. 6. Pīla Rōmānōrum (*of the Romans*) arma Gallōrum superābunt. 7. Bellum parābunt. 8. Lēgātus oppidum occupābit. 9. Scūtum et pīlum habēbit. 10. Lēgātī oppida Galliae vāstābant. 11. They have¹ javelins. 12. They are not friends. 13. The Gauls loved [their²] country. 14. Shields are arms, and javelins are missiles. 15. The lieutenants were seizing the towns of the Gauls.

¹ See footnote to 51, II, 4.

² Omit the Latin for all words in square brackets.

IV. Change every *future* in sentences 4-10 above to the *imperfect*, and every *imperfect* to the *future*; change every *singular* (except *Galliae*) to the *plural*.

59. English derivatives: *amiable, amicable, armor, legate, patriot*.

CHAPTER 8

THREE CASES OF **BONUS, BONA, BONUM**

60.

PARADIGM

CASE	BASE	TERMINATIONS	SINGULAR		
			Mas.	Fem.	Neu.
Nom.	bon- + us,	+ a, + um	= bonus,	bona,	bonum
Gen.	bon- + i,	+ ae, + i	= boni,	bonae,	boni
Acc.	bon- + um,	+ am, + um	= bonum,	bonam,	bonum
PLURAL					
Nom.	bon- + i,	+ ae, + a	= boni,	bonae,	bona
Gen.	bon- + ōrum,	+ ārum, + ōrum	= bonōrum,	bonārum,	bonōrum
Acc.	bon- + ōs,	+ ās, + a	= bonōs,	bonās,	bona

61. **Adjectives.** English adjectives do not change in form for gender, number, and case: we say "a *good* man," "a *good* woman," "*good* men," etc., without changing the form of the adjective *good*. In Latin a *man* would be *bonus* (mas.), a *woman*, *bona* (fem.), a *shield*, *bonum* (neut.). In other words, many Latin adjectives have three sets of terminations, the masculine like those of *mūrus* (53), the feminine like those of *puella* (47), the neuter like those of *bellum* (53).

62. **Syntax.** An adjective modifying a noun *directly* (as a *big house*) is called an *attributive adjective*; one modifying a noun *through a verb* like *be* (as *The house is big*) is called a *predicate adjective*.

RULE 6. *An adjective, whether attributive or predicate, must be in the same gender, number, and case as the noun which it modifies.*

(a) The rule does not say that the adjective and noun must always have the same terminations. If they belong to the same declension, they have the same terminations; but such a pair as **nauta bonus**, *good sailor*, have different terminations, because **nauta** is *masculine* (55, I), and therefore **bonus** must have the masculine terminations to agree with it.

63. Word Order. Adjectives usually follow their nouns.

(a) Adjectives denoting number or quantity (as *many, three*, etc.) regularly precede the noun. Thus, *many sailors*, **multī nautae**.

64. **Adjectives used as Nouns.** In both English and Latin, adjectives are often used as nouns. Thus, *The good die young*. Here *the good* means *good persons*. So we speak of *the old, the rich, the wise, the dead*, etc. This is particularly common in the plural. Thus, *the good* (= *good men*) is in Latin **bonī**, *mas. plural*; *good things*, **bona**, *neut. plural*. With the masculine (**bonī**) we supply the word *men*, and with the neuter (**bona**) *things*.

65.

EXERCISE

bonus , -a, -um, good	poēta , -ae, M., poet
clārus , -a, -um, clear, famous	populus , -ī, M., a people, nation
cōpia , -ae, F., abundance, supply; <i>plural</i> , forces, troops	prōvincia , -ae, F., province, <i>meaning conquered territory outside of Italy</i>
magnus , -a, -um, large, great	Rōmānus , -ā, -um, Roman; <i>as noun</i> (64), Rōmānī , -ōrum, M. <i>pl.</i> , Romans
multus , -a, -um, much; <i>plural</i> , many	
nauta , -ae, M., sailor	
erat , he, etc., was or there was	erant , they were or there were

I. Tell the *bases* of the five adjectives in the above vocabulary. Decline together **amicus bonus**, **nauta clārus** (62, a), **insula magna**, and **tēlum bonum**, with meanings.

II. In translating, remember 63 as well as 18, "thirdly":
1. **Mūrī clārī**, **nautae clārī**. 2. **Īnsula est clāra**; **īnsulam clā-**

ram occupat. 3. *Populus Rōmānus patriam clāram amābat.* 4. *Multae erant prōvinciae populī Rōmānī.* 5. *Erat cōpia pilōrum.* 6. *Mūrī oppidī erant magnī.* 7. *Poētae Rōmānī erant clārī.* 8. *Cōpiae populī Rōmānī mūrōs multōrum oppidōrum occupābunt.* 9. Of an abundance, of troops. 10. Many forces, many poets (both as subjects). 11. The good (64) love the good. 12. There was a large supply of good shields.

66. English derivatives: *bonbon, clarify, magnify, nautical, poet, populace, province.*

67. FIRST REVIEW (18-66)

"Constant review is the only sure way to settle grammar and vocabulary firmly in the mind."—HECKER, *The Teaching of Latin in Secondary Schools*, p. 41.

I. **Inflection.** 1. What is the most striking difference between English and Latin? 2. If a paragraph of Latin and its English translation were printed side by side, which would probably cover the more space, and why? 3. How many Latin words are needed for each of these sentences: *'he will see; they are preparing (for) a great war; he is laying waste the forests of Britain?'* 4. In determining the *accent* of a word of more than two syllables, which is the important syllable, and why? 5. Is *insula* accented on the antepenult because the antepenult is long? Explain. 6. Pronounce (giving the rule of accent for each): *mū-rī, tem-po-ris, ad-duc-tus, in-fer-rent, fu-gā-bunt.* 7. Define *conjugation*. 8. How many *conjugations* are there? How distinguished? 9. To which does *fugāre* belong? why? *monēre*? why? 10. Of what parts does every *verb* form consist? 11. In the ending *-bat*, what is *-bā-* called? and *-t*? 12. Tell the *tense sign* of the future indicative of *parāre*; of *monēre*. 13. Which tense has no tense sign? 14. How is the *present stem* found? 15. Of what parts does every *noun* form consist? 16. How many *declensions* are there, and how distinguished? 17. What can you tell about two cases of all *neuter* words? 18. Give the *gender* rules for the first two declensions. 19. Which is the stronger, *natural* or *grammatical gender*, that is, which determines the gender of a noun like *nauta*, for example?

II. **Syntax.** 1. Tell two uses of the *nominative*; 2. one of the *accusative*. 3. Give the rule for *verb agreement* (Rule 3); 4. for

adjective agreement (Rule 6). 5. Tell the most common use of the *genitive*. 6. How are *adjectives* often used (64)?

III. **Word Order.** 1. What is the normal (or regular) position of *verbs* in Latin? 2. the usual position of *adjectives*? 3. of *adjectives* denoting *number* and *quantity*?

IV. Vocabulary.¹

1. amicus, 2. arma, 3. bellum, 4. bonus, 5. cōpia (*pl.*), 6. dēbēre, (erat, erant, est), 7. et, 8. habēre, 9. insula, 10. lēgātus, 11. magnus, 12. monēre, 13. multus (*pl.*), 14. mūrus, 15. nauta, 16. nōn, 17. occupāre, 18. oppidum, 19. parāre, 20. pilum, 21. populus, 22. prōvincia, 23. pugnāre, 24. scūtum, 25. silva, (sunt), 26. superāre, 27. tēlum, 28. tenēre, 29. terra, 30. vāstāre, 31. vidēre.

CHAPTER 9

THE USE OF PARADIGMS²

68. **English and Latin Compared.** In English the *nominative* and the *objective* cases of nouns are alike. But the *nominative* is the case of the *subject*, and the *objective* the case of the *object*. How then can we tell subject from object in an English sentence? We usually do so by the *word order*; that is, by the arrangement of the words. In a statement, for example, the subject regularly comes before the verb, and the object after the verb. Thus, *The whale swallowed the sailor* means

¹ Proper nouns and adjectives are omitted in the reviews, and only those words included which appear in full face type in Lodge's Vocabulary of High School Latin.—“(*pl.*)” after a word means that the plural is peculiar in meaning; the peculiarity should be stated by the pupil.—Parentheses enclose inflected forms (as *erat*, etc.) that will appear later in their first forms. In subsequent reviews they will also enclose words that have appeared before, but have since had new meanings assigned to them. Neither of these classes of words is numbered separately.

² TO THE TEACHER. This chapter should be carefully read in class, and the points here presented made clear before the class is questioned on it. It is the uniform experience of teachers that the lesson herein taught needs much reiteration in the course of the first year study of Latin.

one thing; *The sailor swallowed the whale* means the very opposite, and yet the two sentences are exactly alike, except in word order. Evidently, then, the meaning of an English sentence depends upon the word order.

69. Now in Latin the meaning does *not* depend upon the word order. Thus, *The whale* (**bālaena**, -ae) *swallowed the sailor* would be expressed in Latin as follows:

Bālaena nautam dēvorāvit (the regular order), or
Nautam bālaena dēvorāvit (emphasizing **nautam**), or
Dēvorāvit bālaena nautam (emphasizing **dēvorāvit**), etc.

Here we have three different arrangements, *all meaning the same thing*. The reason for this is plain: the termination **a** of **bālaena** (nom. sing.) shows that it (*whale*) is the subject in all three arrangements. When translated, therefore, it must, according to 68, come *before* the verb (*The whale swallowed*). In like manner, the termination **am** of **nautam** (accusative) shows that it (*sailor*) is the object. It must, therefore, according to 68, come *after* the English verb (*swallowed the sailor*).

70. **Regular Latin Order.** Notwithstanding the variety of arrangements permissible in Latin, there is one regular, or normal, order of words as follows:

Subject first; *other words* between; *verb* last.

Accordingly, modifiers of the subject *follow* the subject, and modifiers of the verb *precede* the verb.

NOTE. Modifiers of the subject are adjectives and nouns in the genitive. Modifiers of the verb are adverbs (including the negative **nōn**, *not*) and all words that do not modify the subject or its modifiers.

71. **Emphasis.** A word, like anything else, in an unusual position attracts attention; in other words, is *emphasized* by this position. (See, for example, the second and third arrangements in 69.) Now emphasis is one of the things that add interest to what is spoken or written. Without emphasis lan-

guage would be rather bald and lifeless. Hence we shall find many changes from the regular order when we come to read Caesar and other authors.

72. Two Suggestions. The student should always bear in mind the following advice :

(a) When *translating* Latin, remember that the *endings* and *terminations* of words are the all-important things, because they show the relations of words to one another, that is, *how to put them together* in translating into English.

(b) When *writing* Latin, follow the regular Latin order, as given above (70), and from time to time in other parts of this book (for example, in 63).

73. Paradigms. If the pupil has understood what has been said in this chapter, he will appreciate the reasons for learning paradigms. He might know all the paradigms perfectly, and still know very little Latin. He memorizes *mūrus*, for example, not merely for the purpose of "saying it off," but in order that he may recognize any case of it (or of any other word declined like it) that he meets in translating Latin, and see at once *what relation it bears to other words in the sentence*. Also, when writing Latin, he should be familiar enough with the paradigms to be able, without hesitation and without "looking it up," to form any case, number, tense, etc., that he may need.

74. Illustration in Translation. The first study of Latin is in fact hardly more than an interesting game of endings. As an illustration of this statement, we may take even an English sentence, and arrange the words in any order we please. Then, if appropriate endings be added to the words, any one who knows Latin would be able to see at once *what relations the words bear to one another*, and thus make the whole yield its meaning by rearranging the words in the English order. Thus :

Country-*am* State-*arum* always United-*arum* love-*bit* people-*us*.

The first word ends in *-am*, accusative singular, direct object (*country*), therefore to be translated *after* the verb (69).

The second word ends in *-arum*, genitive plural (*of the States*).

The third (*always*) is an adverb; no inflection.

The fourth is an adjective (*United*), agreeing with the second (*of the United States*).

The fifth we recognize as a verb with the sign of the future tense (*will love*).

The last word ends in *-us*, nominative singular, subject (*people*), therefore to be translated *before* the verb.

Accordingly, the sentence runs: *The people of the United States will always love (their) country.*

This is a rapid illustration of the proper way to translate Latin.

75.

EXERCISE

annus, -i, m., year

finitimus, -a, -um, neighboring;

pl. as noun (64), neighbors

fortiter, *adverb*, bravely

Italia, -ae, f., Italy

parvus, -a, -um, small, little

post, *preposition taking the accusative*, after, behind

primō, *adverb*, at first

Rōma, -ae, f., Rome, *capital of Italy*

saepe, *adverb*, often

I. The words in the following sentences are purposely placed in the most puzzling positions without regard to emphasis. Examine the endings and terminations; then work out the translation, as shown in the illustration above (74).

1. Multōs Rōmānī habēbant finitimōs. 2. Galliam multōs superābit Rōma post annōs. 3. Amicōs habent bonī (64) multōs. 4. Multa nauta oppida vidēbit. 5. Primō oppidum Rōma parvum erat. 6. Fortiter pugnābant saepe Rōmānī. 7. Magna Italia est terra. 8. Multae Rōmānōrum erant prōvinciae. 9. Magnum populus nautam Rōmānus saepe videt.

II. Supply the missing letters in the following words:

1. Rōmān— oppid— Galli— vāstāba—. 2. Mūr— oppid— su— parv—. 3. Era— cōpi— scūt—. 4. Popul— tēl— cōpi— habēbi—. 5. Pil— era— tēl— Rōmān—. 6. Lēgāt— Rōmān— mult— oppid— occupābu—. 7. Cōpi— Rōmān— mult— Gall— fugāba—. 8. Silv— Galli— era— magn—.

76. English derivatives: *annual*, *post-script* (*script-* means *written*), *prime*.

CHAPTER 10

READING LESSON

77. Historical Present. Review 11, *a*. The following fable illustrates this lively use of the present tense :

One day a wolf takes a sheep from a fold, and is carrying it home to his own den. He meets a lion, who straightway lays hold of the sheep, and bears it away. The wolf cries out that it is a great shame, and that the lion has robbed him. The lion laughs, and says, "I suppose it was your good friend the shepherd who gave it to you."

Point out in the above fable all *present* tenses that are used for *past* tenses. Find illustrations also in the reading lesson below.

78.

VOCABULARY

itaque, <i>conjunction</i> , therefore, and	quot, <i>indeclinable numeral adjective</i> , how many ? (<i>see a, below</i>)
so	
primus, -a, -um, first	sed, <i>conjunction</i> , but
ubi, <i>adverb and conjunction</i> , where ?	

(*a*) Quot is said to be "indeclinable" because it cannot be declined, but has the same form for all cases, etc.

79.

THE STORY OF ROME

NOTE. The Latin names for *Sicily*, *Africa*, and *Asia*, which occur in this lesson, are so easily recognized that they are not given in the vocabulary (78). By "Africa" the Romans meant only a strip of that country bordering on the Mediterranean Sea, and by "Asia" only the western part of that continent on the same sea. *Gaul* (*Gallia*) was a very large country, including most of the territory now covered by France, Belgium, the Netherlands, Switzerland, and northern Italy.

I

Primō Rōma erat parvum oppidum. Finitimī erant ferī (*barbarous*). Itaque Rōmānī bellum saepe parābant.¹ Rōmānī saepe pugnābant. Multōs finitimōs fugant, et multōs populōs superant. Post multōs annōs tōtam (*the-whole-of*)

It̄aliā superant. Deinde (*next*) Siciliā superant. Sicilia insula est magna. Pr̄ima pr̄vincia erat (*it was*) populi R̄omānī. Tum (*then*) multās nāvēs (*ships, acc.*) et multōs nautās habēbat R̄oma. Magnās cōpiās habēbat. Hispāniā (*Spain*), Graeciā, Africā, Asiā, Galliā superant R̄omānī.

II

Hispānia terra est magna. Graecia patria erat multōrum et² magnōrum poētārum. Africa Poenōrum (*Carthaginians, gen.*) patria erat. Poenī et R̄omānī multōs annōs³ inter sē⁴ pugnābant. Asia multōs magnōs virōs (*men, acc.*) nōn habēbat. Galliā incolēbant (*inhabited*) Gallī. Gallī fortiter pugnābant. Graeciae partem (*part, acc.*) incolēbant Lacedaemoniī (*Spartans, nom.*). Lacedaemoniī erant fortēs (*brave*): nōn quaerēbant (*did ask*), “Quot sunt hostēs (*enemy*)?” sed “Ubi sunt hostēs?”

NOTES: 1. Several *imperfects* in this lesson are best translated *used to do so* and *so*. The *imperfect* is often so translated. 2. Omit in translating. 3. Like the English objective, the Latin accusative may be used to denote *duration of time*. 4. *inter sē*, *with each other*.



A GALLIC WALL

CHAPTER 11

FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS. — *Continued*

80. PARADIGM OF THE FIRST DECLENSION

CASE BASE	TERMINATION	SINGULAR
Dat. puell-	+ ae	= puellae, to or for a girl (ind. obj.)
Abl. puell-	+ ā	= puellā, from, with, or by a girl (see c, below)
PLURAL		
Dat. puell-	+ is	= puellis, to or for girls (ind. obj.)
Abl. puell-	+ is	= puellis, from, with, or by girls (see c, below)

(a) Note the names of the two new cases, making *five* learned thus far.

(b) A sixth case, called the *vocative*, has (with one exception, 83, b) the same form in each number as the *nominative*. Thus, voc. sing. **puella** (like nom. sing., 47); voc. pl. **puellae** (like nom. pl.). For the use of the vocative, see below, 81, 2.

(c) Ablatives of nouns denoting *persons* (as *puella*) regularly require a *preposition* to express the meanings *from*, *with*, and *by*. See below, 81, 3.

(d) Note that the abl. sing. ends in long **ā**, thus differing from the nom. sing. (47).

81. Syntax.

1. DATIVE: the dative may denote the person or thing to or for whom or which something is done, called the *indirect object*. Thus, *he gives (to) the girl a javelin*, **puellae pilum dat.** (Which Latin word is the indirect object here?)

2. VOCATIVE: the vocative is the case of *address*. Thus, (*O queen, they are seizing the walls*, **mūrōs, regina, occupant.** This case rarely begins a sentence. (Point out the vocative in the example.)

3. ABLATIVE: the ablative has a variety of uses, some requiring a preposition, others not. As was said above (80, c), a *person's name* in the ablative is nearly always preceded by a preposition. Thus, *from or by a girl*, **ā puellā**, the preposition **ā** meaning *from* or *by*. The preposition **in**, *in* or *on*, is frequently used with the

ablative to express the *place where* something is or is done. Thus, *in the forest, in silvā; on the island, in insulā.*

RULE 7. *The indirect object is in the dative.*

RULE 8. *The case of address is the vocative.*

RULE 9. *Place where is expressed by in with the ablative.*

82.

EXERCISE

dare,¹ to give

in, preposition with the ablative of
place where, in, on

nūntiāre, to report, announce

pecūnia, -ae, F., money

victōria, -ae, F., victory

interrogative pronoun, quis, M. & F., who? quid, N., what?

genitive, cuius, M. F. & N., whose? of whom? of what?

In the following sentences point out every *dative*, *vocative*, and *ablative*, and give, where you can, the rule for each (81).

1. Quis nautae pecūniam dabit?
2. Quid puella nautae dabit?
3. Ubi, puella, est Rōma?
4. In Ītaliā est Rōma.
5. In insulā sunt silvae magnae.
6. Cuius victōriam reginae nūntiābat?
7. To the sailors, by victory.
8. With money, on islands.
9. In the islands of Greece, O sailors (80, 6) !

83.

PARADIGM OF THE SECOND DECLENSION

SINGULAR					
CASE	BASE	TERMINATION	CASE	BASE	TERMINATION
Dat.	mūr-	+ ō = mūrō	Dat.	bell-	+ ō = bellō
Abl.	mūr-	+ ō = mūrō	Abl.	bell-	+ ō = bellō
PLURAL					
Dat.	mūr-	+ is = mūris	Dat.	bell-	+ is = bellis
Abl.	mūr-	+ is = mūris	Abl.	bell-	+ is = bellis

(a) Notice that the masculine **mūrus** and the neuter **bellum** are alike in these cases, and that the dative and ablative are alike in each number.

(b) Second declension nouns (and adjectives) in -us (as **mūrus**) are the only words that have a separate form for the *vocative*, and that too only in the *singular*. The termination is -e. Thus, **mūre**, O Wall! In the plural the vocative is like the nominative.

¹ The pupil's attention should be called to the short a.

84. Adjectives. The two new cases of *bonus*, -a, -um (61, last sentence) :

Sing., Dat. <i>bonō, bonae, bonō</i>	Plur., Dat. <i>bonis, bonis, bonis</i>
Abl. <i>bonō, bonā, bonō</i>	Abl. <i>bonis, bonis, bonis</i>

85. Word Order. In phrases consisting of an adjective and noun, governed by a preposition, the adjective often stands first. Thus, *in a large town*, *magnō in oppidō*.

86.**EXERCISE**

<i>frumentum</i> -ī, N., grain	<i>tum</i> , <i>adverb</i> , then, at that time
<i>pauci</i> , -ae, -a <i>pl. adj.</i> , few	<i>vicus</i> , -ī, M., village
<i>cui</i> (<i>dat. sing. of quis</i> , <i>quid</i> , 82), M. F. & N., to or for whom or what?	

I. Tell the *dative* and *ablative*, singular and plural, of *amicus*, *silva*, and *oppidum*. Which of these forms would usually require a *preposition* before it? Which of these nouns has a special form for the *vocative singular*? What about the *vocative plural*?

II. Point out every *dative*, *vocative*, and *ablative* below, and give, where you can, the rule for each (81) :

1. *Ubi est cōpia frumentī?* 2. *In Siciliā (79, note) est magna frumentī cōpia.* 3. *Multa parvō in vicō sunt arma.* 4. *Cui victōriam nūtiābant?* 5. *Tum in Italiā, amice, magnae erant silvae.* 6. *Cuius scūtum est hoc (this)?* 7. *Lēgātī est scūtum.* 8. *Finitimō in oppidō erant multa scūta sed pauca pila.* 9. *Quis populō frumentum dabit?* 10. *Cui pecūniam nauta debet?* 11. *Tum paucis in vicis erat cōpia frumentī.* 12. *With walls, on the wall.* 13. *By many wars, for few friends.* 14. *In the first island (85), with good arms.* 15. *To whom will they give the grain?*

87. English derivatives: *an-nounce*, *dative* (the "giving" case), *in-hale* (*hālāre*, to breathe), *paucity*, *pecuniary*, *vicinity* (*vicus* meant *street* also, hence *vicinus* meant *one living in the same street* and so *neighbor*), *victory*.

CHAPTER 12

THIRD CONJUGATION, PRINCIPAL PARTS

88.

PARADIGM

TENSE	STEM	ENDINGS
Present,	regi-	+ t = <i>regit, he rules, etc.</i>
	regu-	+ nt = <i>regunt, they rule, etc.</i>
Imperfect,	regē- + bā	+ t = <i>regēbat, he was ruling, etc.</i>
		+ nt = <i>regēbant, they were ruling, etc.</i>
Future,	reg- + ē	+ t = <i>reget, he will rule</i>
		+ nt = <i>regent, they will rule</i>

89. Present Stem. Review 42 and tell how the four conjugations are distinguished. In the *third conjugation*, the present stem is found in the usual way (43): infinitive, *regere*; pres. stem, *rege-*. But, as seen above (88), the final *e* of the stem undergoes several changes, which should be carefully noted and memorized:

- (a) Present: *rege-* is changed to *regi-* and *regu-*.
- (b) Imperfect: *rege-* becomes *regē-* (long final *e*).
- (c) Future: final *e* of *rege-* disappears before the tense sign *-ē-* (90).

90. Tense Signs. The only difference in tense signs for this conjugation is in the *future*, of which the sign is *-ē-* (instead of *-bi-*, as in the first and second conjugations).

91. Personal Endings. There is nothing new in the personal endings of the third conjugation.

92. Tense Systems. A number of tenses based on the *same stem* is called a *tense system*. (Compare "mountain system," "solar system," "railway system," etc.) The present, imperfect, and future, being based on the *present stem*, are called the *present system*.

93. Principal Parts. From four parts of the verb we can form any other part. These four parts are called the *principal parts* of the verb, and are as follows :

- (1) Present indicative active (3) Perfect indicative active
 (2) Present infinitive active (4) Perfect participle passive
 (a) Thus, the principal parts of **parāre**, **monēre**, and **regere** are :

	PRES. IND. ACTIVE	PRES. INF. ACTIVE	PERF. IND. ACTIVE	PERF. PASS. PART.
	<i>I prepare,</i> etc.	<i>to prepare,</i> etc.	<i>I have pre- pared, etc.</i>	<i>having been prepared</i>
I.	parō	parāre	parāvī	parātum
II.	moneō	monēre	monuī	monitum
III.	regō	regere	rēxī	rēctum

(b) All verbs of the first conjugation in preceding chapters (except **dare**, 82) are like **parō**. All of the second conjugation are like **moneō**, except the two below (94), of which **teneō** differs only in the fourth part.

94.**EXERCISE**

ad, *prep. with acc.* to, towards **nostrī**, -ōrum, M. *pl. adjective used*
in, *prep. with acc.* into, against as *noun* (64), our men

dō, **dare**, **dedī**, **datum**, give (82)
teneō, **tenēre**, **tenuī**, **tentum**, hold (45)
videō, **vidēre**, **vidī**, **visum**, see (45)
dūcō, **dūcere**, **dūxī**, **ductum**, lead
mittō, **mittere**, **mīsī**, **missum**, send, discharge (*a missile*)

(a) Compare the meanings of **in** with the accusative (94) and with the ablative (82).

I. Like the model (88), form three tenses of **dūcō** and **mittō** with meanings.

II. 1. They will give, will owe, will lead. 2. They are sending, will send. 3. He does not see, but will see. 4. He is advising, will send.

III. 1. In Galliam lēgātum mittent. 2. In (at) nostrōs tēla mittunt. 3. Nostrī mūrōs oppidī parvī occupābunt. 4. Itaque Gallī lēgātōs ad nostrōs mittent. 5. Finitimam ad

prōvinciam (85) nostrōs dūcēbat. 6. Nostrī sunt paucī, sed fortiter pugnābunt. 7. They are leading the envoys towards the town. 8. He will send many troops into Gaul. 9. Our men were discharging missiles at the Gauls. 10. Who will send grain into the little village (85)?

95. English derivatives: *ad-verb, in-duct, missionary, nostrum* ("our secret").

CHAPTER 13

FOURTH CONJUGATION, ABLATIVE OF MEANS

96.

PARADIGM

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **audiō, audire, audīvī, auditum,**
I hear, to hear, I have heard, having been heard

PRESENT SYSTEM (pres. stem, **audi-**)

TENSE	STEM	ENDINGS
Present,	audi-	+ t = audit , <i>he hears</i> , etc. + unt = audiunt , <i>they hear</i> , etc.
Imperfect,	audi- + ēbā	+ t = audiēbat , <i>he was hearing</i> , etc. + nt = audiēbant , <i>they were hearing</i> , etc.
Future,	audi- + ē	+ t = audiet , <i>he will hear</i> + nt = audient , <i>they will hear</i>

Study the paradigm carefully, beginning with the principal parts; then close your book, and write it out from memory. Notice the following peculiarities:

- Final *i* of the stem is shortened in all the forms.
- In the imperfect, *ē* is inserted before the tense sign *-bā-*.
- The tense sign of the future (*-ē-*) is the same as in *regō*.
- In the present, *u* is inserted before the plural ending *-nt*.

97. **-iō Verbs of the Third Conjugation.** A few verbs of frequent occurrence, called *-iō verbs of the third conjugation*, are of a mixed character, resembling somewhat the fourth conjugation. One of these verbs is **capiō, I take**. Principal parts:

capiō, capere (like **regere**), **cēpi, captum**. Notice the following forms are like the corresponding forms of **audiō** :

Present, capit capiunt	Imperfect, capiebāt capiebant	Future, capiet capient
---	--	---

98. Syntax.

The ablative, when translated *with* or *by*, often expresses the instrument *with which* or the means *by which* we do something. Thus, *he fights with a javelin, pīlō pugnat*; *by-means-of his forces he seizes the royal-power, cōpiis rēgnum occupat*. Here **pīlō** and **cōpiis** are called *ablatives of means or instrument*.

RULE 10. *Means or instrument is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.*

99.

EXERCISE

aqua , -ae, F., water	fossa , -ae, F., ditch, trench
castra , -ōrum, N. pl., camp	puer , puerī , M., boy (<i>see a, below</i>)
rēgnum , -ī, N., royal power, kingdom, throne	
(III) capiō, capere, cēpi, captum , take	
faciō, facere, fēcī, factum , make, do	
(IV) mūniō, mūnīre, mūnīvi, mūnītum , fortify	
veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum , come	

(a) **Puer**, *boy*, is declined like **mūrus**, except that it drops the termination **-us** in the nom. sing., and **-e** in the voc. sing. (83, b).

I. Like the model (96), form three tenses of **mūniō** and **veniō**. Like **capiō** (97), form three tenses of **faciō**. Give all meanings.

II. Compare the present of **moneō** (40) with the future of **regō** (88) and **audiō** (96).

III. Point out every *ablative of means or instrument* in the following :

1. Fossā castra mūniunt. 2. Quid puerī faciunt? 3. In Galliā castra Rōmānōrum videt. 4. Cōpiis rēgnum patriae occupābit. 5. Estne (44) aqua in fossā? 6. Lēgātus fortiter pugnābit et oppidum finitimum capiet. 7. Mūris oppida mūnient. 8. In Ītaliā nōn veniunt, sed venient. 9. They

see, they rule, they hear. 10. They will see, they will rule, they will hear. 11. The Romans were fighting with javelins. 12. He will lead [his] troops into camp.

100. English derivatives: *ad-vent*, *aquatic*, *audience*, *capture*, *-caster* (or *-cester* or *-chester*, seen in *Lancaster*, *Leicester*, *Manchester*, etc., towns founded on the sites of old Roman camps in England), *factory*, *fosse*, *munition*, *puerile*, *reign*.

CHAPTER 14

THE PERFECT SYSTEM (ACTIVE)

101.

PARADIGMS

PERFECT SYSTEM (perf. stem, <i>parāv-</i>)				
TENSE	STEM	ENDINGS	CONJUGATION I	
Perfect,	parāv-	+ it	= parāvit , <i>he (has) prepared</i> ¹ <i>did prepare</i>	
		+ ērunt	= parāvērunt , <i>they (have) pre- pared</i> , ¹ <i>did prepare</i>	
Pluperfect,	parāv-	+ erā + t	= parāverat , <i>he had prepared</i>	
		+ nt	= parāverant , <i>they had prepared</i>	
Fut. Perfect,	parāv-	+ eri + t	= parāverit , <i>he will have pre- pared</i>	
		+ nt	= parāverint , <i>they will have pre- pared</i>	
		CONJ. II	CONJ. III	CONJ. IV
Perfect,		monu-it	rēx-it , cēp-it	audīv-it
		monu-ērunt	rēx-ērunt , cēp-ērunt	audīv-ērunt
Pluperfect,		monu-erat	rēx-erat , cēp-erat	audīv-erat
		monu-erant	rēx-erant , cēp-erant	audīv-erant
Fut. Perfect,		monu-erit	rēx-erit , cēp-erit	audīv-erit
		monu-erint	rēx-erint , cēp-erint	audīv-erint

¹ The words *has* and *have* are enclosed in parentheses as a short way of showing that the perfect means either *he has prepared* or *he prepared*; *they have prepared* or *they prepared*.

102. Perfect System (Active). All verbs, whether regular or irregular, form the tenses of this system (92) exactly alike. Thus, *perf. stem + tense sign* (if any) + *personal endings*. These tenses denote *completed action*, as is shown by the use of some form of *have* in their meanings.

103. Perfect Stem. We find the *perfect stem* of any verb by dropping the final *i* of the third principal part (*perf. ind. act.*). Thus :

Perf. ind. act., *parāvī, monuī, rēxī, cēpī, audīvī* (93, *a* and 96).

Perfect stems, *parāv-, monu-, rēx-, cēp-, audīv-*.

104. Tense Signs. The tense signs in this system are : *pluperfect, -erā-* (34, *b*) ; *future perfect, -eri-*. The *perfect*, like the present (34, *a*), has *no tense sign*.

105. Personal Endings. The personal endings are the same as those already learned (*-t* and *-nt*), except those of the *perfect*, which are *-it* and *-ērunt*.

106. Imperfect and Perfect Compared (15, footnote).

These tenses have two meanings similar in the English translation, but differ in use as follows : (*a*) The imperfect denotes *continued, repeated, or customary action* ; (*b*) the perfect (when referring to *past* time, that is, without *has* or *have*) denotes *simply past time* without reference to continuance, etc. In the sentence, *The father whipped his son*, the use of the imperfect would mean that the action was continued or repeated or customary, while the perfect would simply mean that the act occurred, — that is all. Always use the *perfect* in such cases unless the thought shows that the imperfect is proper.

107.

EXERCISE

angustus, -a, -um, narrow, ex or ē, prep. with abl., out of, cramped from

captivus, -i, m., prisoner, captive lātus, -a, -um, broad, wide

contendō, contendere, contendī, contentum, strive, hasten, push on

ēdūcō, ēdūcere, ēdūxī, ēductum, lead out (see b below)

gerō, gerere, gessī, gestum, carry on, wage

redūcō, reducere, redūxī, reductum, lead back (see b below)

vincō, vincere, vīcī, victum, conquer

(a) Of the two forms **ex** and **ē**, use **ex** before vowels or **h**; use either before consonants.

(b) Latin has numerous *compound verbs*, made up of a preposition or other prefix, plus a simple verb. Thus, **ēdūcō** = **ē**, *out* + **dūcō**, *I lead*; **redūcō** = **rē-**, *back* + **dūcō**. Compare the English verbs *re-turn*, *out-run*, *over-flow*, etc.

I. On the model of 101, form the three tenses of completed action of **vāstō**, **teneō**, **geō**, **faciō**, and **mūniō** (first finding the perfect stems as in 103), with all meanings.

II. Review 37, and analyze **videt**, **vidit**; **vincet**, **vicit**; **mūniet**, **mūnivit**; **occupābit**, **occupāverunt**.

III. 1. Multa (64) **fēcērunt**. 2. Paucōs captīvōs tenuit. 3. **Ē** castris cōpiās **ēdūxit**. 4. Multa bella gessit, multōs populōs **vicit**. 5. Puerī fossam lātam in silvā **viderant**. 6. Captīvōs cōpiaē **terruērunt**. 7. Terra Gallia nōn angusta sed lāta est. 8. In castra Rōmānōs **redūxit**. 9. Multōs post annōs Rōmānī Gallōs **vicērunt**. 10. Lēgātus in Galliam **contendit**. 11. Post victōriam cōpiās in castra **redūcet**. 12. He waged few wars. 13. He did not hasten, but will hasten. 14. They had led back [their] troops. 15. Who conquered Gaul? 16. Have they led out their forces?

108. English derivatives: *captive*, *contend*, *educe* ("bring out," "cause to appear," for example, *educe good from evil*), *ex-it*, *in-vincible*, *latitude*, *reduce*.

CHAPTER 15

SOME PREPOSITIONS IN COMMON USE

109. Cases used with Prepositions. English prepositions always take after them the objective (*accusative*) case. The majority of Latin prepositions also take the *accusative*, but some, as we have seen, take the *ablative*. Four, like in (94, a), take either case, according to the meaning intended.

110. Accusative and Ablative Compared. The *accusative* follows prepositions meaning *to* or *into* as **ad** and **in**; the *ablative* follows those meaning *from* and *out of*, as **ab** (**ā**) and **ex** (**ē**), to which may be added **dē** (*down*) *from*. In fact, the accusative is the case used regularly of the place *to which something moves*, and the ablative of the place *from which it moves*.

RULE 11. *Place to which is expressed by ad or in with the accusative.*

RULE 12. *Place from which is expressed by ab (ā), dē, or ex (ē) with the ablative.*

(a) The Romans were very exact in their use of prepositions. When, for example, they spoke of a *person's* going to a town, they used **in**, *into*, with the accusative, if the person spoken of actually went *inside* the town, as is usually the case; but in speaking of an *army*, they used **ad**, *to* (*to the neighborhood of*), unless the army passed within the town walls. The opposite of **in**, *to-within*, is **ex**, *from-within*; the opposite of **ad**, *towards*, is **ab**, *away-from*. The pupil should draw a square with arrows illustrating by diagram the exact meanings of these four prepositions.

111. In with the Accusative or Ablative. We saw in 81, 3 (and Rule 9) that the ablative with **in** is used to express position or *place where*. Remember then the following:

in + accusative = *into, to* (place to which)
in + ablative = *in, on* (place where)

112. Summary. Learn the following summary of the principles explained above:

ACCUSATIVE	ABLATIVE	ABLATIVE
(place to which)	(place where)	(place from which)
ad , <i>to, toward</i>	in , <i>in, on</i>	ab , <i>from, away from</i>
in , <i>into, to</i>		ex , <i>out of, from</i>
		dē , <i>from, (down) from</i>

113. With. We saw in 98 that when *with* denotes the *means or instrument* (as in "fighting *with* swords," "helping *with* money," etc.), it is expressed by the ablative without a

preposition. But when *with* means *together with*, it is expressed by *cum* with the ablative, called the *ablative of accompaniment*. Thus, *he is coming with friends*, *cum amicis venit*; *the Romans fought with the Gauls*, *Rōmānī cum Galliis pugnavērunt*.

RULE 13. *Accompaniment is expressed by cum with the ablative.*

114.

EXERCISE

ab or ā, <i>prep. with abl.</i> , from	quattuor, <i>indecl. num. adj.</i> (78, a), four
causā, -ae, F., cause; <i>abl. causā</i> , after a <i>genitive</i> , for the sake of	quīnque, <i>indecl. num. adj.</i> , five
cum, <i>prep. with abl.</i> , with	sex, <i>indecl. num. adj.</i> , six.
dē, <i>prep. with abl.</i> , from, down from	

demonstrative pronoun and adjective, hic, M., haec, F., hoc, N., this
genitive, huius, M. F. and N.
accusative, hunc, M., hanc, F., hoc, N.

(a) Of the two forms *ab* and *ā*, use *ab* before vowels or *h*; use either before consonants. Compare *ex* and *ē* (107, a).

I. Point out every illustration below of Rules 11, 12, and 13:

1. Hic populus bellum cum finitimis saepe gesserat. 2. Lēgātus Rōmānus ex Italiā ad hoc oppidum contendet. 3. Quattuor oppida et sex vicōs cēpērunt. 4. Scūtum huius lēgātī angustum nōn est. 5. Ad hanc prōvinciam frūmentī causā contenderant. 6. Pecūniae causā multa (64) facient. 7. Magnis cum cōpiis (85) ad Rōmānōrum castra contendērunt. 8. Ex vicō vērunt quīnque puerī et quattuor puellae. 9. Tum in Britannia erant multae et magnae silvae. 10. Lātam in silvam venient. 11. Dē mūrō in nostrōs (94, III, 2) tēla mittēbant. 12. They will discharge many missiles at (in with acc.) the Romans. 13. He will come into this town. 14. He will lead the troops out of Italy. 15. They are hastening into this broad land for-the-sake of grain.

115. English derivatives: *ab-duct*, *cause*, *com-panion* (*cum* in compounds appears as *com-*, *con-*, etc., commonly meaning

together; *-panion* is from *pānis*, *bread*, the word *companion* meaning originally "bread-sharer"), *de-duct*, *quatrain* (stanza of four lines), *quinquennial*, *sexennial* (*-ennial* is from *annus*, *year*).

116.

SECOND REVIEW (68-115)

I. **Word Order.** 1. Why does *word order* affect the meaning of a sentence in English and not in Latin? 2. What is the *normal order* in Latin? 3. Why often changed? 4. In translating Latin, what is the all-important thing to remember? 5. Explain the word order of the phrase *parvā in insulā*.

II. **Inflection.** 1. Spell the names of the six cases (only one *-itive*). 2. Decline *vicus*, *insula*, and *scūtum*, in six cases. 3. Give the *present stem* of *regere*, and tell the changes it undergoes for the present indicative. 4. Tell the sign of the future indicative for Conjs. III and IV. 5. What is peculiar in *audiunt*? in *audiēbat*? 6. Analyze *veniēbat* and *veniet*. 7. Analyze *monet* and *reget*. 8. Analyze *venit* and *vēnit*. 9. What verbs of Conj. III resemble those of Conj. IV? 10. What shows that they belong to Conj. III? 11. How is the *perf. stem* of any verb found? 12. What tenses compose the *perfect system*? 13. How do all verbs form these tenses? 14. Tell the *kind of action* they express, their *tense signs*, and *personal endings*.

III. **Syntax.** 1. What tense expresses *ordinary past time*? 2. Give the rule for each italicized word: in *oppidō* est; in *oppidum* venit; ab *insulā* vēnit; ad *insulam* contendit; ē *castrīs* contendit; *fossā* castra mūniunt; Rōma, *amīce*, est in Italiā; magnis cum *cōpiīs* vēnit; *Rōmāntīs* frūmentum dabunt. 3. State an important principle about the ablative of persons' names, — as *puella*.

IV. **Vocabulary.**¹ 32. ā or ab, 33. ad, 34. angustus, 35. annus, 36. aqua, 37. audiō, 38. capiō, 39. captivus, 40. castra, 41. causa (*abl.*), 42. contendō, 43. cum, 44. dē, 45. dō, 46. dūcō, 47. ēdūcō, 48. ex, or ē, 49. faciō, 50. finitimus, 51. fortiter, 52. fossa, 53. frūmentum, 54. gerō, 55. hic, 56. in, 57. itaque, 58. lātus, 59. mittō, 60. mūniō, (*nostrī*), 61. nūntiō, 62. parvus, 63. paucī, 64. post, 65. primus, (*primō*), 66. puer, 67. quattuor, 68. quinque, 69. quis, 70. redūcō, 71. rēgnum, 72. saepe, 73. sed, 74. sex, 75. tum, 76. ubi, 77. veniō, 78. victōria, 79. vicus, 80. vincō.

¹ See footnote to 67, IV.

CHAPTER 16

SUM, I am, THE PRINCIPLE OF IDENTITY

117. PARADIGMS

PRESENT SYSTEM (pres. stem, es-)		
PRESENT	IMPERFECT	FUTURE
est, <i>he, etc., is</i> sunt, <i>they are</i>	erat, <i>he was</i> erant, <i>they were</i>	erit, <i>he will be</i> erunt, <i>they will be</i>

PERFECT SYSTEM (perf. stem, fu-)		
PERFECT	PLUPERFECT	FUTURE PERFECT
fu-it, <i>he has been, was</i> fu-erunt, <i>they have been, were</i>	fu-erat, <i>he had been</i> fu-erant, <i>they had been</i>	fu-erit, <i>he will have been</i> fu-erint, <i>they will have been</i>

118. **Principal Parts.** The verb *be* is in every language a very old one. Naturally such a verb would undergo many changes in the course of its long life. In English, for example, it has such unlike forms as *am*, *be*, and *was*. The principal parts of *sum* are *sum* (*I am*), *esse* (*to be*), *fui* (*I have been* or *was*), *futurus* (*going to be*). *Futurus* is the future participle.

119. **Present System.** The tenses of this system are very irregular. The present is formed regularly in the singular: *es- + t* (compare *parā- + t*). Notice, however, that all the forms have the personal endings *-t* and *-nt*.

120. **Perfect System.** The perfect stem is *fu-*. On this stem the tenses of the perfect system are built in the usual way (102-105).

121. Syntax.

(1) When a verb like *be* couples the subject with a predicate noun or adjective, it is called a *copula* (coupler). A better name would be

"*verb of identity*," because it couples words which refer to *identical* (that is, the *same*) persons or things. Thus:

Italy was the country of the Romans, Italia erat patria Rōmānōrum. Here *Italia* and *patria* refer to the *same* thing, and are therefore in the same case. In other words, *patria* is a *predicate noun* (50, Rule 2).

But: *Italy conquered the country of the Greeks, Italia patriam Graecōrum vicit.* Here *Italia* and *patriam* refer to *different* countries, and are therefore in different cases. In other words, *patriam* is the *direct object* of the transitive verb *vicit*.

(2) A noun used to explain another noun, referring to the *same* person or thing, is called an *appositive*, or is said to be in *apposition* to the noun explained. Here we have the same principle of identity between two persons or things as explained in (1), but with the *verb of identity* left out. Thus:

Nom. *Rome, a large town, Rōma, oppidum magnum*

Gen. *of Rome, a large town, Rōmae, oppidi magni, etc.*

RULE 14. *An appositive is in the same case as the noun which it explains.*

122. **Word Order.** The *copula* (121, (1)) being a mere link between subject and predicate, its position in the sentence is not so important as that of other verbs (70).

123.

EXERCISE

afterwards, *postea*, *adverb*

both . . . and, *et . . . et, conj.*

build, *aedificō, -āre, etc. (like parō)*

Remus, *Remus, -ī, M., brother of*

Romulus

wander, *errō, -āre, etc. (like parō)*

two, *nom. duo, M.*

gen. duōrum

acc. duōs (duo)

Rhea Silvia, *Rhēa Silvia, -ae -ae,*

F., mother of Romulus

Romulus, *Rōmulus, -ī, M., founder*

of Rome

son, *filius, fili, ¹ M.*

duae, F.

duarum

duās

duo, N., numeral adjective

duorum

duo

NOTE. The following is called a "constructive" exercise, — one in which you are to *construct* sentences with the italicized words. The form in which

¹Second declension nouns with *nom. sing. in -ius* and *-um* contract *-iī* in the *gen. sing.* into *-ī*. But in the *nom. plu. -ius* nouns have *-iī* unchanged.

each word is to be written is indicated in the parentheses following each, containing one of the following abbreviations:

app. = appositive	mod. = modifies	pred. = predicate noun or adjective
d. o. = direct object	p. e. = personal ending	subj. = subject
fut. = future	pf. = perfect	where = place where
impf. = imperfect	pl. from = place from which	

HINTS: (1) Form each sentence in English before attempting the Latin for it. Thus, the first sentence should be *Romulus was the son of Rhea Silvia, Rōmulus fuit filius Rhēae Silviae*. (2) Notice the expression *both . . . and*. Thus, in sentence 4, *Both Romulus and Remus were*, etc., *et Rōmulus et Remus fuērunt*, etc.

1. *Son* (pred.), *Romulus* (subj.), *be* (pf.), *Rhea Silvia* (gen.).
 2. *Sons* (d. o.), *have* (impf.), *how many* (78), *she* (p. e.)?
 3. *Romulus* (app.), *sons* (d. o.), *Remus* (app.), *have* (impf.), *and, two, she* (p. e.).
 4. *Rhea Silvia* (gen.), *Remus* (subj.), *and, both, be* (pf.), *Romulus* (subj.), *sons* (pred.).
 5. *Fatherland* (patria, pred.), *Italy* (subj.), *two* (gen.), *be* (pf.), *boys* (gen.).
 6. *Fatherland* (gen.), *in, they* (p. e.), *used-to* (not separately expressed; see note 1 at the end of reading lesson, 79), *forests* (where), *wander* (impf.).
 7. *Town* (d. o.), *Romulus* (subj.), *build* (pf.), *small* (mod. town).
 8. *Be* (pf.), *Rome* (pred.), *town* (subj.), *small* (mod. town), *this* (mod. town).
 9. *Romulus* (subj.), *famous* (65, mod. town), *rule* (pf.), *town* (app.), *Rome* (d. o.).
 10. *Troops* (d. o.), *town* (pl. from), *away-from, lead* (fut.), *afterwards, he* (p. e.), *little* (mod. town).
 11. *Nations* (d. o.), *rout* (fut.), *conquer* (fut.), *and, he* (p. e.), *neighboring* (mod. nations).
 12. *Great* (pred.), *both, he* (p. e.), *good* (pred.), *and, be* (impf.).
124. English derivatives: *duet, edifice, err, filial*.

CHAPTER 17

PASSIVE VOICE, ABLATIVE OF AGENT

125.

PARADIGMS

PASSIVE VOICE, PRESENT SYSTEM			
CONJUGATION I		CONJUGATION II	
Pres.	parā-tur , <i>he is (being) prepared</i> para-ntur , <i>they are (being) prepared</i>	monētur monentur	
Impf.	parābā-tur , <i>he was (being) prepared</i> parāba-ntur , <i>they were (being) prepared</i>	monēbātur monēbantur	
Fut.	parābi-tur , <i>he will be prepared</i> parābu-ntur , <i>they will be prepared</i>	monēbitur monēbuntur	
CONJUGATION III		CONJUGATION IV	
Pres.	regitur capitur reguntur capiuntur	auditur audiuntur	
Impf.	regēbātur capiēbātur regēbantur capiēbantur	audiēbātur audiēbantur	
Fut.	regētur capiētur regentur capientur	audiētur audientur	

(a) Review 9, and the last paragraph of 16. What is meant by *voice*? Tell which of the following verb forms are in the *active voice*, and which in the *passive*: *they attacked the camp, javelins were thrown, he was taking the city, the city was taken, the Romans were conquering them, the Romans were conquered by them, the enemy were defeating them, the buildings were being burned, they were assaulting the walls.*

126. Passive Voice (Present System). If we compare the above paradigms with preceding ones of the present system, we see the only difference between them is that the *passive* personal endings **-tur** and **-ntur** are used above (125) instead of the *active* endings: *active, parat, he prepares, but passive, parā-tur, he is (being) prepared, etc.*

(a) Review 97, and observe above (125) that *ca'pitur* has a *short penult*, while that of *audi'tur* is long; hence the difference in *accent* (27, b).

(b) In all forms in 125 a final *long* vowel remains long before -tur, but not before -ntur.

127. Syntax.

He who does a thing is an *agent* (= doer). In the *active* voice, the agent (if a person or animal) is the *subject*; in the *passive*, the agent is expressed in English with *by*, but in Latin by *ab* (*ā*) with the ablative, because the action proceeds *from* (*ab*) the agent. Thus, *Henry is advised by Charles*, *Henricus ā Carolō monētur*. This is called the *ablative of the agent*.

The agent controls his own actions. Compare this ablative with the abl. of *means* or *instrument* (98). Thus, *Henry is wounded (vulnerāre, to wound) by a missile*; the missile does not control its action, hence is not an agent, but an *instrument* in an agent's hands: *Henricus telō vulnerātur*. Compare 80, c.

RULE 15. *The agent with the passive voice is expressed by ā or ab with the ablative.*

128.

EXERCISE

<i>ā</i> or <i>ab</i> , <i>prep. with abl.</i> , from, by (114)	<i>liberī, -ōrum</i> , M. <i>pl.</i> , children <i>statim</i> , <i>adverb</i> , immediately
<i>auxilium</i> , <i>auxili</i> , ¹ N., help	<i>vinculum, -ī</i> , N., chain; <i>pl.</i> , prison
<i>inter</i> , <i>prep. with acc.</i> , between, among	
<i>coniciō, conicere, coniciēci, coniectum</i> , hurl, cast	
<i>liberō, liberāre, liberāvi, liberātum</i> , free	
<i>inveniō, invenire, invēni, inventum</i> (<i>in</i> , upon + <i>veniō</i>), find	
<i>relinquō, relinquere, reliquī, relictum</i> , leave	

I. 1. *Liberātur, liberābātur, liberābitur*. 2. *Relinquētur, relinquitur, relinquuntur*. 3. *Conicitur, coniciētur, coniciuntur*. 4. *Inveniuntur, inveniuntur, inveniēbantur*. 5. It will be laid waste. 6. They were (being) seen. 7. He will be conquered. 8. It is (being) built.

II. Point out illustrations of Rule 15: 1. In *vincula coniciuntur*. 2. *Liberābiturne* (44) *ab amicis*? 3. *Auxiliō amicō-*

¹ See footnote to *filius*, 123.

rum liberantur. 4. Liberī in silvā inveniuntur. 5. Castra ā nostris mūniuntur. 6. Liberōs in vincula statim coniēcīt. 7. Inter pāstōrēs (*shepherds*) inveniuntur. 8. Two shields are found by the children. 9. He was (being) cast into prison by the lieutenant. 10. By the help of two friends they will be freed immediately.

129. English derivatives: *auxiliary, inter-vene, invent, liberate, relinquish.*

CHAPTER 18

PASSIVE VOICE. — *Continued*

130.

PARADIGMS

PASSIVE VOICE, PERFECT SYSTEM¹

CONJUGATION I

Perf.	parātus est , <i>he has been or was prepared</i> parāti sunt , <i>they have been or were prepared</i>
Plup.	parātus erat , <i>he had been prepared</i> parāti erant , <i>they had been prepared</i>
F. Pf.	parātus erit , <i>he will have been prepared</i> parāti erunt , <i>they will have been prepared</i>

	CONJ. II	CONJ. III	CONJ. IV
Perf.	monitus est monitī sunt	rēctus (captus) est rēctī (captī) sunt	auditus est audītī sunt
Plup.	monitus erat monitī erant	rēctus (captus) erat rēctī (captī) erant	auditus erat audītī erant
F. Pf.	monitus erit monitī erunt	rēctus (captus) erit rēctī (captī) erunt	auditus erit audītī erunt

¹ Strictly speaking, there is no perfect passive system, since these tenses are made up of *two parts*, and hence are not based on *one stem* (92). Since, however, they all begin with the same form (perf. pass. part.), they are, for convenience, called a system.

131. Passive Voice (*Perfect System*). The perfect system in the passive voice is formed exactly alike for all verbs: *perf. pass. participle + pres., impf., and fut.* of the auxiliary verb *sum, I am*. The perf. pass. participle is the *fourth* principal part of the verb, but has three gender terminations, *-us, -a, -um*.

132. Perfect Passive Participle. This participle is declined like *bonus, -a, -um*, and since every participle is a verbal *adjective* (13), it follows the rule for adjective agreement (Rule 6, under 62). Observe, therefore, the following changes in the form of the participle to agree in *gender* and *number* with the subject:

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
Mas.	parātus est , <i>HE has been,</i> etc.	parātī sunt , <i>they (M.) have,</i> etc.	
Fem.	parāta est , <i>SHE has been,</i> etc. ¹	parātae sunt , <i>they (F.) have,</i> etc.	
Neu.	parātum est , <i>IT has been,</i> etc.	parāta sunt , <i>they (N.) have,</i> etc.	

So in all other tenses of the system.

(a) The definition of voice (9) showed that the *object* of an active verb becomes the *subject* of the passive. For the exercise below (133) it is also important to remember that the *subject* of the active (if a person or animal) becomes the *agent* of the passive (127).

133.**EXERCISE**

<i>Helvētia, -ae, F., Helvetia, now</i> <i>Switzerland</i>	<i>nūntius, nūntī,¹ M., messenger,</i> message
<i>Helvētīi, -ōrum, M. pl., Helvetians</i>	<i>reliquus, -a, -um, remaining, rest</i>
<i>imperium, imperī,¹ N., command,</i> control	of

moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtum, move; break (camp)
oppugnō, oppugnāre, etc. (ob, against + pugnō), attack
pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positum, place; pitch (camp)

- I. 1. *Dūxit, ductus est.* 2. *Miserat, missa erat (132).*
 3. *Posuerit, positum erit.* 4. *Nūntium mīsit, nūntius missus*

¹ See footnote to *filius*, 123.

est. 5. Bellum gesserat, bellum gestum erat. 6. Cōpiās redūxerit, cōpiae reductae erunt. 7. Rōmānī castra Helvētiōrum oppugnāverant, castra Helvētiōrum ā Rōmānīs oppugnāta erant. 8. Nostrī ab Helvētiis nōn victi sunt, Helvētiī nostrōs nōn vicērunt.

II. On the model of sentences 7 and 8 in I, and remembering 132, *a*, last sentence, change the following sentences from the *passive* to the *active* form, or the reverse :

1. Nūntius ab Helvētiis missus est. 2. Rōmānī castra mōverant. 3. Helvētia ā nostrīs victa erit. 4. Nostrī hoc oppidum oppugnāvērunt. 5. Imperium Galliae ā Rōmānīs occupātum est. 6. Reliquae cōpiae in Galliā castra posuerant. 7. Bellum cum Helvētiis ā nostrīs gestum est. 8. Quattuor captīvī parvō ā puerō visī sunt. 9. Rōmulus hoc oppidum in Italiā aedificāvit.

134. English derivatives : *imperious, move, oppugn, position, relic.*

CHAPTER 19

THREE CASES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

135. PARADIGMS

Examples: rēx, king	māter, mother	flūmen, river
Bases: rēg-, M.	mātr-, F.	flūmin-, N.

SINGULAR

Nom. rēg- + s = rēx	mātr- = māter
Gen. rēg- + is = rēgis	mātr- + is = mātris
Acc. rēg- + em = rēgem	mātr- + em = mātrem

PLURAL

Nom. rēg- + es = rēgēs	mātr- + es = mātres
Gen. rēg- + um = rēgum	mātr- + um = mātrum
Acc. rēg- + es = rēgēs	mātr- + es = mātres

SINGULAR		PLURAL
Nom. flūmin-	= flūmen	flūmin- + a = flūmina
Gen. flūmin- + is	= flūminis	flūmin- + um = flūminum
Acc. flūmin-	= flūmen	flūmin- + a = flūmina

136. Third Declension. Review 48 and 49. How can the *base* of a noun be found? Nouns of the *third declension* have the termination *-is* in the gen. sing. The *nominative* singular ends in various ways.

(a) *Gs* or *cs* becomes *x*. Hence, base *rēg-* + termination *s* = nom. sing. *rēx*.

(b) The base *mātr-* has an *e* inserted to form the nom. sing. *māter*. The base *flūmin-* is changed to *flūmen* for the nominative.

(c) Notice that all three genders are found in this declension.

137.

EXERCISE I

altus, -a, -um, high, deep	māter, mātris, F., mother
deus, -ī, M., god	nunc, <i>adverb</i> , now
Faustulus, -ī, M., Faustulus, <i>a man's</i>	pāstor, pāstōris, M., shepherd
name	per, <i>prep. with acc.</i> , through, over
filia, -ae, F., daughter	rēx, rēgis, M., king
flūmen, flūminis, N., river	

I. On the model of 135, decline the Latin words for *a good shepherd*; *a little mother*; *a deep river*.

II. 1. Magnās per silvās. 2. Alta per flūmina. 3. Tum Rōmulus rēx erit, nunc puer est. 4. Faustulus pāstor erat rēgis. 5. Faustulum, pāstōrem rēgis, vidērunt. 6. Liberi auxiliō deōrum liberātī sunt. 7. Cuius filii inter pāstōrēs errābant? 8. Deī filius fuit hic puer. 9. Mātris causā (114) hoc fēcit. 10. Flūmina in Ītaliā pauca magna sunt, sed clāra.

III. 1. Between the deep rivers of this narrow land. 2. For the sake of the great king. 3. This god is now loved (58) by the king's daughter (127). 4. Through the tall (=high) forests of Gaul. 5. Of Faustulus, the king's shepherd (121, 2). 6. The kings pitched [their] camp in the little island (85).

138. English derivatives: *alto*, *deity*, *filial*, *flume*, *maternal*, *pastor*, *per-ennial* (115, last word), *regal*.

139.

EXERCISE 2

Albānus, -a, -um, Alban; <i>pl. as noun</i> (64), Albānī, -ōrum, M.	latrō, latrōnis, M., robber
<i>pl., Albans, the people of Alba Longa, mother city of Rome</i>	malus, -a, -um, bad
Amūlius, Amūli, ¹ M., Amulius, a man's name	Mārs, Mārtis, M., Mars, god of war
frāter, frātris, M., brother	Numitor, Numitōris, M., Numitor, a man's name
	pueritia, -ae, F., boyhood.

demonstrative pron. and adj.	nom. ille, M., illa, F., illud, N., that
	gen. illius, M. F. & N.
	acc. illum, illam, illud

agō,	agere,	ēgī,	āctum, do; pass (time)
interficiō,	interficere,	interfēcī,	interfectum, kill
servō,	servāre,	servāvī,	servātum, save

I. Decline together in three cases (135), singular only, the Latin for *that bad brother*; *this great robber*.

II. 1. Auxiliō quattuor rēgum. 2. In pueritiā illius rēgis. 3. Illud Albānōrum oppidum. 4. Amūli et Numitōris causā. 5. Duōrum frātrum hic² bonus fuit, ille² malus. 6. Amūlius et Numitor fuērunt frātrēs. 7. Quis fuit Mārs? Belli deus fuit. 8. Ubi pueri pueritiā ēgērunt? 9. Inter pāstōrēs pueritiā ēgērunt. 10. Hoc flūmen lātum, illud angustum est. 11. Quis liberōs illius rēgis servāvit? 12. Faustus, pāstor rēgis, liberōs servāvit. 13. A cuius filiā amātus est Mārs?

III. 1. Among robbers. 2. In the boyhood of this brother. 3. She loved Mars, the god of war (121, 2). 4. Romulus and Remus were the sons of Mars, the god of war. 5. The son of Mars built the walls of that little town.

140. English derivatives: *agent*, *fraternal*, *malice*, *martial*, *pre-serve*.

¹ See footnote to *filius*, 123.

² In contrasts *hic . . . ille* may be translated *the latter . . . the former*.

CHAPTER 20

READING LESSON

141. IMPORTANT. Read the following instructions for translating Latin :

(1) Take in each sentence, if possible, *at a glance*. Try to get the meaning as a *whole*. If there is any doubt about it, then follow the method of 74, taking each word as it comes in the sentence, examining its terminations or endings, and thus determining *what part the word plays in the sentence*.

(2) Do not try to translate a sentence before you grasp its meaning. Then express the thought in your best English.

(3) Never look up the meaning of an *old* word until you are sure, after patient effort, that you cannot recall it. This is most important. The habit of looking up meanings, without reflection, is natural to beginners, but fatal to their progress. On the other hand, after once cultivating the habit of examining each word carefully, you will sometimes be able to get at the meaning even of a new word, if it is related to other words already known to you.

(4) When looking up a *new* word, linger over it long enough to impress its meaning upon your memory.

142.

VOCABULARY

forte, *adverb*, by chance, as it happened

omnia, *N. pl. nom. and acc.*, everything (*from omnis*, all, 64)

sic, *adverb*, so, thus

cognōscō, **cognōscere**, **cognōvī**, **cognitum**, find out; *pf.* (I have found out)
I know, and *plup.*, I knew

cūrō, **cūrāre**, **cūrāvī**, **cūrātum**, care for, take care of

143.

ROMULUS AND REMUS

I. Duo frātrēs ōlim¹ erant, Numitor et Amūlius. Numitor bonus, Amūlius malus erat. Numitor rēx erat Albānōrum. Rēx filium et filiam habēbat. Filia rēgis erat Rhēa Silvia.

II. Amūlius frātre^m superāvit et fugāvit. Rēgnum occupāvit. Filium Numitōris interfēcit; filiam fēcit Vestālem² virginem.² Sed filia ā deō belli amābātur, ā quō³ duōs filiōs

peperit,⁴ Rōmulum et Remum. Mātre liberōrum Amūlius in vincula coniēcit; duōs liberōs in flūmen abiēcit.⁵ Forte aqua flūminis reflūens⁶ liberōs in terrā reliquit. Lupa⁷ eōs⁸ cūrāvit. Postea Faustulus pāstor eōs⁸ invēnit et servāvit.

III. Sic Rōmulus et Remus pueritiam inter pāstōrēs ēgerunt. Tum in Ītaliā magnae erant silvae. Per silvās errābant puerī. Mātre nōn cognōverant, Numitōrem nōn cognōverant. Paucōs post annōs Remum cēperunt latrōnēs. Deinde⁹ Faustulus Rōmulō omnia indicāvit.¹⁰ Statim Rōmulus ad Numitōrem contendit. Auxiliō Numitōris Remum liberāvit. Postea puerī Amūlium interfecērunt, et Numitōrī rēgnū restituērunt.¹¹

NOTES: 1. *once*. 2. *a Vestal virgin* (translated after *filiam*), a priestess to Vesta, goddess of the hearth and home, in whose temple the sacred fire was always kept burning by the priestesses in charge. The Vestals were not allowed to marry. 3. *ā quō, by whom*. 4. *she bore*. 5. *he threw*. 6. *flowing back*; the river had previously overflowed its banks. 7. *she-wolf*. 8. *them*. 9. *Thereupon*. 10. *revealed*. 11. *restored*.

CHAPTER 21

PASSIVE PRINCIPAL PARTS, DEPONENT VERBS

144. Principal Parts of Passive Verbs. In the *passive voice* verbs have only three principal parts (93): pres. indicative passive, pres. infinitive passive, perf. indicative passive.

	PRES. IND. PASS.	PRES. INF. PASS.	PERF. IND. PASS.
I.	paror <i>I am (being) prepared</i>	parārī <i>to be prepared</i>	parātus sum <i>I have been or was prepared</i>
II.	moneor	monērī	monitus sum
III.	regor	regī	rēctus sum
	capior	capī	captus sum
IV.	audior	audīrī	audītus sum

(a) Observe that —

(1) Pres. indicative passive (first person singular) is made by adding -r to the corresponding active form. Thus, active **parō** + r = **paror**, passive.

(2) Pres. infinitive passive is formed by changing the act. ending -re to -rī, except in the third conjugation, where -ere is changed to -ī. Thus:

I	II	III	IV
Active, parā-re	monē-re	reg-ere, cap-ere	audī-re
Passive, parā-rī	monē-rī	reg-ī, cap-ī	audī-rī

(3) Perf. indicative passive is already known in the third person singular (parātus est, 130). For the first per. sing., change est to sum.

145.

EXERCISE

Write out the principal parts in both voices of vāstō, habēō, mittō, coniciō (128), and mūniō, imitating the following model:

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.	PERF. PART.
Active, parō	parāre	parāvī	parātus (pass.)
Passive, paror	parārī	parātus sum	

146. Deponent Verbs. An important class of verbs, called *deponent verbs*, has passive forms, but active meanings. They have the four conjugations, and their principal parts are like those of *passive verbs* (144). Learn the following:

I.	cōnor	cōnā-rī	cōnātus sum
	<i>I attempt</i>	<i>to attempt</i>	<i>I (have) attempted</i>
II.	vereor	verē-rī	veritus sum, fear
III.	{ sequor	sequ-ī	secūtus sum, follow
	{ morior	mor-ī	mortuus sum, die
IV.	experior	experī-rī	expertus sum, try, test

(a) Examine the *second* principal part (pres. inf.) of each of these verbs. Observe that the stem vowel before -rī in each determines its conjugation, just as it does in the four regular conjugations (42), except in the *third conjugation*, where the infinitive ends simply in -ī (sequ-ī and mor-ī): I. ārī, II. ērī, III. ī, IV. īrī.

147.

EXERCISE

fortūna, -ae, F., luck, chance, fortune inopia, -ae, F., want, scarcity
 proficiscor, proficiscī, profectus sum, set out, start
 queror, querī, questus sum, lament, complain of

I. Determine the conjugation of the two deponent verbs above, observing that *er* in the inf. *queri* belongs to the *stem*, as may be seen from the pres. ind. *queror*.

II. Tell the tense of each form and translate: 1. *Cōnātus erat, veritus est, sequuntur, moriēbātur*. 2. *Experientur, verēbātur, secūtus est*. 3. *Secūtī sunt, experta est, expertī erunt*. 4. *Mortua est, veritus erat, secūtī erunt*. 5. They will attempt. 6. She has followed (132). 7. They had died. 8. It had feared. 9. They will have tried.

III. 1. *Frūmentī inopiam verēbantur*. 2. *Fortūnam bellī experiētur*. 3. *Perīcula (dangers) bellī nōn questī sunt*. 4. *Multī in oppidō mortuī sunt*. 5. *Ille lēgātus ad flūmen profectus est*. 6. *Bonī (64) deum verentur*. 7. *Filiī patrem sequuntur*. 8. *Omnia cognōscere (meaning of the infinitive?) cōnātus erat*. 9. *Inopiam tēlōrum et scūtōrum querēbantur*. 10. *Frūmentī causā in hanc terram proficiscētur*.

148. English derivatives: *con-sequence, experience, fortune, mortuary* (cemetery), *querulous, re-verē*.

SUMMARIES OF PART I

(VERBS, RULES, DERIVATIVES)

149. Verbs:

ACTIVE VOICE

PRESENT SYSTEM

	I	II	III	IV	Irregular
Pres.	<i>parat</i>	<i>monet</i>	<i>regit, capit</i>	<i>audit</i>	<i>est</i>
Impf.	<i>parābat</i>	<i>monēbat</i>	<i>regēbat, capiēbat</i>	<i>audiēbat</i>	<i>erat</i>
Fut.	<i>parābit</i>	<i>monēbit</i>	<i>reget, capiet</i>	<i>audiet</i>	<i>erit</i>

PERFECT SYSTEM

Perf.	<i>parāvit</i>	<i>monuit</i>	<i>rēxit, cēpit</i>	<i>audivit</i>	<i>fuit</i>
Plup.	<i>parāverat</i>	<i>monuerat</i>	<i>rēxerat, cēperat</i>	<i>audiverat</i>	<i>fuerat</i>
F. Pf.	<i>parāverit</i>	<i>monuerit</i>	<i>rēxerit, cēperit</i>	<i>audiverit</i>	<i>fuerit</i>

PASSIVE VOICE

PRESENT SYSTEM

I	II	III	IV
Pres. parātur	monētur	regitur, capitur	audītur
Impf. parābātur	monēbātur	regēbātur, capiēbātur	audiēbātur
Fut. parābitur	monēbitur	regētur, capiētur	audiētur

PERFECT SYSTEM

I	II
Perf. parātus est	monitus est
Plup. parātus erat	monitus erat
F. Pf. parātus erit	monitus erit
III	IV
Perf. rēctus est, captus est	audītus est
Plup. rēctus erat, captus erat	audītus erat
F. Pf. rēctus erit, captus erit	audītus erit

(a) Deponent Verbs (passive in *form*, active in *meaning*):

	Pres.	Impf.	Fut.
I.	cōnātur	cōnābātur	cōnābitur
II.	verētur	verēbātur	verēbitur
III.	{ sequitur	sequēbātur	sequētur
	{ moritur	moriēbātur	moriētur
IV.	experitur	experiēbātur	experiētur
	Perf.	Plup.	F. Perf.
I.	cōnātus est	cōnātus erat	cōnātus erit
II.	veritus est	veritus erat	veritus erit
III.	{ secūtus est	secūtus erat	secūtus erit
	{ mortuus est	mortuus erat	mortuus erit
IV.	expertus est	expertus erat	expertus erit

150. Rules.

1. Any word that answers the question *who?* or *what?* before a finite verb is the subject of the verb, and is in the nominative case.

2. A predicate noun is in the same case as the subject.

3. If the subject is singular, the verb is singular ; if the subject is plural, the verb is plural.

NOTE. Verbs thus far have been treated only in the *third person*. Later, when other persons of the verb are introduced, we shall find that the verb must also be in the *same person* as the subject.

4. Any word that answers the question *whom?* or *what?* after a transitive verb is the direct object of the verb, and is in the accusative case.

5. The genitive case denotes possession.

6. An adjective, whether attributive or predicate, is in the same gender, number, and case as the noun which it modifies.

7. The indirect object is in the dative case.

8. The vocative is the case of address.

9. Place where is expressed by *in* with the ablative case.

10. Means or instrument is expressed by the ablative case without a preposition.

11. Place to which is expressed by *ad* or *in* with the accusative case.

12. Place from which is expressed by *ab* (*ā*), *dē*, or *ex* (*ē*) with the ablative case.

13. Accompaniment is expressed by *cum* with the ablative case.

14. An appositive is in the same case as the noun which it modifies.

15. The agent with the passive voice is expressed by *ab* (*ā*) with the ablative case.

151. English Derivatives.

De-vastate, in-superable, pre-pare, pugnacious. Ad-monish, debt, tenet, terrify, vision. Insulate, silvan, terrestrial. Amiable, amicable, armor, legate, patriot. Bonbon, clarify, magnify, multiply, nautical, poet, populace, province. Annual, post-script, prime. An-nounce, dative, in-hale, paucity, pecuniary, vicinity, victory. Ad-verb, in-duct, missionary, nostrum. Ad-vent, aquatic, audience, capture, Lancaster, factory, fosse, munition, puerile, reign. Captive,

contend, educe, ex-it, in-vincible, latitude, reduce. Ab-duct, cause, com-panion, de-duct, quatrain, quinquennial, sexennial. Duet, edifice, err, filial. Auxiliary, inter-vene, invent, liberate, relinquish. Imperious, move, oppugn, position, relic. Alto, deity, flume, maternal, pastor, per-ennial, regal. Agent, fraternal, malice, martial, pre-serve. Consequence, experience, fortune, mortuary, querulous, re-verere.

PART II

CHAPTER 22

REVIEW OF FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS WITH ADDITIONS

152. PARADIGMS OF THE FIRST DECLENSION

Examples: *fossa, ditch* *via longa, long road*
Bases: *foss-, F.* *vi- long-, F.*

SINGULAR

Nom. (Voc.)	<i>foss-a, a ditch</i>	<i>via longa</i>
Gen.	<i>-ae, of a ditch</i>	<i>viae longae</i>
Dat.	<i>-ae, to, or for a ditch</i>	<i>viae longae</i>
Acc.	<i>-am, a ditch</i>	<i>viam longam</i>
Abl.	<i>-ā, from, with, by a ditch</i>	<i>viā longā</i>

PLURAL

Nom. (Voc.)	<i>foss-ae, ditches</i>	<i>viae longae</i>
Gen.	<i>-ārum, of ditches</i>	<i>viārum longārum</i>
Dat.	<i>-is, to or for ditches</i>	<i>viis longis</i>
Acc.	<i>-ās, ditches</i>	<i>viās longās</i>
Abl.	<i>-is, from, with, by ditches</i>	<i>viis longis</i>

(a) The first declension is also called the **A**-declension, because the *stem* ends in *ā*. Thus, base *foss-* + *ā* = *fossā*, stem. The *stem* is that part of the word to which case-endings are added for inflection. But the final vowel of the stem so blends with the case-endings that it is often difficult to separate the two. The word "termination," used in preceding chapters, includes the final vowel plus the case-ending.

153. First Declension. The gen. sing. ends in *-ae*. **GENDER:** feminine, unless masculine by natural gender (7). **PECULIAR FORMS:** *dea, goddess*, and *filia, daughter*, make their dat. and abl. plural *deabus* and *filiabus* to distinguish them from the same cases of *deus, god*, and *filius, son*.

REVIEW OF FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS 61

NOTE 1.¹ In old Latin there was another case, called the *locative*, denoting location or *place where*. This case was afterwards lost, except in *town* names and a few other words. In these words the *locative* of the first declension is like the gen. sing., as *Rōmae*, at *Rome*. In plural nouns, the *ablative* is so used, as *Athēnis*, at *Athens*, from *Athēnae*, -ārum.

NOTE 2. With names of *countries* and other nouns than those mentioned in Note 1, *place where* is expressed, as already said (Rule 9), by *in* with the *ablative*, as *in Italiā*, in *Italy*; *in vicō*, in *the village*.

154. PARADIGMS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION

Examples: *vicus* *scūtum* *filius* *cōnsilium*, *plan*
Bases: *vic-*, M. *scūt-*, N. *fili-*, M. *cōnsili-*, N.

SINGULAR

Nom.	<i>vic-us</i>	<i>scūt-um</i>	<i>fili-us</i>	<i>cōnsili-um</i>
Gen.	-i	-i	<i>fili</i>	<i>cōnsili</i>
Dat.	-ō	-ō	<i>fili-ō</i>	<i>cōnsili-ō</i>
Acc.	-um	-um	<i>fili-um</i>	<i>cōnsili-um</i>
Voc.	-e	-um	<i>fili</i>	<i>cōnsili-um</i>
Abl.	-ō	-ō	<i>fili-ō</i>	<i>cōnsili-ō</i>

PLURAL

N. V.	<i>vic-i</i>	<i>scūt-a</i>	<i>fili-i</i>	<i>cōnsili-a</i>
Gen.	-ōrum	-ōrum	<i>fili-ōrum</i>	<i>cōnsili-ōrum</i>
Dat.	-is	-is	<i>fili-is</i>	<i>cōnsili-is</i>
Acc.	-ōs	-a	<i>fili-ōs</i>	<i>cōnsili-a</i>
Abl.	-is	-is	<i>fili-is</i>	<i>cōnsili-is</i>

(a) The second declension is also called the *O*-declension, because the *stem* ends in *o*. Thus, base *vic-* + *o* = *vico-*, stem. Similarly, the stems of *scūtum*, *filius*, and *cōnsilium*, are *scūto-*, *filiō-*, and *cōnsilio-*. Compare 152, *a*.

155. Second Declension. The gen. sing. ends in -i. The nom. sing. ends in -us, -um, -er, and -ir (156). GENDER: -um, neuter; all others, regularly masculine. PECULIAR FORMS: (1) nouns in -ius and -ium contract -ii in the gen. sing. into -i without change of accent, even though the penult be short: *fili* and *cōnsi'i*. (2) Proper nouns in -ius and *filius* (154) form the voc. sing. in -i without change of accent: *Vergi'i* (from

¹ If the teacher thinks best, these notes may be omitted.

Vergilius), Vergil! (3) The voc. sing. mas. of the possessive adjective *meus*, -a, -um, *my, mine*, is *mī*: *mī fili, my son!*

NOTE 1. The locative (153, Note 1, and footnote) of the second declension is like the gen. sing., as *Corinthī*, at *Corinth*. In plural nouns, the ablative is so used, as *Delphis*, at *Delphi*, from *Delphi*, -ōrum.

NOTE 2. See 153, Note 2.

156. PARADIGMS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION.

Continued

Examples: *ager, land* *puer, boy* *vir, man*
Bases: *agr-, M.* *puer-, M.* *vir-, M.*

SINGULAR

N. V.	<i>ager</i>	<i>puer</i>	<i>vir</i>
Gen.	<i>agr-i</i>	<i>puer-i</i>	<i>vir-i</i>
Dat.	<i>agr-ō</i>	<i>puer-ō</i>	<i>vir-ō</i>
Acc.	<i>agr-um</i>	<i>puer-um</i>	<i>vir-um</i>
Abl.	<i>agr-ō</i>	<i>puer-ō</i>	<i>vir-ō</i>

PLURAL

N. V.	<i>agr-i</i>	<i>puer-i</i>	<i>vir-i</i>
Gen.	<i>-ōrum</i>	<i>-ōrum</i>	<i>-ōrum</i>
	<i>etc.</i>	<i>etc.</i>	<i>etc.</i>

(a) For the nom. and voc. sing. of these nouns, see 99, a.

157. *Ager* and *puer*. *Ager* drops the e after the nom. sing. (base *agr-*), but *puer* retains the e throughout (base *puer-*). Most nouns of this class are like *ager*. The vocabularies show by the gen. sing. form whether the e is retained or not.

158. Adjectives in -er. Most adjectives in -er of this declension drop the e after the nom. sing. masculine, as *crēber*, *crēbra*, *crēbrum*, *frequent*. The feminine and neuter forms of the nom. sing. show whether the e is dropped or retained. Thus:

	SINGULAR			SINGULAR		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. V.	<i>crēber</i>	<i>crēbr-a</i>	<i>crēbr-um</i>	<i>liber</i>	<i>liber-a</i>	<i>liber-um</i>
Gen.	<i>crēbr-i</i>	<i>crēbr-ae</i>	<i>crēbr-i</i>	<i>liber-i</i>	<i>liber-ae</i>	<i>liber-i</i>
Dat.	<i>crēbr-ō</i>	<i>crēbr-ae</i>	<i>crēbr-ō</i>	<i>liber-ō</i>	<i>liber-ae</i>	<i>liber-ō</i>
		<i>etc.</i>			<i>etc.</i>	

159.

EXERCISE 1

ager, agrī, M., land, field	meus, -a, -um (155, 3), <i>poss. adj.</i> ,
cōnsilium, cōnsili, N., plan, advice	my, mine
crēber, -bra, -brum, thick, frequent	noster, nostra, nostrum, <i>poss. adj.</i> ,
liber, -era, -erum, free	our (94)
longus, -a, -um, long	numerus, -i, M., number
	via, -ae, F., way, road, route
	vir, virī, M., man

1. What have you learned about the *vocative* (83, b)? 2. Distinguish between *fili* and *filiī*. 3. Why has *cōnsilium* the termination -a in the nom. and acc. plural? 4. Explain the meaning of *nostrī*, *our men* (64). 5. What does *via* mean in "He went to New York *via* Philadelphia"? 6. Define the following derivatives: *agriculture* (*cultūra* means *cultivation*), *virile*, *numerous*, *liberal*, *counsel*, *long*, and *im-per-vious* (*im-* as in "im-possible"). 7. Decline together the Latin for *a long field*; *our road*; *a good plan*.

160.

EXERCISE 2

gladius, gladi, M., sword	novus, -a, -um, new
locus, -i, M., place, position; <i>plural</i> , loca, -ōrum, N.	porta, -ae, F., gate
nātūra, -ae, F., character, nature	proelium, proeli, N., battle

committō, committere, commisi, commissum, join (*battle*), entrust

I. 1. Cōnsili boni, cōnsilia bona. 2. Nostris in agrīs, in Gallōrum agrōs. 3. Crēbrorum proeliōrum. 4. Altis ex portis, altās per portās. 5. In hunc locum, multa in loca. 6. Lātā in viā. 7. Malō ā virō. 8. Liberō cum virō. 9. Magnum gladiōrum longōrum numerum. 10. Longis dē mūrīs, angustis ex portis. 11. My son (voc.). 12. With a broad sword (instrument).¹ 13. With the messenger's daughters (accompaniment). 14. By frequent battles (means), by our lieutenant (agent). 15. To my free country (place to which).

II. 1. Haec via angusta, illa lātā est. 2. Hoc oppidum loci nātūrā mūnītum est. 3. Ad Gallōrum castra ductae erant cōpiaē nostrae. 4. Fossā altā et lātā castra mūnivērunt.

¹ This exercise in phrase making serves as a review of the rules in 150.

5. Tum proelium statim commisit. 6. Rōmānī Gallōrum agrōs vāstāverunt. 7. Crēbris nūntiīs terrēbantur. 8. Duās portās habet hoc oppidum, illud quīnque.

161.

THIRD REVIEW (117-160)

I. **Inflection.** 1. Give a synopsis (149) in the *plural*, active voice only, of **vāstāre**, **movēre**, **pōnere** and **mūnīre**. 2. Give a synopsis in the plural of the following *deponent* verbs (149, a): **hortor**, **hortārī**, **hortātus sum**, **urge**; **polliceor**, **pollicērī**, **pollicitus sum**, *promise*; **queror**, **querī**, **questus sum** (144); **potior**, **potīrī**, **potītus sum**, *get control of*. 3. Give a synopsis in the plural of **sum** (149). 4. How are the tenses of the *present system* formed for the third person in the *passive voice*? Give an illustration. 5. How are those of the *perfect system* formed? Give an illustration. 6. Name the principal parts of a *passive* verb. 7. What is a *deponent* verb? 8. Decline **locus** in the plural. 9. How do **noster** and **liber** differ in inflection? 10. Name two *nouns* that differ in the same way. 11. What peculiarities of inflection have second declension nouns in **-ius** and **-ium**?

II. **Syntax.** 1. Why does a *predicate noun* or *adjective* agree in case with the subject? 2. To what other rule of syntax does the same principle apply? 3. Give the rule for the *agent*. 4. How does the agent differ from the *means or instrument*? Give an illustration of each in Latin.

III. **Vocabulary.**¹ (ā, ab, 128), 81. aedificō, 82. ager, 83. agō, 84. altus, 85. auxilium, 86. cognōscō, 87. committō, 88. coniciō, 89. cōnor, 90. cōnsilium, 91. crēber, 92. cūrō, 93. duo, (et . . . et), 94. experior, 95. filia, 96. filius, 97. flūmen, 98. fortūna, 99. frāter, 100. gladius, 101. ille, 102. imperium, 103. inopia, 104. inter, 105. interficiō, 106. liber, (liberī, 128), 107. locus (pl.), 108. longus, 109. maneō, 110. māter, 111. moveō, 112. nātūra, 113. noster, (nostrī), 114. novus, 115. numerus, 116. nūntius, (ōmnia), 117. op-pugnō, 118. per, 119. pōnō, 120. porta, 121. posteā, 122. proelium, 123. proficiscor, 124. queror, 125. relinquō, 126. reliquus, 127. rēx, 128. sequor, 129. sic, 130. statim, 131. vereor, 132. via, 133. vir.

¹ See the footnote to 67, IV.

CHAPTER 23

THIRD DECLENSION

162. Third Declension. This declension includes all nouns and adjectives with genitive singular ending in *-is*. It may be divided into two classes, according to the termination of the *genitive plural*:

Class I: words with gen. plural in *-um*.

Class II: words with gen. plural in *-ium*.

CLASS I. *-UM* IN THE GENITIVE PLURAL

163.

PARADIGMS

Examples: *cōnsul*, *consul* *lēx*, *law* *caput*, *head*
 Bases: *cōnsul*, M. *lēg*, F. *capit*, N.
 Stems: *cōnsul-* *lēg-* *capit-*

			TERMINATIONS	
			M. F.	N. ¹
SINGULAR				
N.V.	<i>cōnsul</i>	<i>lēx</i>	<i>caput</i>	— or s —
Gen.	<i>cōnsul-is</i>	<i>lēg-is</i>	<i>capit-is</i>	-is
Dat.	<i>cōnsul-i</i>	<i>lēg-i</i>	<i>capit-i</i>	-i
Acc.	<i>cōnsul-em</i>	<i>lēg-em</i>	<i>caput</i>	-em —
Abl.	<i>cōnsul-e</i>	<i>lēg-e</i>	<i>capit-e</i>	-e
PLURAL				
N.V.	<i>cōnsul-ēs</i>	<i>lēg-ēs</i>	<i>capit-a</i>	-ēs -a
Gen.	<i>cōnsul-UM</i>	<i>lēg-UM</i>	<i>capit-UM</i>	-UM
Dat.	<i>cōnsul-ibus</i>	<i>lēg-ibus</i>	<i>capit-ibus</i>	-ibus
Acc.	<i>cōnsul-ēs</i>	<i>lēg-ēs</i>	<i>capit-a</i>	-ēs -a
Abl.	<i>cōnsul-ibus</i>	<i>lēg-ibus</i>	<i>capit-ibus</i>	-ibus

164. Stems. In the *first declension*, how does the stem differ from the base (152, a)? How in the *second declension* (154, a)? We shall find in the *third declension* that the stem plays a more important part. The stems of the above nouns

¹ The neuter terminations are given only when different from the masculine and feminine.

(163) are the same as the bases, and end in a consonant. Hence these are called *consonant stems*. They have *-um* in the genitive plural.

(a) The nom. sing. is formed from the *stem* in different ways. Thus, nom. *cōnsul* is like the stem unchanged, but *lēx* is formed by adding *s* to the stem (136, a), while neuter *caput* changes *i* of the stem to *u*.

(b) Stems ending in a mute are called *mute stems*. The mutes are *p* and *b* (lip sounds); *t* and *d* (tooth sounds); *c* and *g* (throat sounds). Mute stems, unless neuter, add *s* to form the nom. sing.; hence *lēx* (F.), but *caput* (N.).

(c) Mute stems in *t* or *d* drop these letters before *s* in the nom. sing. See, for example, *tempestās* (= *tempestāt-* + *s*) in the vocabulary (166).

165. Gender. Gender rules will be given later. Until then, learn the genders as they are given in the vocabularies.

166.**EXERCISE**

<i>caput, capitā, N., head</i>	<i>nōmen, nōminis, N., name</i>
<i>certāmen, certāminis, N., contest</i>	<i>senātor, senātoris, M., senator</i>
<i>cōnsul, cōsulis, M., consul</i>	<i>tempestās, tempestātis, F., storm</i>
<i>dē, prep. with abl., concerning, about,</i> <i>from (114)</i>	<i>tempus, temporis, N., time</i>
<i>lēx, lēgis, F., law</i>	<i>victor, victoris, M., conqueror</i>

<i>dō, dare, dedī, datum (94)</i>
<i>manēō, manēre, mānsī, mānsū, remain</i>

I. Decline together *victor Rōmānus*; *tempestās magna*; *nōmen clārum*.

II. Tell the *stems* of the nouns in the vocabulary (166). Which are *mute stems*?

III. 1. Multōrum capitum. 2. Dē lēge. 3. Certāmen dē nōmine. 4. Ā duōbus cōsulibus. 5. Paucis cum senātoribus. 6. Illud tempus. 7. Huius tempestātis. 8. Magna victōrum nōmina. 9. By the first consul (agent). 10. With laws (means), with kings (accompaniment). 11. By a contest (means), about many laws. 12. To give (inf.) a law to the people.

IV. 1. Primo Rōma ā rēge, postea ā duobus cōsulibus regēbātur. 2. Tempestātes in castris nostris continent (*keep*). 3. Senātōrēs in oppidō māsērunt. 4. Cōsulī prōvinciam dedērunt. 5. Manēbuntne (44) cōpiae in castris? 6. Agrī Galliae ā cōsule vāstābantur. 7. Flūmen per agrōs huius rēgis fluit (*flows*). 8. Rōmānīs bonās lēgēs dedit. 9. Quis primus fuit Rōmānōrum rēx?

CLASS II. -IUM IN THE GENITIVE PLURAL

167.

PARADIGMS

Examples : *hostis, enemy caedēs, slaughter mare, sea*

Bases : host-, M.

caed-, F.

mar-, N.

Stems : **hosti-**

caedi-

mari-

TERMINATIONS
(added to the base,
not to the stem)

SINGULAR

N.V.	host-is	caed-ēs	mar-e	-is, -ēs	-e
Gen.	host-is	caed-is	mar-is	-is	
Dat.	host-i	caed-i	mar-i	-i	
Acc.	host-em	caed-em	mar-e	-em	-e
Abl.	host-e	caed-e	mar-i	-e	-i

PLURAL

N.V.	host-ēs	caed-ēs	mar-ia	-ēs	-ia
Gen.	host-IUM	caed-IUM	(mar-IUM ¹)	-IUM	
Dat.	host-ibus	caed-ibus	mar-ibus	-ibus	
Acc.	host-is, -ēs	caed-is, -ēs	mar-ia	-is, -ēs	-ia
Abl.	host-ibus	caed-ibus	mar-ibus	-ibus	

168. Stems. In Class II the stem = base + i. Thus, base host- + i = *hosti-*, stem. Hence these nouns (167) are called *I-stems*. They have **-ium** in the genitive plural.

169. Case Forms. Notice the forms of the nom. sing. **hostis**, **caedēs**, and **mare**. I-stems (except neuters) add **s** to the stem to form the nominative singular.

(a) ACCUSATIVE SINGULAR: *turris*, *tower*, and names of *rivers* and *cities* regularly have *-im* in the acc. singular. Thus, *turrim*; *Tiberim*, *the Tiber* (river); *Neāpolim*, *Naples* (city).

¹ TO THE TEACHER: This form, though regular, does not occur.

(b) ABLATIVE SINGULAR: neuters (see **mare**, 167) regularly have **-i** in the abl. singular. So have nouns mentioned in *a* above. A few others have either **-i** or **-e**, of which the following should be remembered:

ignis, M., *fire*; **civis**, M., *citizen*; **nāvis**, F., *ship*.

(c) ACCUSATIVE PLURAL: the acc. plural ends in **-is** or **-ēs** (mas. and fem.) and **-ia** (neuters).

170. Gender. I-stems vary in gender. Rules will be given later.

171. Neuters in -e, -al, and -ar. The nom. sing. of **mare** was originally **mari** (stem), but the final **i** was changed to **e**. Other neuters of Class I have the nom. sing. in **-al** and **-ar**, dropping the final vowel altogether: **animal**, *animal*, and **calcar**, *spur*. These, with nouns like **mare**, are together called *neuters in -e, -al, and -ar*.

172. Increasing and Not-increasing Nouns. Consonant stems (163) have one more syllable in the genitive than in the nominative singular, and are called *increasing* nouns. I-stems (167) are *not-increasing* nouns. Hence the rule: *increasing* nouns generally (not always, as we shall see) have **-um** in the genitive plural; *not-increasing* nouns, **-ium**.

(a) Neuters in **-al** and **-ar**, since they originally ended in **-e**, are classed with **mare** as not-increasing nouns.

173.

EXERCISE

apertus, -a, -um, open

aquila, -ae, F., eagle

avis, **avis**, F., bird

caedēs, **caedis**, F., slaughter

civis, **civis**, M., citizen

collis, **collis**, M., hill

dēnsus, -a, -um, thick, dense

hostis, **hostis**, M., enemy; *often plural*

mare, **maris**, N., sea

mēnsis, **mēnsis**, M., month

nūbēs, **nūbis**, F., cloud

numquam, *adv.*, never

augeō, **augēre**, **auxi**, **auctum**, increase

I. Review the vocabulary of 166. Decline together the Latin for *a high hill*; *a thick cloud*; *the open sea*; *a good law*; *a new contest*; *a large head*.

II. 1. In mari, in mare (111). 2. Avium magnārum.
 3. Altō in colle. 4. Nūbium dēnsārum. 5. In XII mēnsis.
 6. Dēnsis ē silvis. 7. Cum hostibus numquam pugnāre (inf.).
 8. Numerum hostium augēre (inf.). 9. Multārum aquilārum.
 10. By great slaughter (means). 11. By the enemy (agent).
 12. Of many enemies. 13. With few citizens (accompani-
 ment). 14. Into the open sea (place to which). 15. Out-of
 a great cloud (place from which).

III. 1. Patria caede hostium servāta est. 2. Castra Rō-
 mānōrum ab hostibus nōn capta sunt. 3. Magna avis est
 aquila. 4. Annus in XII mēnsis dēscriptus est (*was divided*).
 5. Magnae nūbēs civis terrēbant. 6. Hic rēx civium numerum
 numquam auxit. 7. Nostri certāmen numquam recūsant
 (*refuse*).

174. PARADIGMS OF "MIXED STEMS"

Examples: **pars**, *part* **nox**, *night*
 Bases: **part-**, F. **noct-**, F.
 Stems: Sing. **part-**, Pl. **parti-** Sing. **noct-**, Pl. **nocti-**

N. V.	pars	part-ēs	nox	noct-ēs
Gen.	part-is	part-IUM	noct-is	noct-IUM
Dat.	part-i	part-ibus	noct-i	noct-ibus
Acc.	part-em	part-is, -ēs	noct-em	noct-is, -ēs
Abl.	part-e	part-ibus	noct-e	noct-ibus

(a) Review 136, *a*, and 164, *c*, and explain the forms of the nom. sing. **pars** and **nox**.

175. Mixed Stems. Above (174) are examples of "*mixed stems*," so called because in the *singular* they increase like consonant stems (172), but in the *plural* have I-stem endings (167), that is, **-ium** in the gen. pl. and **-is** or **-ēs** in the acc. plural. To this mixed group belong —

(1) nouns with bases of one syllable ending in two consonants (**part-**, **noct-**).

(2) most nouns in **-ns** and **-rs**.

176. Gender. Mixed stems, with a few exceptions, are feminine.

(a) Two exceptions (rather frequent in Caesar) are *mōns, montis*, *mountain*, and *pōns, pontis*, *bridge*, both masculine.

177. Summary of the chief difficulties of inflection in the third declension :

I. Four groups of nouns have *-ium* in the gen. plural, namely :

- (1) *Not-increasing nouns in -is and -ēs* (167).
- (2) *Neuters in -e, -al, and -ar* (171).
- (3) *Nouns with bases of one syllable ending in two consonants* (175, 1).
- (4) *Most nouns in -ns and -rs* (175, 2).

II. The most troublesome terminations are those of the ablative singular and the genitive and accusative plural. Thus :

Neuters in *-e, -al*, and *-ar*, and a few mas. and fem. *I*-stems (169, b) have abl. sing. in *-i*; all others in *-e*.

I-stems and mixed stems have *-lum* in gen. plural; consonant stems *-um*.

I-stems and mixed stems have acc. pl. in *-is* or *-ēs* (neuter *-ia*); consonant stems *-ēs* (neuter *-a*).

III. To determine the *class* to which a third declension noun belongs: unless a mixed stem (175), it is a consonant stem if increasing, an *I*-stem if not-increasing. But remember 172, a.

178.

EXERCISE

agmen, agminis , N., army (<i>on the march</i>), column	ignis, ignis , M., fire
civis, civis , M. (173)	mīles, militis , M., soldier
dux, ducis , M., leader, general	mōns, montis , M., mountain
gēns, gentis , F., race, tribe, clan	mors, mortis , F., death
homō, hominis , M., man, human being	nāvis, nāvis , F., ship
	urbs, urbis , F., city

- I. 1. Classify the above nouns by the method of 177, III.
2. Give the *ablative singular* and the *genitive* and *accusative plural* of each of them.
3. Review the vocabulary of 173.

II. 1. Post mortem. 2. Ex tempore.¹ 3. In nāvī, in nāvem. 4. Inter montem et flūmen. 5. Castra hostium oppugnāre (inf.). 6. Magnam urbium partem. 7. In urbe manēre (inf.). 8. Bonus dux bonum reddit (*makes*) militem. 9. Cum hostium nāvibus proelium commīsērunt. 10. Omnia (142) igni victa sunt. 11. Ille dux omnium (*of all*) militum nōmina cognōverat. 12. Agmen hostium ad hoc oppidum contendit. 13. In nostrā patriā sunt montēs alti et flūmina lāta. 14. Paucae nāvium igni dēlētae sunt (*dēlēre, to destroy*). 15. Of many ships. 16. Of few races. 17. With a large army (accompaniment). 18. Into the mountains (place to which). 19. Children often fear (146, II) the night. 20. Many of the mountains in Europe (*Eurōpa, -ae*) are high and broad.

III. Define these derivatives: *aperture, capital, aquiline, auction* (173), *aviary, victorious, navy, civil, duke*,² *legal, consul, military, mortal, tempest, temporary, dense, ignite, inter-urban, gentle*,³ *marine, hostile, per-manent*.

179. PARADIGMS OF TWO IRREGULAR NOUNS

Sing., N.A.V.	iter , N., <i>march,</i> <i>journey</i>	Sing., Nom.	vis , F., <i>force, vio-</i> <i>lence</i>
Gen.	itineris	Gen.	vis (rare)
Dat.	itineri	D. Abl.	vi (rare in dative)
Abl.	itinere	Acc.	vim
Plur., N.A.V.	itinerā	Plur., Nom.	virēs , <i>strength</i>
Gen.	itinerum	Gen.	virium
Dat.	itineribus	D. Abl.	viribus
Abl.	itineribus	Acc.	virīs, -ēs

(a) Notice the difference of meaning in the singular and plural of **vis**.

¹ An "ex tempore speech" is one springing out of the time or occasion, suggested by the moment.

² In the Bible we read, "Then the *dukes* (= leaders) of Edom shall be amazed" (*Ex. 15, 15*).

³ "Gentle" originally meant "belonging to one of the great families or *gentēs* of Rome" (*Words and their Ways in English Speech*, p. 327).

180.

EXERCISE

amor, amōris , M., love	pāx, pācis , F., peace
finis, finis , M., end, border; <i>pl.</i> , territory	princeps, principis , M., chief, leader
iter, itineris , N., march, journey;	virtūs, virtūtis , F., manliness, courage, valor
magnum iter , a forced march;	vīs, vīs , F., force, violence; <i>pl.</i> , strength
iter faciō , I march	
laus, laudis , F., praise	
legiō, legiōnis , F., legion, <i>the largest division of the Roman army, 3500 to 6000 soldiers</i>	
addūcō, -ere , ¹ addūxī, adductum (ad + dūcō), lead on, influence	
coniūrō, -āre, coniūrāvī, coniūrātum , conspire	
laudō, -āre, laudāvī, laudātum , praise	

I. 1. Laude militum. 2. In hostium finibus. 3. Legionum virtute. 4. Cum Galliae principibus. 5. Magnō itinere. 6. Dē militum vī. 7. Huius legiōnis. 8. Concerning peace. 9. By forced marches. 10. Into the Gauls' territory. 11. By six legions (agent).

II. 1. Principēs huius partis Galliae contrā (*against*) populum Rōmānum coniūrābant. 2. Dux in hostium finis (-ēs) iter faciet. 3. Magnō itinere contendit. 4. Dux virtutem militum laudāvit. 5. Laudis amor milites addūcit. 6. Legiōnēs Rōmānae hostis (-ēs) vicērunt. 7. Hostēs lēgātōs dē pāce ad ducem misērunt. 8. This general often conquered by the valor of his soldiers. 9. With six legions he marched into Gaul. 10. The enemy will march into the province.

GENDER AND FORMS OF THE NOMINATIVE SINGULAR IN THE THIRD DECLENSION

181. Gender. Gender rules in the third declension have many exceptions. A few rules, however, may be helpful. *If a noun has natural gender (7), its gender is determined as in English, and is not subject to other rules.*

¹ In future vocabularies the infinitive will not be given in full, but only the ending with the preceding vowel to show its conjugation.

- I. Masculine: nouns in **-ō**, **-or**, **-os**, and **-er**.
- II. Feminine: 1. mute stems in **-s** (164, *b*), including *mixed stems* (175).
 2. nouns in **-dō**, **-gō**, and usually **-iō**. See note below.
 3. not-increasing nouns in **-is** and **-ēs** (167).
- III. Neuter: 1. nouns in **-t**, **-men**, and **-us** (short u).
 2. nouns in **-e**, **-al**, and **-ar** (171).

NOTE. "Nouns in **-ō**" (Rule I) does not include those in **-dō**, **-gō**, and **-iō** (Rule II, 2).

182. Mute Stems. Review 164, *b* and *c*, and notice the following changes made in forming the nom. sing. from the stem:

GEN. SING.	STEM	NOM. SING.
principis	princip-	prīnceps (s added, and i changed to e).
militis	milit-	mīles (s added, t dropped, and i changed to e).

183. Nominative Singular. The following list is not to be memorized, but is given, first, to show some of the most common forms of the *nominative singular* in the third declension; next, to afford an opportunity to test the rules of *gender* (181). Bear in mind the italicized words in 181, and apply the gender rules. Which noun below is an exception to Rule II, 3?

MASCULINE AND FEMININE NOUNS

prīnceps , prīncipis , M., chief	laus , laudis , F., praise
plēbs , plēbis , F., populace	pāx , pācis , F., peace
nox , noctis , F., night	lēx , lēgis , F., law
flōs , flōris , M., flower	agger , aggeris , M., mound
amor , amōris , M., love	pater , patris , M., father
cupīdō , cupīdinis , F., desire	legiō , legiōnis , F., legion [being
imāgō , imāginis , F., likeness	homō , hominis , M., man, human
	sermō , sermōnis , M., speech
finis , finis , M., end, border	caedēs , caedis , F., slaughter

NEUTER NOUNS

caput, capitis , N., head	tempus, temporis , N., time
flumen, fluminis , N., river	opus, operis , N., work
cubile, cubilis , N., couch	animal, animālis , N., animal
calcar, calcāris , N., spur	

NOTE. The stem of **pater, patris**, M., *father*, is **patr-**. The **e** inserted for the nom. sing. is simply to make it pronounceable. So also **māter, mother**, and **frāter, brother**. These are, therefore, *increasing* nouns, and have the gen. pl. in **-um**: **patrum, mātrum, frātrum**.

CHAPTER 24

COMPLEMENTARY INFINITIVE, TWO ACCUSATIVES

184.

VOCABULARY

against, contrā , <i>prep. with acc.</i>	his, her, its, their (own), suus, -a, -um
Caesar, Caesar, Caesaris , M.	safe, tūtus, -a, -um
father, pater, patris , M.	suitable, idōneus, -a, -um

call, **appellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**

decide, **cōstituō, -ere, cōstitui, cōstitutum**

elect, **creō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**

render, make, **reddō, -ere, reddidī, redditum** (**red-**, back, + **đō**)

(a) Irregular Verbs:

(1) **Vult, he wishes, is willing, volunt, they wish, are willing. Volēbat, he was willing, wished, volēbant, they were willing, wished.**

(2) **Nōn vult, he is unwilling, does not wish, nōlunt, they are unwilling, do not wish. Nōlēbat, he was unwilling, etc., nōlēbant, they were unwilling, etc.**

(3) **Potest, he can, is able, possunt, they can, are able. Poterat, he could, was able, poterant, they could, etc.**

185. English and Latin Compared. While English and Latin have many differences in their grammar, yet they have also many points in common. This chapter deals with two principles of syntax that are true of both languages.

186. The infinitive (second principal part, the sign in English being *to*) is a *verbal noun* (13). Like other nouns, it may

be the *object* of another verb. Thus, *I wish to go*, in which the infinitive *to go* is the object of the verb *wish*. In the sentence, *I wish him to go*, the object of *wish* is *him to go*, where *him* (the accusative or objective of *he*) is the subject of the infinitive *to go*. In both languages, then, the infinitive may be the *object* of another verb; also, the infinitive may itself have a *subject*, and this subject must be in the *accusative*.

187. Complementary Infinitive. Study 632, with 1 and the example, then answer the following questions:

How many uses has the infinitive as an *object*? How is the infinitive *without a subject-accusative* used? What is it called? Explain the name. Say in Latin, *He decides to do this*. Point out further illustrations in the following sentences:

188. 1. *Militēs in hostium finēs¹ iter facere volēbant.* 2. *Principēs in castris manēre nōlēbant.* 3. *Proelium statim committere cōstituit.*

189. Two Accusatives. Study 547, with *a* and *b* and the three examples, then answer the following questions:

What verbs take *two accusatives*? Name each accusative. Say in Latin, *They elect Caesar consul*, and explain. What other part of speech may be used for the predicate *noun*? Give an illustration. When the verb is changed to the passive, what other changes occur? Point out illustrations of these principles in the following:

190. 1. *Populus virum rēgem creāvit.* 2. *Vir ā populō rēx creātus est.* 3. *Hoc oppidum Rōmam appellant.* 4. *Castra loci nātūrā tūta reddita sunt.*

191.

EXERCISE

Point out illustrations of the principles explained in this chapter:

I. 1. *Cum hostibus pugnāre vult.* 2. *Amicum suum creāre lēgātum cōstituit.* 3. *Multa (64) finēs hostium tūtōs reddidē-*

¹ Hereafter the accusative plural of mas. and fem. I-stems will be written with the termination *-ēs*.

runt. 4. Duās urbēs oppugnāre nōlēbant. 5. Idoneō in locō castra pōnere vult. 6. Populus Rōmānus senātōrēs appellābat patrēs.

II. 1. The senators were called "fathers" by the Roman people. 2. They are unwilling to conspire against their (own) country. 3. He can (is able to) seize control (133) of his (own) country. 4. The general had decided to lead-back his (own) troops into camp. 5. From the high hill they could (were able to) see many legions. 6. He is unwilling to influence his (own) soldiers by praise. 7. For-the-sake of grain they decided to march into the enemy's (plural) territory.

III. Review the vocabularies of 166, 173, 178, and 180.

CHAPTER 25

FOURTH AND FIFTH DECLENSIONS

192.

PARADIGMS

Examples: *passus, pace*

Bases: *pass-, M.*

Stems: *passu-*

cornū, horn

corn-, N.

cornu-

TERMINATIONS

(added to the *base*, not to the stem)

SINGULAR			M.	N.
N. V.	<i>pass-us</i>	<i>corn-ū</i>	<i>-us</i>	<i>-ū</i>
Gen.	<i>pass-ūs</i>	<i>corn-ūs</i>	<i>-ūs</i>	
Dat.	<i>pass-ui, -ū</i>	<i>corn-ū</i>	<i>-ui</i>	<i>-ū</i>
Acc.	<i>pass-um</i>	<i>corn-ū</i>	<i>-um</i>	<i>-ū</i>
Abl.	<i>pass-ū</i>	<i>corn-ū</i>	<i>-ū</i>	
PLURAL				
N. V.	<i>pass-ūs</i>	<i>corn-ua</i>	<i>-ūs</i>	<i>-ua</i>
Gen.	<i>pass-uum</i>	<i>corn-uum</i>	<i>-uum</i>	
Dat.	<i>pass-ibus</i>	<i>corn-ibus</i>	<i>-ibus</i>	
Acc.	<i>pass-ūs</i>	<i>corn-ua</i>	<i>-ūs</i>	<i>-ua</i>
Abl.	<i>pass-ibus</i>	<i>corn-ibus</i>	<i>-ibus</i>	

(a) Why may this be called the **U**-declension? See 152, *a* and 154, *a*.

193. Fourth Declension. Nouns of the fourth declension end in *-ūs* in the gen. sing. Notice the nom. sing. ends in *-us* and *-ū*.

(a) **Domus, house**, besides all the fourth declension forms, has the following in the *second declension*: *domī*, meaning *at home* (155, Note 1); acc. *domum* (pl. *domōs*), *homeward, home* (place to which); abl. *domō*, *from home* (place from which). With these forms no preposition is used to express place where, place to which, place from which.

194. Gender. Nouns in *-us* (with a few exceptions) are masculine; those in *-ū*, neuter. Two common exceptions are *domus, house*, and *manus, hand*, both feminine.

195.

EXERCISE

cornū, -ūs, N., horn; wing (*of an army*)
domus, -ūs, F., house; home (193, a)
impetus, -ūs, M., attack, onset
exercitus, -ūs, M., army

manus, -ūs, F., hand; band, force
passus, -ūs, M., pace, *measure of length*
senātus, -ūs, M., senate
undique, *adverb*, from or on all sides

I. Decline together the Latin for *a large army* and *a small force*.

II. 1. Impetus in (*upon*) hostēs factus est. 2. Undique impetus in nostrōs ab hostibus factus erat. 3. Amicus ā senātū populī Rōmānī appellātus est. 4. Caesar in finēs Suessionū¹ exercitum dūxit, et magnō itinere ad oppidum Noviodūnum² contendit. 5. Puerī mulierēsque (*and women*) passis (*outstretched*) manibus pācem ab Rōmānīs petunt (*seek*). 6. On a wing of the Roman army. 7. With a small force (accompaniment). 8. By an attack upon (*in with acc.*) the army. 9. From the senate, into the senate, in the senate. 10. Of a house, of many houses, at home (193, a).

¹ Suessionēs, -ūm, M. pl., the Suessiones.

² A town of the Suessiones.

196. PARADIGMS OF THE FIFTH DECLENSION

Examples:	diēs, day	rēs, thing	TERMINATIONS
Bases:	di-, M.	r-, F.	(added to the <i>base</i> , not to the stem)
Stems:	diē-	rē-	

SINGULAR

N. V.	di-ēs	r-ēs	-ēs
Gen.	di-ēi	r-eī	-ēi or -ei
Dat.	di-ēi	r-eī	-ēi or -ei
Acc.	di-em	r-em	-em
Abl.	di-ē	r-ē	-ē

PLURAL

N. A. V.	di-ēs	r-ēs	-ēs
Gen.	di-ērum	r-ērum	-ērum
D. Abl.	di-ēbus	r-ēbus	-ēbus

(a) Why may this be called the E-declension? See 192, a.

197. Fifth Declension. The fifth declension includes all nouns with the gen. sing. ending in **-ēi** or **-ei**. (The *e* is long after a vowel: **diēi**.) The nominative singular ends in **-ēs**.

198. Gender. Nouns of this declension are feminine, except **diēs, day**, usually masculine.

199. EXERCISE

aciēs, aciēi , F., line of battle	rēs, rei , F., thing, affair
diēs, diēi , M., day	salūs, salūtis , F., safety
fidēs, fidei , F., faith; protection	sine, prep. with abl. , without
ibi, adverb , there	spēs, spei , F., hope
discēdō, -ere, discessi, discessum , depart	
instruō, -ere, instruxi, instructum , draw up	
recipiō, -ere, recēpi, receptum (re-, back + capiō) , receive	

I. Decline together the Latin for *the first line of battle*.

II. Make a table of the terminations of the genitive singular in each declension.

III. 1. Haec rēs Caesarī nūtiāta est. 2. Exercitum suum, parvam manum, ē castris ēdūxit. 3. Aciem ibi instruet.

4. Impetum in hostium exercitum sine spē victōriæ fēcit. 5. In militum virtūte est spēs salūtis. 6. Lēgātī nōn sine spē disceserunt. 7. Rēx in fidem finitimōs recipiet. 8. Ibi aciem instruere cōstituit. 9. Of a few days. 10. By a great hope of safety. 11. By the safety of the army. 12. He wishes to receive them (eōs) into [his] protection.

CHAPTER 26

ACCUSATIVE OF EXTENT, ABLATIVE OF TIME, DATIVE
WITH ADJECTIVES

200.

VOCABULARY

angry, *irātus*, -a, -umfoot, *pēs*, *pedis*, m.friendly, *amicus*, -a, -umnear, *propinquus*, -a, -umnext, nearest, *proximus*, -a, -umpleasing, welcome, *grātus*, -a, -umthird, *tertius*, -a, -umthousand, *mille* ; pl. *mīlia* (202)watch,¹ *vigilia*, -ae, f.hold (fast), possess, *obtineō*, -ēre, *obtinui*, *obtentum* (ob, against, + *teneō*)

(a) Irregular Verb: *abest* (ab, away + est), *he is away, distant, off, absunt, they are away*, etc. *Aberat*, *he was away*, etc., *aberant*, *they were away*, etc.

201. *Passus*, *pace* (192), was a measure of length, a double step, or 5 Roman feet (4 ft. 10 in.). *A thousand paces, mille passūs = a (Roman) mile.*

202. *Mille, thousand*, in the singular is an indeclinable numeral adjective. In the plural (*mīlia*), it is a noun, taking the genitive plural (of *passus*, for example). Hence, 1 *mile, mille passūs*, but *four miles, mīlia passuum quattuor*. *Mīlia* (pl.) is declined: Nom. Acc. *mīlia*, Gen. *mīlium*, Dat. Abl. *mīlibus*.

¹ The Roman camp was watched by pickets (*excubiae*) during the day and by *vigiliae, watches*, during the night. The latter were relieved four times during the night. Hence *vigilia* came to be used as a measure of time, meaning *one fourth of the night*. The watch varied in length, of course, according to the time of the year, but the *third watch* always began at midnight.

203. Accusative of Extent. Study 548 and state the rule in full. Say in Latin, *He remains a few days*; also, *The town was eight (octō) miles off*.

204. Time When or Within Which. Study 570, and state the rule. Say in Latin, *He came on the third day*; also, *They will conquer within a few years*.

205. Dative with Adjectives. Study 544 and state the rule. Say in Latin, *They are nearest to the Germans (Germāni, -ōrum)*.

206.**EXERCISE**

Point out all illustrations of the principles explained in this chapter:

I. 1. *Helvētiīs erat amīcus.* 2. *Diē primō milia passuum sex iter fēcērunt.* 3. *Rēgnum multōs annōs obtinuerat.* 4. *Mūrus domū propinqua est.* 5. *Castra hostium ā nostrīs paucīs diēbus capientur.* 6. *Hic mūrus sex pedēs altus est.* 7. *Militēs fuērunt lēgātō irātī.* 8. *In finēs suōs vigiliā tertiā proficīscuntur (147).* 9. *Exercitus hostium milia passuum quinque aberat.* 10. *Locum idōneum castrīs dēligunt (choose).*

II. 1. In the first watch he joined battle with the enemy. 2. They will build a wall ten (*decem*) feet high. 3. This (neuter, 64) will not be pleasing to Remus. 4. They will march six miles. 5. He was angry at (see I, 7) his (own) brother. 6. The soldiers of this legion were unwilling to remain there many days. 7. On the next day he was not able to lead his (own) troops against the enemy. 8. The soldiers will have marched many miles within a few days. 9. On the third day ambassadors will come to Caesar concerning peace. 10. At the third watch he decided to set out (147) for (*ad*) the high hills.

CHAPTER 27

READING LESSON

207.

VOCABULARY

eōs, <i>mas. acc. pl. of is, ea, id</i> (290), them	ut, <i>conjunction, as; a following ita</i> <i>is translated so. in the same</i>
--	---

simul, *adverb*, at the same time way

dēmōnstrō, -āre, *etc.*, show, prove; ut dēmōnstrātum est, as (it) has been shown

(a) Defective Verb*: **inquit**, *says* (or *said*) *he*. It follows the first word or two of the quoted words. Thus:

“Hic diēs,” inquit, “pulcher est,”

"This is a fine day," says he.

208.

THE FOUNDING OF ROME

NOTE. In the early days of ancient peoples many wonderful stories were told of superhuman beings, which we know could not have been true, but which were believed by those who told them. Such stories are called *myths*. The first reading lesson in this book (*The Story of Rome*, Chap. 10) is, of course, not a myth, but actual history. The second (*Romulus and Remus*, Chap. 20) is a myth, and is continued in the following story. Here you will read of a quarrel between the two brothers about the honor of founding and naming the city of Rome. They believed that the gods made known their will about many things by signs, called *omens*. So the brothers agreed to settle their dispute (*certāmen*) by an appeal to such omens as they might see in the sky. While thus scanning the blue heavens above (*caelum servāre, to observe the heavens*), Remus was the first to see an omen, — six vultures, the birds sacred to Jupiter, king of the gods. A few moments later Romulus saw twelve of the same birds. Accordingly, we are told, Romulus became the founder of the city, and gave it its name. The jealous Remus thereupon made fun of the city walls, and, according to the myth, was killed by the angry Romulus.

209. Duo frātēs, Rōmulus et Remus, ut dēmōnstrātum est, ā Faustulō pastōre servātī sunt. In Albānōrum oppidō manēre nōlēbant. Collem amābant, ubi servātī erant. Ibi urbem aedificāre cōstituērunt. Sed certāmen inter eōs fuit dē nōmine novae urbis. Uterque¹ urbī nōmen dare volēbat. Caelum

* That is, a verb that has not a full conjugation.

servāre (see note above) cōstituērunt. Prior² Remus sex avēs magnās vidit. Haec rēs Rōmulō nūntiāta est. Postea Rōmulus XII avēs magnās vidit. Itaque Rōmulus victor appellātus est. Hoc Remō grātum nōn erat. Dum³ Rōmulus mūrōs oppidi parvī aedificat,⁴ Remus eōs saepe trānsilit.⁵ "Quam⁶ altī," inquit, "sunt mūrī tuī! Hostēs in tuam urbem venīre nōn possunt!" Rōmulus irātus frātre statim interfēcit. Simul, "Ut," inquit, "frāter meus ā mē⁷ interfectus est, ita hostēs interficientur quī⁸ in meam urbem venīre cōnābuntur!" Itaque sōlus⁹ imperium occupāvit.

NOTES: 1. *Each (of two)*, nom. 2. *Prior*=*primus*, used in speaking of two persons or things. 3. *While*. 4. Trans. as if imperf., *was building*. 5. *jumped over*. 6. *How*. 7. *me*, abl. 8. *who*, nom. 9. *alone*, nominative.

210.

VOCABULARY

centum , indecl. num. adj., hundred	ita , adverb, so (207)
eum , mas. acc. sing., him (<i>compare eōs above</i> , 207)	nam , conjunction, for
mīrum in modum , in a wonderful manner	subitō , adverb, suddenly
	īnstituō, -ere, īnstituī, īnstitutum , establish

MYSTERIOUS DEATH OF ROMULUS. HIS SUCCESSOR

211. Rōmulus cum Sabīnīs,¹ populō finitimō, bellum gessit. Eōs vīcit, et in urbem recēpit. Ita cīvium numerum auxit. Centum senātōrēs creāvit. Senātōrum auxiliō rēgnum gessit. XXXVII annōs rēgnāverat,² cum³ mīrum in modum dēcessit.⁴ Nam subitō coorta⁵ tempestās dēnsā nūbe rēgem operuit.⁶ Numquam postea rēx ā suis (64) vīsus est. Ad deōs, ut populus crēdebāt,⁷ sublātus⁸ est. Post Rōmulī mortem, Numa⁹ Pompilius⁹ rēx creātus est. Bellum nūllum¹⁰ gessit, sed bonus et sapiēs¹¹ rēx fuit. Nam et lēgēs Rōmānīs dedit, et multa sacra¹² īnstituī. Annum in XII mēnsēs dēscripsit.¹³ XLIII annōs rēgnāverat,² cum³ dēcessit.⁴

NOTES: 1. *Sabīnī, -ōrum*, M. pl., *the Sabines*. 2. *He had reigned*. 3. Conjunction, *when*. 4. *died*. 5. *having arisen*. 6. *hid*. 7. *believed*. 8. *was borne up*. 9. Same names in English. 10. *no*, acc. 11. *wise*. 12. *sacred rites*, acc. 13. *divided*.

CHAPTER 28

DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES AND PARTICIPLES

212. Adjectives and Participles are declined like (1) nouns of the first and second declension, or (2) those of the third declension.

(1) ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION

213. PARADIGMS

Examples: **longus, -a, -um** **parātus, -a, -um** (pf. pass. part.)
 Bases: **long-, long** **parāt-, (having been) prepared**
 Stems: **longo-, longā-, longo-** **parāto-, parātā-, parāto-**

SINGULAR

Nom.	long-us	-a	-um	parāt-us	-a	-um
Gen.	long-i	-ae	-ī	parāt-i	-ae	-ī
Dat.	long-ō	-ae	-ō	parāt-ō	-ae	-ō
Acc.	long-um	-am	-um	parāt-um	-am	-um
Voc.	long-e	-a	-um	parāt-e	-a	-um
Abl.	long-ō	-ā	-ō	parāt-ō	-ā	-ō

PLURAL

N. V.	long-i	-ae	-a	parāt-i	-ae	-a
Gen.	long-ōrum	-ārum	-ōrum	parāt-ōrum	-ārum	-ōrum
D. Abl.	long-is	-is	-is	parāt-is	-is	-is
Acc.	long-ōs	-ās	-a	parāt-ōs	-ās	-a

Examples: **aeger, -gra, -grum** **liber, -era, -erum**
 Bases: **aegr-, sick** **liber-, free**
 Stems: **aegro-, aegrā-, aegro-** **libero-, liberā-, libero-**

SINGULAR

N. V.	aeger	aegra	aegrum	liber	libera	liberum
Gen.	aegr-i	aegr-ae	aegr-ī	liber-i	liber-ae	liber-ī
		etc.			etc.	

(a) For the perf. pass. participle (as **parātus, -a, -um** above), review 132.

214. Irregular Adjectives. Nine adjectives, belonging to this class, are irregular in having *-ius* and *-i* in the gen. and dat. sing. respectively for all genders. One of them (*alius*) has also its neuter nom. and acc. sing. in *-ud*, instead of the usual *-um*. Thus :

SINGULAR						
	Mas.	Fem.	Neu.	Mas.	Fem.	Neu.
Nom.	<i>ūnus</i>	<i>ūna</i>	<i>ūnum</i>	<i>alius</i>	<i>alia</i>	<i>aliud</i>
Gen.	<i>ūnius</i>	<i>ūnius</i>	<i>ūnius</i>	(<i>alius</i>)	<i>alius</i>	<i>alius</i> ¹)
Dat.	<i>ūnī</i>	<i>ūnī</i>	<i>ūnī</i>	<i>aliī</i>	<i>aliī</i>	<i>aliī</i>
Acc.	<i>ūnum</i>	<i>ūnam</i>	<i>ūnum</i>	<i>alium</i>	<i>aliām</i>	<i>aliud</i>
Abl.	<i>ūnō</i>	<i>ūnā</i>	<i>ūnō</i>	<i>aliō</i>	<i>aliā</i>	<i>aliō</i>

The plural is regular.

(a) The irregular adjectives declined as above (214) are ²:

<i>ūnus</i> , -a, -um, one	<i>tōtus</i> , -a, -um, whole of
<i>alius</i> , -a, -ud, another	<i>alter</i> , -era, -erum, one or the other
<i>ūllus</i> , -a, -um, any	(<i>of two</i>)
<i>nūllus</i> , -a, -um, none, no	<i>uter</i> , <i>utra</i> , <i>utrum</i> , which (<i>of two</i>)?
<i>sōlus</i> , -a, -um, alone, only	<i>neuter</i> , -tra, -trum, neither (<i>of two</i>)

215.

EXERCISE

<i>aeger</i> , -gra, -grum, sick, ill	<i>uterque</i> , <i>utraque</i> , <i>utrumque</i> (<i>uter</i>
<i>apud</i> , <i>prep.</i> with <i>acc.</i> , among	+ <i>-que</i>), <i>gen.</i> <i>utriusque</i> , <i>dat.</i>
<i>dēfessus</i> , -a, -um, worn out, weary	<i>utriusque</i> , each (<i>of two</i>); <i>pl.</i> , both
<i>prō</i> , <i>prep.</i> with <i>abl.</i> , in front of, in	parties, both sides
behalf of	<i>vulnus</i> , <i>vulneris</i> , N., a wound
	<i>fugīō</i> , -ere, <i>fūgī</i> , <i>fugitum</i> , flee
	<i>vulnerō</i> , -āre, <i>etc.</i> , wound

I. Decline together *nūllus mīles aeger* ; *altera lēx bona* ; *sōlum flūmen altum*, with meanings.

¹ Owing to its resemblance to the nom. sing., this form is rarely used. The gen. sing. of *alter*, -era, -erum, is used instead ; or, to denote possession, *aliēnus*, -a, -um, *another's*, as *canis aliēnus*, *another man's dog*.

² In rhyme :

To *alius*, *ūllus*, and *ūnus*, *one*,
Add *tōtus*, and *sōlus*, and *nūllus*, *none* ;
Then those that always to two refer —
Alter, and *neuter*, and also *uter*.

DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES AND PARTICIPLES 85

II. 1. Tōtius Galliae. 2. Apud Gallōs sōlōs. 3. Uterque prō suā patriā. 4. Ūnī virō. 5. In ūnum locum. 6. Nūlla vulnera. 7. Dux neutrius exercitūs vulnerātus est. 8. Milītēs aegri et dēfessī fūgērunt. For the translation of the following participles, see **parātus**, 213. 9. Puer monitus bonus erit. 10. Cōpiae ē castris ēductae ad hostēs iter fēcērunt. 11. The other soldier, having-been-wounded, fled. 12. The camp, having-been-attacked by our men,¹ was suddenly captured (taken). 13. By the wounds of one soldier. 14. On another day (time when). 15. To the whole army (ind. object).

(2) ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

216. Adjectives of the third declension, like nouns of that declension, are-divided into two classes :

Class I : those with the gen. pl. in **-um**

Class II : those with the gen. pl. in **-ium**

CLASS I: **-UM** IN THE GENITIVE PLURAL**217.**

PARADIGMS

Examples: **fortior, fortius** **vetus**
 Bases: **fortior, braver** **veter-, old**
 Stems: **fortior-** **veter-**

SINGULAR

	M. F.	N.	M. F.	N.
N. V.	fortior	fortius	vetus	
Gen.	fortiōr-is		veter-is	
Dat.	fortiōr-i		veter-i	
Acc.	fortiōr-em	fortius	veter-em	vetus
Abl.	fortiōr-e		veter-e	

PLURAL

N. A. V.	fortiōr-ēs	fortiōr-a	veter-ēs	veter-a
Gen.	fortiōr-UM		veter-UM	
D. Abl.	fortiōr-ibus		veter-ibus	

¹ For the word order in the Latin, see sentence 10 (Cōpiae ē castris ēductae), and notice that participles regularly follow their modifiers. Remember 132 also.

(a) **Fortior, fortius, braver**, is an adjective in the comparative degree. The formation of comparatives and superlatives will be explained later.

(b) In reciting orally, say the forms across rather than down the page, repeating similar forms. Thus, nom. **fortior, fortior, fortius**, gen. **fortiōris, fortiōris, fortiōris**, etc.

218. Class I. This class of third declension adjectives includes all comparatives (as **fortior, -ius, braver**) and **vetus, old**, with a few others not needed here.

219. The masculine and feminine forms are alike throughout. The neuter forms are like them except where a separate form is given. (Which are different?) Notice that adjectives of this class are *consonant stems* with abl. sing. in **-e**, gen. pl. in **-um**, and acc. pl. in **-ēs** and **-a**.

220.**EXERCISE**

altior, -ius , higher, deeper, comparative of altus, -a, -um	longior, -ius , longer, comparative of longus, -a, -um
fortior, -ius, braver , comparative of fortis, forte	melior, -ius , better, irregular comparative of bonus, -a, -um
lātior, -ius , wider, broader, comparative of lātus, -a, -um	vetus, gen. veteris , old

I. Decline together the Latin for *a better army*, *a longer line-of-battle*, and *a deeper river*.

II. 1. On a high hill, down-from a higher mountain.
2. Out-of an old house, in a better house. 3. Of their own long swords, of longer javelins. 4. Among better citizens, towards deeper rivers.

III. 1. In locō superiōre (*higher*). 2. Ad loca inferiōra (*lower*). 3. Lātiōrum agrōrum. 4. Militēs ē locō superiōre (see sentence 1) tēla mittunt. 5. Dux castra ē locō inferiōre (see sentence 2) ad loca superiōra mōvit. 6. Melior est fortūna nostrōrum quam (*than*) hostium (supply *that of*).

IV. Define these derivatives: *domestic, paternal, cent, demonstrate, veteran, a-meliōr-ate, recipient, impetuous, create*,

appellation, manual, salutary, mill (money), sine-cure (cūra means care), pedal, senate, institution, pace.

CLASS II. -IUM IN THE GENITIVE PLURAL

221.

PARADIGMS

Examples:	ācer, ācris, ācre	fortis, forte	audāx
Bases:	ācr-, sharp	fort-, brave	audāc-, daring
Stems:	ācri-	forti-	audāci-

SINGULAR

M.	F.	N.	M. F.	N.	M. F.	N.
N.V. ācer	ācr-is	ācr-e	fort-is	fort-e	audāx	
Gen. ācr-is			fort-is		audāc-is	
Dat. ācr-i			fort-i		audāc-i	
Acc. ācr-em		ācr-e	fort-em	fort-e	audāc-em	audāx
Abl. ācr-i			fort-i		audāc-i	

PLURAL

N.V. ācr-ēs	ācr-ia	fort-ēs	fort-ia	audāc-ēs	audāc-ia
Gen. ācr-IUM		fort-IUM		audāc-IUM	
Dat. ācr-ibus		fort-ibus		audāc-ibus	
Acc. ācr-is, -ēs	ācr-ia	fort-is, -ēs		audāc-is, -ēs	audāc-ia
Abl. ācr-ibus		fort-ibus		audāc-ibus	

(a) Recite the above as instructed in 217, b. Remember that feminine and neuter forms are given separately in the paradigms only when different from the masculine.

222. Class II. This class includes the present participle (225) and all adjectives of the third declension except comparatives and *vetus* (218), and a few others not needed here. Notice the abl. sing. in -i, gen. pl. in -ium, acc. pl. in -is or -ēs, and -ia. These are, therefore, *I-stems*.

223. Nominative Singular. It will be remembered that *nouns* of the third declension had a great variety of forms in the nominative singular (183). *Adjectives* of the third declension are often divided according to their nom. sing. forms as follows:—

- (a) adjectives of *three endings*: **acer, ācris, ācre.**
 (b) adjectives of *two endings*: **fortis, forte.**
 (c) adjectives of *one ending*: **audāx.**

When an adjective has more than one ending in the nom. sing., all these endings are given in the vocabularies; if it has only one ending, the nom. and gen. sing. are both given. See the vocabulary of 224.

224.

EXERCISE

acer, ācris, ācre , sharp, eager	fortis, forte , brave
audāx , <i>gen.</i> audācis, daring, bold	iniūria , -ae, F., wrong, injury
celer, celeris, celere , swift	omnis, omne , all (142)
eques, equitis , M., horseman; <i>pl.</i> , horsemen, cavalry	recēns , <i>gen.</i> recentis, fresh, recent
equester, equestris, equestre , cav- alry (<i>adj.</i>)	trēs , M. F., tria, N., <i>numeral adj.</i> , three, <i>gen.</i> trium, M. F. and N.

circumsistō, -ere, circumstīti, —, surround

prōcēdō, -ere, prōcessī, prōcessum, advance, proceed

I. Decline together, with meanings, **eques audāx, iniūria recēns, proelium equestre**, and (plural only) **omnēs militēs aegrī**.

II. 1. Oppida sua omnia. 2. Ācribus cum militibus.
 3. Audācibus ā civibus. 4. Cum omnibus cōpiis. 5. Re-
 centium proeliōrum equestrium. 6. Trium legiōnum fortium,
 duārum legiōnum fortiōrum. 7. Multōs equitēs celerēs.
 8. Uterque inter duās aciēs prōcēdit. 9. Trēs equitēs militem
 dēfessum circumsistunt. 10. Caesar proeliō¹ equestri hostēs
 superāvit. 11. By a brave soldier. 12. Of all the horsemen.
 13. Towards the braver cavalry. 14. With all his (own)
 legions (accompaniment). 15. In behalf of the eager legion.
 16. They decided to advance with a few daring horsemen.

III. Define the italicized words: an *in-veter-ate* habit, an *equestrian* statue, *ac-celer-ated* motion, bearing pain with *forti-tude*, an *audacious* villain, a *total* wreck, an *in-vulner-able* character, six per *cent*, *simultaneous* equations, keeping a *diary*, a *salutary* law.

¹ Abl. of means or instrument, but translated as if abl. of place where.

THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE

225. Present Participles (English ending, *-ing*) have the nom. sing. in *-ns*: *parāns*, *preparing*; *monēns*, *advising*; *regēns*, *ruling*; *capiēns*, *taking*; *audiēns*, *hearing*. They are the "mixed stems" (174) among adjectives, having *-e* in the abl. sing., but I-stem terminations in the gen. and acc. pl.: *-ium*, *-is* or *-ēs*, and *-ia*.

(a) When used as an adjective, the pres. participle has *-i* in the abl. singular.

226.**PARADIGM**

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M. F.	N.		M. F.	N.
N. V.	<i>parāns</i>		N. V.	<i>parant-ēs</i>	<i>parant-ia</i>
Gen.	<i>parant-is</i>		Gen.	<i>parant-IUM</i>	
Dat.	<i>parant-i</i>		Dat.	<i>parant-ibus</i>	
Acc.	<i>parant-em</i>	<i>parāns</i>	Acc.	<i>parant-is, -ēs</i>	<i>parant-ia</i>
Abl.	<i>parant-e</i>		Abl.	<i>parant-ibus</i>	

(a) The pres. part. is often translated *while* — *ing*. Thus, *occupāns*, *while seizing*, *pugnāns*, *while fighting*, *dēlēns*, *while destroying*, etc.

227.**EXERCISE**

<i>ācritēr</i> , <i>adverb</i> , sharply, fiercely	<i>longē</i> , <i>adverb</i> , far
<i>concurſus</i> , <i>-ūs</i> , M., charge, onset	<i>memoria</i> , <i>-ae</i> , F., memory; <i>memoriā teneō</i> (<i>I hold with the memory</i>), I remember
<i>cōſpectus</i> , <i>-ūs</i> , M., sight	<i>saucius</i> , <i>-a, -um</i> , wounded
<i>etiā</i> , <i>conj. and adv.</i> , even, also	
<i>fuga</i> , <i>-ae</i> , F., flight	

(a) Irregular Verb: *superest* (*super, over + est*), *he is* (left) *over, survives, remains*, *supersunt*, *they survive*. *Supererat*, *he survived*, *supererant*, *they survived*.

I. 1. *Trēs frātrēs erant ſauciī*. 2. *In cōſpectū etiā aliōrum*. 3. *Post nāvium fugam*. 4. *Uterque miles ſuperest*. 5. *Ācritēr pugnāns* (226, a) *moritur* (146, III). 6. *Militēs prō patriā ācritēr pugnāntēs interfecti ſunt*. 7. *Hostium cōpiāe oppidum occupāntēs ā noſtris viſi erant*. 8. *Trēs*

equitēs inter duās aciēs prōcessērunt. 9. Exercitus nōn longē aberat (200, *a*). 10. Milītēs sauciōs (64) cūrābunt. 11. Nostri proeliō (224, II, 10) equestri hostēs superāvērunt. 12. Gallōs in fugam dant (*put*). 13. Post primum concursum nullus (214, *a*) miles supererat. 14. Omnēs iniuriās recentēs memoriā tenent. 15. Of the three brothers. 16. To fight sharply. 17. He will put (see sentence 12) the horsemen to flight. 18. While-fighting (226, *a*) in behalf of his (own) country he was far away (200, *a*). 19. The first onset was sharp. 20. Even three of the soldiers survived.

CHAPTER 29

PARTITIVE GENITIVE, GENITIVE AND ABLATIVE OF QUALITY, ABLATIVE OF CAUSE

228.

VOCABULARY

again, a second time, <i>iterum</i> , <i>adverb</i>	multitude, large number, <i>multitūdō</i> ,
boldness, daring, <i>audācia</i> , -ae, F.	- <i>dinis</i> , F.
fear, timor, - <i>ōris</i> , M.	popularity, influence, <i>grātia</i> , -ae, F.
highest, greatest, <i>summus</i> , -a, -um	wisdom, <i>sapientia</i> , -ae, F.
mind, disposition, <i>animus</i> , -ī, M.	

lead away, *dēducō*, -ere, *dēdūxī*, *dēductum* (*dē* + *dūcō*)

229. Partitive Genitive. Study 533 with *a* and the examples. State the rule, and say in Latin, *a large number of prisoners*. What two prepositions with an ablative may be used instead of this genitive? With what words especially? Say in Latin, *one of the boys*; also, *a few of our men*. Point out illustrations below:

230. 1. Exercitus noster multitūdinem Helvētiōrum interfecit. 2. Ab hostium equitibus trēs ex nostris vulnerāti sunt. 3. Principēs huius gentis paucōs dē captivīs interfēcērunt. 4. Nostri magnam agrōrum Gallōrum partem vāstāverant.

231. Genitive and Ablative of Quality. Study 534 with *a* and *b* and the examples. State the rule, and say in Latin, *a man of great wisdom*. Why is the genitive not used in such a phrase as *a man*

of wisdom? Give another name for this genitive or ablative. (Other prepositions than *of* may be used to translate these expressions, such as *a boy WITH blue eyes, a man FROM this nation, a leader IN great honor*, etc.) Point out illustrations below:

232. 1. Militēs illius legiōnis summā audāciā erant (supply *men* in translating). 2. Multī militum mūrū sex pedum perdūcēbant (*were constructing*). 3. Paucī dē nostris bonō animō nōn erant in (*towards*) hunc ducem. 4. Galli virtūtis summae erant, sed nōn sapientiae magnae.

233. Ablative of Cause. Study 557 with the example and *a*. Give the Latin for, *He did this from fear*. Tell several translations of this ablative. Point out illustrations, and translate, where possible, in more than one way:

234. 1. Militēs laudis amōre addūcuntur. 2. Victōriae spē adductī (132) fortiter pugnāvērunt. 3. Hostēs vulneribus dēfessi in castra fūgērunt. 4. Equitēs impetūs timōre ad oppidum sē recēpērunt (*retreated*).

235.**EXERCISE**

Point out all illustrations of the principles explained above:

1. This lieutenant was [a man] of the greatest popularity. 2. Even enemies were well-disposed (of good disposition¹) toward him.² 3. Many of [his] friends wished to elect him² consul.³ 4. But for many reasons⁴ he did not wish this.⁵ 5. In a battle one of the enemy had wounded him.² 6. While-fighting⁶ for⁷ his country, he had been wounded with a sword. 7. Immediately many of [his] soldiers in alarm (= from fear, 233) surrounded him.² 8. Two of [his] friends afterwards led him² away. 9. In another⁸ battle he had been wounded a second-time. 10. Now (*iam*) worn-out on-account-of-wounds, he did not wish to be elected consul.⁹

NOTES: 1. Compare 232, 3. 2. *eum* (210). 3. 189. 4. *for many reasons, multis dē causis*. *Cause* is sometimes expressed by *dē* or *ex* with the ablative. 5. Neuter (64). 6. 226, *a*. 7. *for* = *in behalf of* (215). 8. Use the proper form of *alter*. 9. Refers to *he* (subject) and hence nominative.

236.

FOURTH REVIEW (162-235)

I. **Inflection.** 1. How are nouns of the *third* declension classified (162)? 2. To which class does each of the following belong (give reasons for your answers, 177, III): *miles, collis, mare, nūbēs, mōna, princeps, legiō*? 3. Give the *abl. sing.* and the *gen. and acc. pl.* of each. 4. Decline *iter* in the singular and *vis* in the plural. 5. Tell the *gender* rules of the third declension. 6. What nouns belong to the *fourth* declension? to the *fifth*? 7. Decline *exercitus* in the singular and *rēs* in the plural. 8. Give the *gender* rule of the *fourth* declension; of the *fifth*. 9. Tell the *gen. and dat. sing.* of *ūnus*, and name several other adjectives inflected like it. 10. What adjectives have *-um* in the *gen. pl.*, and which have *-ium*? 11. Give the *abl. sing.* and the *gen. and acc. pl.* of *acer*; of *fortis*; of *audāx*. 12. In what letters does the *pres. participle* end, and what are its terminations in the three troublesome cases of the third declension?

II. **Syntax.** Give rules for the following principles of syntax with an illustration of each: 1. *Complementary infinitive*. 2. *Two accusatives*. 3. *Acc. of extent*. 4. *Abl. of time*. 5. *Dat. with adjectives*. 6. *Partitive genitive*. 7. *Gen. or abl. of quality (description)*. 8. *Abl. of cause*.

III. **Vocabulary:**

(abest), 134. *acer*, 135. *aciēs*, 136. *ācriter*, 137. *adducō*, 138. *aeger*, 139. *agmen*, 140. *alius*, 141. *alter*, (*amicus, adj.*), 142. *animus*, 143. *apertus*, 144. *appellō*, 145. *apud*, 146. *aquila*, 147. *audācia*, 148. *audāx*, 149. *augeō*, 150. *avis*, 151. *caput*, 152. *celer*, 153. *centum*, 154. *certāmen*, 155. *circumsistō*, 156. *collis*, 157. *concursum*, 158. *coniūrō*, 159. *cōspectus*, 160. *cōstituō*, 161. *contrā*, 162. *cornū*, 163. *creō*, (*dē*), 164. *dēducō*, 165. *dēfessus*, 166. *dēmōnstrō*, 167. *dēnsus*, 168. *diēs*, 169. *discēdō*, 170. *domus*, 171. *dux*, (*eōs*), 172. *eques*, 173. *equester*, 174. *etiam*, (*eum*), 175. *exercitus*, 176. *fidēs*, 177. *finis* (*pl.*), 178. *fortis*, 179. *fuga*, 180. *fugiō*, 181. *grātia*, 182. *homō*, 183. *hostis*, 184. *ibi*, 185. *idōneus*, 186. *ignis*, 187. *impetus*, 188. *iniūria*, 189. *instituō*, 190. *instruō*, 191. *ita*, 192. *iter*, 193. *iterum*, 194. *legiō*, 195. *longē*, 196. *manus*, 197. *mare*, 198. *memoria* (*memoriā teneō*), 199. *mēnsis*, 200. *miles*, 201. *mille* (*pl.*), 202. *mōns*, 203. *mors*, 204. *multitūdō*, 205. *nam*, 206. *nāvis*, 207. *neuter*, 208. *nōmen*, (*non vult*), 209. *nox*, 210. *nūllus*, 211. *obtineō*, 212. *omnis*, 213. *pars*, 214. *passus*, 215. *pater*, 216. *pāx*,

¹ See footnote to 67, IV.

217. pēs, (potest), 218. princeps, 219. prō, 220. prēcēdō, 221. propinquus, 222. proximus, 223. recēns, 224. recipiō, 225. reddō, 226. rēs, 227. salūs, 228. saucius, 229. senātus, 230. simul, 231. sine, 232. sōlus, 233. spēs, 234. subitō, 235. summus, (superest), 236. suus, 237. tempestās, 238. tempus, 239. tertius, 240. timor, 241. tōtus, 242. trēs, 243. tūtus, 244. ūllus, 245. undique, 246. ūnus, 247. ut, 248. uter, 249. uterque (*pl.*), 250. vetus, 251. victor, 252. vigilia, 253. virtūs, 254. vīs, 255. vulnerō, 256. vulnus, (vult).

CHAPTER 30

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

237. English Comparison. Adjectives may take three forms, denoting three degrees of comparison, *positive*, *comparative*, and *superlative*. Thus :

Positive *great*, comparative *greater*, superlative *greatest*.

Some adjectives are compared by prefixing *more* and *most*: *beautiful*, *more beautiful*, *most beautiful*. Still others are compared irregularly : *good*, *better*, *best*.

238. Comparatives. In Latin the *comparative* of adjectives is regularly formed by adding *-ior* (M. and F.), *-ius* (N.) to the *base*. Thus :

POSITIVE	GEN. SING. MAS.	BASE	COMPARATIVE
altus, -a, -um, <i>high, deep</i>	alti	alt-	alt-ior, alt-ius, <i>higher, deeper</i>
brevis, -e, <i>short</i>	brevis	brev-	brev-ior, -ius
aeger, -gra, -grum, <i>sick</i>	aegri	aegr-	aegr-ior, -ius
liber, -era, -erum, <i>free</i>	liberi	liber-	liber-ior, -ius
acer, ācria, ācre, <i>sharp</i>	ācria	ācr-	ācr-ior, -ius
facilis, -e, <i>easy</i>	facilis	facil-	facil-ior, -ius

239. Superlatives. The *superlative* of adjectives is regularly formed in one of three ways as follows :

I. Most adjectives add **-issimus, -a, -um** to the *base*. Thus, **altus** (base, **alt-**) ; superlative, **alt-issimus, -a, -um**. (Form the superlatives of the other adjectives given in 238.)

II. Adjectives in **-er** (as **aeger, -gra, -grum**) add **-rimus, -a, -um** to the *mas. nom. sing.* form. Thus, *mas. nom. sing. aeger* ; superlative, **aeger-rimus, -a, -um**.

III. Three adjectives with their opposites in **-lis** add **-limus, -a, -um** to the *base*. Thus, **facilis** (base, **facil-**) ; superlative, **facil-limus, -a, -um**. These adjectives are —

facilis, -e, easy, with its opposite, **difficilis, -e, difficult**

similis, -e, like, with its opposite, **dissimilis, -e, unlike**

humilis, -e, low, humble

240. Translation. The *comparative* is used when two objects are compared, as *A is taller than B*. If the second object is omitted, the comparative is translated *rather* or *too*, as *The tree is rather tall (altior)*. Similarly, the *superlative* denotes that one of three or more objects has the highest (or lowest) degree of a certain quality, as *This is the tallest of all the trees*, but if all but one of the objects is omitted, the superlative is translated *very*, as *The tree is very high (altissima, fem.)*.

(a) **Quam** + superlative is translated as . . . *as possible*. Thus, **quam altissimus**, *as high as possible*.

241.

EXERCISE

brevis, -e, short

cāsus, -ūs, M., accident, misfortune

difficilis, -e, difficult

facilis, -e, easy

facile (*neu. acc. of facilis*), *adv.*, easily

gravis, -e, heavy, serious

humilis, -e, low, humble

nōbilis, -e, noted, noble

potēns, gen. potentis, powerful

quoque, conj., also, too, *following the word emphasized*

I. Compare in the three degrees **longus, gravis, fortis, humilis, nōbilis**, and **celer**, giving all the gender forms of each degree.

II. Give the *abl. sing.* and the *gen.* and *acc. pl.* of the Latin for *a longer wall; a more powerful king; a very-sharp enemy; the most-noted leader.*

III. 1. Brevi tempore, breviore tempore. 2. Hoc iter angustum et difficile. 3. Illius itineris facillimi. 4. Apud Helveticos nobilissimus. 5. Per tres potentissimos populos. 6. Humiliore in turri (169, *a* and *b*). 7. Helvetii quoque erant fortissimi. 8. De gravi amici casu multa (64) cognoverat. 9. Potentibus a principibus facile superatus est. 10. Vulnere graviora (240) accepit (*received*). 11. Rhenus (*the Rhine*) est flumen latissimum et altissimum (240). 12. Inter has (*these*) duas gentes est mons altissimus. 13. Of brave men, of braver horsemen, of the bravest enemies. 14. In as short a time as possible (240, *a*). 15. The easiest-thing (64) of all. 16. From the fear (233) of more-powerful kings. 17. By-reason-of-the misfortune (233) of each-of-the-two (215). 18. The misfortunes of our friends were rather-serious (240).

IRREGULAR AND DEFECTIVE COMPARISON

242. Irregular Comparison. The common everyday adjectives, meaning *good, bad, big, little, much* or *many*, are compared irregularly in Latin. The following should be memorized thoroughly:

bonus (-a, -um), <i>good</i>	melior (-ius), <i>better</i>	optimus (-a, -um), <i>best</i>
malus (-a, -um), <i>bad</i>	peior (-ius), <i>worse</i>	pessimus (-a, -um), <i>worst</i>
magnus (-a, -um), <i>great</i>	maior (-ius), <i>greater</i>	maximus (-a, -um), <i>greatest</i>
parvus (-a, -um), <i>small</i>	minor (-us), <i>smaller</i>	minimus (-a, -um), <i>smallest</i>
multus (-a, -um), <i>much</i>	— (plus), <i>more</i>	plurimus (-a, -um) <i>most</i>
multi (-ae, -a), <i>many</i>	plures (-a), <i>more</i> gen. plurium (irreg.)	plurimi (-ae, -a), <i>most</i>

243. Defective Comparison. The positives of a few adjectives are either wanting or rare. Thus :

—	prior (prius), <i>former, preceding</i>	primus (-a, -um), <i>first</i>
—	proprior (-ius), <i>nearer</i>	proximus (-a, -um), <i>nearest</i>
—	citerior (-ius), <i>hither</i>	citimus (-a, -um), <i>hithermost</i>
—	ulterior (-ius), <i>farther</i>	ultimus (-a, -um), <i>farthest</i>
—	interior (-ius), <i>inner</i>	intimus (-a, -um), <i>inmost</i>
exterus (-a, -um), <i>outside</i>	exterior (-ius), <i>outer</i>	{ extrēmus (-a, -um) or extimus (-a, -um), <i>outermost</i>
inferus (-a, -um), <i>below</i>	inferior (-ius), <i>lower</i>	{ infimus (-a, -um) or imus (-a, -um), <i>lowest</i>
superus (-a, -um), <i>above</i>	superior (-ius), <i>higher</i>	{ suprēmus (-a, -um) or summus (-a, -um), <i>highest</i>
posterus (-a, -um), <i>following</i>	posterior (-ius), <i>later</i>	{ postrēmus (-a, -um), <i>last, or</i> postumus (-a, -um), <i>late-born</i>

244.**EXERCISE**

in fugam dare, to put to flight

1. In bellō Rōmānī loca superiōra occupāre cōnābantur (146, I).
2. E locis superiōribus tēla in (*at*) hostēs mittēbant.
3. Ita minima manus maximās hostium cōpiās saepe in fugam dabat.
4. Hoc proximum iter in Galliam ulteriōrem est.
5. Fortūna huius gentis melior erat quam (*than*) Helvētiōrum (compare 220, III, 6).
6. Quis erat primus Rōmānōrum rēx?
7. Fortēs (64) maxima perīcula nōn recūsant (*object to*).
8. Priōre annō haec gēns contrā Rōmānōs coniūrābant, sed

brevi tempore lēgātōs dē pāce ad Caesarem mīsērunt. 9. In the outermost town of the hither province. 10. By the best soldiers of this legion. 11. In the year before (= former) a small band had put to flight a very-large (240) part of the enemy. 12. Caesar will move his (own) camp to a higher position (= place).

CHAPTER 31

READING LESSON

245.

VOCABULARY

autem , <i>conj.</i> , however, moreover, <i>following the first word in a sentence</i>	iam , <i>conj.</i> , already, now
corpus , <i>corporis</i> , N., body	ob , <i>prep. with acc.</i> , on account of
	pugna , -ae, F., a fight
	utrimque , <i>adv.</i> , on both sides
hortor , -ārī, <i>hortātus sum</i> , <i>deponent</i> (146), urge, encourage	

NOTE. Two expressions used in this lesson require special attention. (1) An *impersonal verb* is one with an indefinite subject, indicated in English by the neuter pronoun *it*. Latin is fond of using *intransitive* verbs in the passive voice as impersonal verbs. Thus, **pugnātum est**, which must not be translated *it was fought*, but rather *the battle was fought, there was fighting, they fought*, etc., according to the sense of the whole. (2) It must always be remembered that an enclitic (for example, -que, and) is translated *before* the word to which it is attached. Thus, **Rōmulus Remusque** (Romulus Remus-and), *Romulus and Remus*. So **Rōmānōrumque**, *and of the Romans*, in 246 below.

TULLUS HOSTILIUS, THE THIRD KING

246. Tertius Rōmānōrum rēx fuit Tullus Hostilius. Eō rēgnante,¹ bellum erat inter Albānōs et Rōmānōs. Ducēs Albānōrum Rōmānōrumque cōstituērunt (184) paucōrum manibus² fāta³ utriusque populī committere.⁴ Erant apud Rōmānōs trēs frātēs, — Horātii⁵; apud Albānōs quoque trēs frātēs, — Cūriātii.⁵ Horātii Cūriātiōs ad pugnam prōvocāvērunt.⁶ Itaque utrique⁷ prō suā patriā pugnāre parāvērunt. Inter Albānōs et Rōmānōs erat magnus campus.⁸ Ibi Horātii et Cūriātii in cōn-

spectū duōrum exercituum pugnāre cōstituērunt. Utrīque⁷ inter duās aciēs prōcessērunt.

NOTES: 1. *Eō* rēgnante, while he was reigning; compare 211, Note 2. 2. Dat. pl. of *manus*. 3. *the fate*, object of *committere* (*intrust*). 4. Complementary to *cōstituērunt* (187). 5. Same name in English. 6. *challenged*. 7. What does the plural of *uterque* mean (215)? 8. *plain*.

THE FIGHT

247. Ācritēr utrimque pugnātum est (245, note). Prīmō concursū magnus horror¹ exercitum Rōmānum occupat, nam duo ex Horātiis interfectī sunt. Rōmānī victōriam dēspērānt.² Trēs autem Cūriātī vulnerātī sunt. Ūnum Horātium trēs Cūriātī circumsistēbant. Ecce³! fugitne Horātius? Simulat⁴ fugam. Longē iam abest ab eō⁵ locō ubi pugnātum est; ūnum Cūriātium nōn procul⁶ ab sē⁷ videt. In eum⁸ ācritēr impetum facit. Albānus exercitus aliōs Cūriātīos hortātur. Horātius autem eum⁸ iam interfēcit. Brevī tempore alterum⁹ interfēcit.

NOTES: 1. Trans. by the English derivative. 2. *despair of*. 3. *Look!* 4. *He is pretending*. 5. *that*, but best trans. *the*. 6. *far*. 7. *him*, referring to the subject. 8. *him*, not referring to the subject. 9. *alter* is often trans. *second*.

THE ROMAN WINS

248. Iam ūnus Horātius et ūnus Cūriātius supersunt. Horātī corpus erat gladiō intāctum,¹ et animus ob mortem duōrum hostium erat ferōx.² Cūriātius corpus vulneribus dēfessum trahēbat.³ Itaque Horātius tertium hostem facile interficit. Rōmānī ovantēs⁴ et grātulantēs⁴ Horātium victōrem accipiunt,⁵ et domum⁶ dēdūcunt.

NOTES: 1. *untouched*. 2. *bold*. 3. *was dragging*. 4. *rejoicing and congratulating (him)*. 5. *receive*. 6. 193, a.



THE THREE HORATII

In the act of receiving from their father the arms with which they swear to conquer or die.

CHAPTER 32

QUAM, ABLATIVES OF COMPARISON, DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE, AND SPECIFICATION

249.

VOCABULARY

cavalry, <i>equitātus</i> , -ūs, M.	life, <i>vīta</i> , -ae, F.
dear, <i>cārus</i> , -a, -um	summer, <i>aestās</i> , -tātis, F.
greatness, <i>magnitūdō</i> , -dinis, F.;	ten, <i>decem</i> , <i>indecl. num. adj.</i>
stature, size, <i>magnitūdō corporum</i>	tree, <i>arbor</i> , -boris, F.
	winter, <i>hiems</i> , <i>hiemis</i> , F.
surpass, <i>praecēdō</i> , -ere, <i>praecessi</i> , <i>praecessum</i>	
be strong, have influence, <i>valeō</i> , -ēre, <i>valui</i> , —; be stronger, have more influence, <i>plūs valēre</i> ; be very strong, <i>etc.</i> , <i>plūrimum valēre</i>	

250. Quam, than, may be used after comparatives. Thus, *The tree is taller than the wall*, *arbor altior est quam mūrus*. Notice that the two things compared (*arbor* and *mūrus*) are in the same case.

251. Ablative of Comparison. Study 559 with example and *a*. Say in Latin (without the use of *quam*), *The father is taller than the son*. When only may the ablative be so used?

252. Ablative of Degree of Difference. Study 563, and give the Latin for *The man is taller than the boy by one foot*. State the rule, and apply it to the example.

(*a*) Note especially the ablatives *multō*, (*by*) *much*, (*by*) *far*, and *paulō*, (*by*) *little*, denoting the degree of difference.

(*b*) The prepositions *ante*, *before*, and *post*, *after*, imply the comparative ideas *sooner* and *later*. They may, therefore, be used with the abl. of degree of difference, as in the expression, *one year before the war*, *ūnō annō ante bellum*.

253. Ablative of Specification. Study 558, and say in Latin, *They surpass the rest in valor*. State the rule, and apply it here.

The ablatives explained in this chapter are naturally associated together, and might all occur in the same sentence. Thus, "In sprinting this boy is by-far better than his friend."

254.

EXERCISE

Point out all illustrations :

I. 1. Gallī Rōmānōs magnitūdine corporum praecēdēbant. 2. Cīvēs multō fortiōrēs fuērunt quam milītēs. 3. Hieme noctēs longiōrēs diēbus sunt. 4. Hostēs oppida nostra numerō (253) sex cēpērunt. 5. Multis patria cārīor est vitā. 6. Caesar equitātū hostēs nōn praecessit. 7. Paucis annis post illud bellum dux noster mortuus (146, III) est. 8. Numerō hominum nūlla urbs Rōmam praecēdēbat. 9. Exercitus Rōmānus equitātū nōn valēbat. 10. Hic vir apud Helvētiōs plūrimum valēbat.

II. 1. The ditch is ten feet longer than the wall. 2. Who surpassed Caesar in courage? 3. In Caesar's army there was a lieutenant named (= in name, 253) Labienus. 4. In population (= number of men) Rome surpassed all [other] cities. 5. Caesar was at that time (= then) not very strong in cavalry. 6. In summer the days are much longer than the nights. 7. Is the tree much taller than the house? 8. This very-great (240) general will have more influence than his lieutenant with (apud) the brave soldiers.

CHAPTER 33

FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

255. Formation of Adverbs. In English most adverbs are formed from adjectives by adding *-ly* : adj. *wise*, adv. *wisely*. In Latin adjectives of the *third declension* form their adverbs by adding *-iter* to the *base*; other adjectives, by adding *-ē* to the *base*.

ADJECTIVE	BASE	ADVERB
altus, -a, -um, <i>deep</i>	alt-	alt-ē, <i>deeply</i>
ācer, ācris, ācre, <i>sharp</i>	ācr-	ācr-iter, <i>sharply</i>

(a) If the base of an adjective of the third declension ends in *-nt*, the final *t* is dropped and *-ter* added: *diligēns*, gen. *diligentis*, *careful*; base, *diligent-*; adverb, *diligen-ter*, *carefully*.

(b) *Audāx*, *audācis*, *bold*, has the irregular adverb, *audāc-ter*, *boldly*.

256. Sometimes the *neu. acc. sing.* of an adjective is used as an adverb: *multum*, *much*. Or the *neu. abl. sing.* is so used: *subitō* (from *subitus*, *-a*, *-um*), *suddenly*.

257. Comparison of Adverbs. For the *comparative* of any adverb, the neuter accusative singular of the comparative adjective is regularly used. The *superlative* of the adverb is formed from the superlative adjective by changing *-us* to *-ē*.

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
<i>altē</i> , <i>deeply</i>	<i>altius</i> , <i>more deeply</i>	<i>altissimē</i> , <i>most deeply</i>
<i>ācritēr</i>	<i>ācrius</i>	<i>ācerrimē</i>
<i>facile</i>	<i>facilius</i>	<i>facillimē</i>

258. Irregular Adverbs. The irregular adjectives (242) have irregular adverbs.

<i>bene</i> , <i>well</i>	<i>melius</i> , <i>better</i>	<i>optimē</i> , <i>best</i>
<i>male</i> , <i>badly</i>	<i>peius</i> , <i>worse</i>	<i>pessimē</i> , <i>worst</i>
<i>multum</i> , <i>much</i>	<i>plūs</i> , <i>more</i>	<i>plūrimum</i> , <i>most</i>
<i>magnopere</i> , <i>greatly</i>	<i>magis</i> , <i>more</i>	<i>maximē</i> , <i>most</i>
<i>parum</i> , <i>little</i>	<i>minus</i> , <i>less</i>	<i>minimē</i> , <i>least</i>

(a) *Plūs* and *plūrimum* refer to *quantity*; *magis* and *maximē* to *quality* or *degree*.

259.**EXERCISE**

<i>auctōritās</i> , <i>-tātis</i> , F., weight, influence, authority	<i>quārtus</i> , <i>-a</i> , <i>-um</i> , fourth
<i>pōns</i> , <i>pontis</i> , M., bridge (176, a)	<i>uxor</i> , <i>uxōris</i> , F., wife
<i>comparō</i> , <i>-āre</i> , <i>etc.</i> , get, obtain, procure	
<i>dēlēō</i> , <i>-ēre</i> , <i>dēlēvī</i> , <i>dēlētum</i> , destroy	

I. Tell the adverbs of *audāx* (255, b), *longus*, *fortis*, *celer*, and *sapiēns* (gen. *sapientis*), *wise* (255, a). Compare the adverbs in the three degrees.

II. 1. Facilius, facillimē, ācritē, ācius. 2. Magis idōneus, maximē idōneus. 3. Melius, pessimē, paulō (252, a) longius.¹ 4. Minimē, ācerrimē, multō melius. 5. Quārtus rēx patriam bene rēxit. 6. Equitēs audācius¹ pugnābant. 7. Cum uxōre et omnibus fortūnis celerrimē¹ profectus est (147). 8. Pontem in (*over*) flūmine celeriter fēcit. 9. Oppidum facillimē¹ dēlebunt. 10. Paulō longius¹ prōcesserant. 11. Hic vir auctōritātem in urbe facile comparāvit. 12. Farther, very-far.¹ 13. Too-swiftly,¹ very-bravely. 14. Very-daringly, more-easily. 15. They will very-easily obtain influence.

CHAPTER 34

OBJECTIVE GENITIVE, ABLATIVE OF MANNER, INFINITIVE AND SUBJECT-ACCUSATIVE AS OBJECT

260.

VOCABULARY

care, cūra, -ae, F.	desirous, eager (<i>for</i>), cupidus, -a, -um
danger, periculum, -ī, N.	honor, high office, honor, -ōris, M.
desire, eagerness (<i>for</i>), cupiditās	skilled (<i>in</i>), perītus, -a, -um
-tātis, F.	
hope, hope for, spērō, -āre, etc.	
order, iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussum	(takes inf. with subj.-accusative)

261. Objective Genitive. Study 535 and 536. Say in Latin, *the desire for royal power*; also, *desirous of (eager for) royal power*. Explain the name of this genitive (535, a). Point out illustrations below:

262. 1. Fīlius rēgis imperī cupiditāte adductus est. 2. Omnēs civitātis principēs magnae auctōritātis cupidi erant. 3. Nōn multī omnium rērum perītī sunt.

263. Ablative of Manner. Study 561 and a, and state the rule in full. Say in Latin, *He writes (scribō, -ere) with care, — with great care*. To what part of speech is this ablative often equivalent? Point out illustrations:

¹ The principle of 240 applies to adverbs as well as to adjectives.

264. 1. Hostēs cum Rōmānīs magnō impetū (*vigor*) pug-nāvērunt. 2. Galli castra nostra magnā cum virtūte oppugnā-verant. 3. Hoc magnō cum periculō facient.

265. Infinitive and Subject-accusative as Object. Review 186. *Iubeō*, *I order*, takes the infinitive with a subject-accusative as an object. Thus, *He orders them to destroy the town, eos oppidum dēlēre iubet.*

266.**EXERCISE**

Point out all illustrations :

I. 1. Suōs (64) castra mūnīre iussit. 2. Paucī dē hostibus (229) maximā virtūte pugnābant. 3. Caesar nāvēs longās (*war-ships*) aedificārī iubēbit. 4. Cupidior rēgnī erat uxor quam vir. 5. Nostri cum magnā victōriae spē iter fēcērunt. 6. Primā (here, *early*) aetate equitēs iter in hostium finēs facere iubēbit. 7. Honōrum cupiditate (233) magnam ad urbem profisciscētur (147). 8. Periculō summō pontem fēcērunt (trans. *built*). 9. Rei militāris (*military thing = warfare*) peritus erat.

II. 1. This bold man is eager for royal-power. 2. They were not skilled in this matter (*rēs*). 3. He is too-eager (240) for great influence. 4. The Gauls often fought with the great-est valor. 5. She bade (= ordered) the man to hope-for much (neuter, 64). 6. In a suitable place he drew up his line of battle with the utmost (*summus, -a, -um*) care. 7. He had ordered this lieutenant to procure grain. 8. The general was very-eager (240) for victory.

CHAPTER 35

NUMERALS¹

267. Numerals. By *numerals* are meant adjectives that express *number*. Numerals that tell *how many* (as *one, two, three, etc.*), are called *cardinals* or *cardinal numerals*. Those

¹ For a table of the numerals, see 523.

that tell the *order* or rank in a series (as *first, second, third*, etc.) are called *ordinals* or *ordinal numerals*.

268. The first ten Latin cardinals and ordinals are as follows :

CARDINALS	ORDINALS
I. ūnus, -a, -um	primus, -a, -um
II. duo, duae, duo	secundus, -a, -um
III. trēs, tria	tertius, -a, -um
IV. quattuor	quārtus, -a, -um
V. quinque	quintus, -a, -um
VI. sex	sextus, -a, -um
VII. septem	septimus, -a, -um
VIII. octō	octāvus, -a, -um
IX. novem	nōnus, -a, -um
X. decem	decimus, -a, -um

(a) Alter, -era, -erum (214, a), is sometimes used for secundus, -a, -um, *second*.

269. Cardinals. Of the above cardinals (268) only ūnus, duo, and trēs are declinable. For the declension of ūnus, see 214. The plural of ūnus is used with nouns plural in form with singular meaning: ūna castra, *one camp*. Duo and trēs are declined as follows :

MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.	M. F.	N.
Nom. duo	duae	duo	Nom. trēs	tria
Gen. duōrum	duārum	duōrum	Gen. trium	trium
Dat. duōbus	duābus	duōbus	Dat. tribus	tribus
Acc. duōs, duo	duās	duo	Acc. trēs, trīs	tria
Abl. duōbus	duābus	duōbus	Abl. tribus	tribus

270. Of the other cardinals, only the multiples of a hundred (as *two hundred*, ducentī, -ae, -a) and the multiples of a thousand (as *two thousand*, duo milia) are declinable. For the declension of milia, see 202.

271. Ordinals. All ordinals are declined like longus, -a, -um.

272.

EXERCISE

laetus, -a, -um, glad, <i>often translated as an adv.</i> , gladly	similis, -e, like (205, <i>but with the gen. of a person</i>)
obses, obsidis, M. and F., hostage	trāns, <i>prep. with acc.</i> , across
accipio, -ere, accēpi,	acceptum (ad + capio), receive, accept
circumdō, -are, circumdedi,	circumdatum (circum, around + dō), surround
coniungō, -ere, coniūnxī,	coniūctum, unite, join
incolō, -ere, incolui,	—, live, inhabit
trādūcō, -ere, tradūxī,	traductum (trāns] + dūcō), lead across, transfer

I. 1. Diē nōnō. 2. Nocte sextā. 3. Cum octō legiōnibus.
 4. A decem equitibus. 5. Erant omninō (*altogether*) itinera duo.
 6. Quattuor diēbus milia passuum centum iter fēcērunt.
 7. Of one hostage, of two armies. 8. Into three parts.
 9. For nine days (203). 10. By five men (agent), with three legions (accompaniment). 11. In seven nights (204).

II. 1. Patris similēs erant duo filii. 2. Dux laetus obsidēs accēpit. 3. Urbem mūrō circumdedit. 4. Trāns flūmen incoluerunt.
 5. Suās cōpiās per hostium finēs trādūxit. 6. Oppida eōrum (*their*) dēlēvit, et civēs Rōmam¹ trādūxit. 7. Dux lēgātū cōpiās cum suō exercitū coniūnxit.

¹ With towns and small islands, *place to which* is expressed without a preposition.

CHAPTER 36

READING LESSON

273.

VOCABULARY

atque, conj., and, and also, <i>adding something more important</i>	mōs, mōris, M., custom; <i>plural</i> , manners, character
---	--

ANCUS MARCIUS, THE FOURTH KING

274. Quārtus Rōmānōrum rēx fuit Ancius Mārcius, nepōs¹ Numae Pompili. Mōribus² erat avī³ similis. Eō rēgnante,⁴

Latīni⁵ impetum in agrum Rōmānum fēcērunt. Ancus magnō cum exercitū ab urbe profectus est. Latīnōs in fugam dedit, et oppida eōrum⁶ dēlēvit, et civēs Rōmam⁷ trādūxit. Pontem in Tiberi⁸ fēcīt, atque Iāniculum⁹ montem cum urbe coniūnxit.

NOTES. 1. *grandson*, nom. 2. 253. 3. *avus*, -ī, M., *grandfather*; see *similis*, 272. 4. For trans., see 246, Note 1. 5. *the Latins* (nom. pl.), neighbors of the Romans. 6. For meaning, see 272, II, 6. 7. See footnote to 272, II, 6. 8. *the Tiber* (169, b). 9. *Janiculum*, an important hill across the river from Rome.

THE OMEN OF THE EAGLE

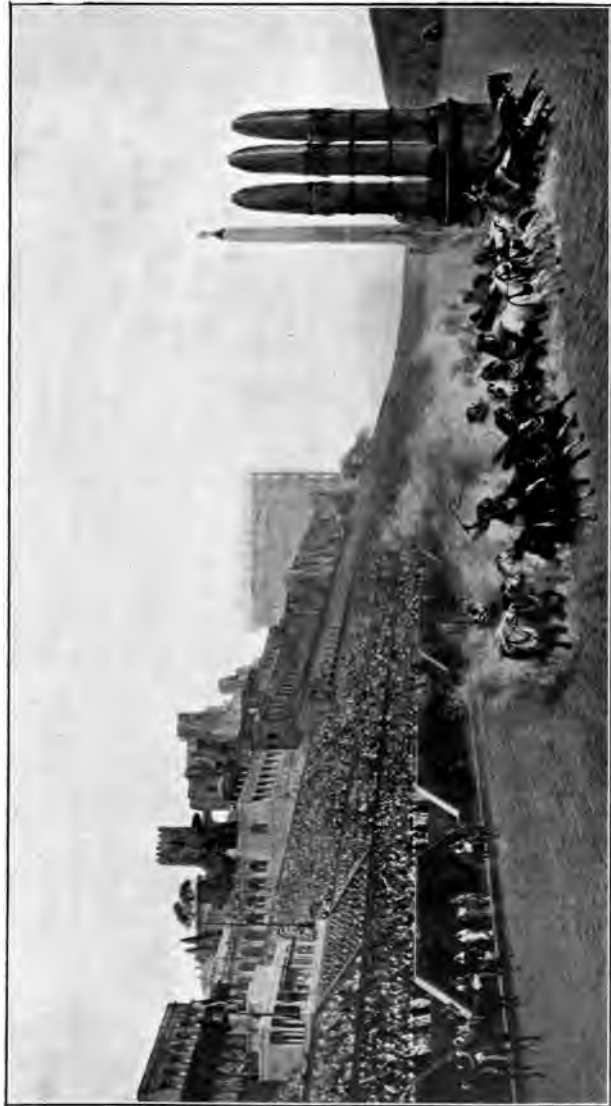
NOTE: In Chapter 27, something was said of the signs, or *omens* (*ōmen*, *ōminis*, N.), by which the Romans believed the gods made their will known to men. In that chapter we saw that birds played an important part in this way. Some birds were supposed to give omens by their voice, others by their flight. There were birds of good omen and birds of ill omen. Eagles were supposed to be birds of good omen. The signs were interpreted by priests, called *augurs*, and their business was called *augury*. In 275 below we are told that Tanaquil, wife of Tarquinius Priscus, fifth king of Rome, was skilled in augury (*auguriōrum perita*, 261), and how she explained the strange behavior of an eagle, when she and her husband were on their way to Rome after leaving their home in Etruria just north of Rome.

275. Ancō rēgnante,¹ Lūcius Tarquinius Priscus in Etrūriā trāns flūmen incolēbat. Dīves² erat et honōrum cupidus. Itaque cum uxōre et omnibus fortūnīs Rōmam³ profectus est. Nōn longē ab urbe aberat, cum⁴ aquila pilleum⁵ Tarquini cēpit, et magnō cum clangōre⁶ volitābat.⁷ Paulō post⁸ pilleum in capite Tarquini reposuit.⁹ Tanaquil, uxor Tarquini, ōmen¹⁰ laeta accēpit, nam auguriōrum¹⁰ perita erat. Virum¹¹ bene spērāre iussit. "Rēx," inquit, "Rōmānōrum eris¹²!"

NOTES: 1. *While Ancus was reigning*. 2. *rich*, nom. 3. 274, Note 7. 4. *when*. 5. *cap*, acc. 6. *flapping (of wings)*. 7. *was flitting (about him)*. 8. Here an adverb, *afterwards*. 9. = *re- + posuit*: meaning? 10. See Note preceding 275. 11. Here *husband*. 12. *You will be*.

TARQUIN BECOMES KING

276. Tarquinius pecūniā et industriā¹ auctōritātem atque Ancī rēgis amicitiam comparāvit. Ā rēge tūtor² liberis creatus



THE CIRCUS MAXIMUS

The structure begun by Tarquin (mentioned in the lesson) was a rather primitive affair, consisting chiefly of wooden seats erected on the sloping sides of two of the hills of Rome. This was gradually improved and enlarged. Many centuries later it had a seating capacity variously estimated at 150,000 to 385,000 persons. The games consisted chiefly of chariot races, a dangerous form of amusement for the charioteers, who did not hesitate to "foul" one another in the effort to win.



est. Post rēgis mortem rēgnum accēpit. Finitimōs vīcit; Circum Maximum aedificāvit; mūrō lapideō³ urbem circumdedit. XXXVIII annōs rēgnāverat,⁴ cum⁴ ab Ancī filiis interfectus est.

NOTES: 1. *by diligence*. 2. *guardian*, nom. (547, δ). 3. *stone*, abl. (adj.). 4. For meanings, see 211, Notes 2 and 3.

277.

FIFTH REVIEW (237-276)

I. **Inflection.** 1. How is the *comparative* of all adjectives regularly formed? Give an illustration. 2. How is the *superlative* of most adjectives formed? Give an illustration. 3. How do adjectives in *-er* form their *superlatives*? Give an illustration. 4. Form the superlative of *facilis*, and name the other adjectives that form their superlatives in the same way. 5. In what three ways may *comparatives* be translated? 6. In what two ways may *superlatives*? 7. Compare *bonus*, *malus*, *magnus*, *parvus*, and *multus* in three degrees. 8. Name at least three adjectives that are *defective* in comparison. 9. Form the *adverbs* of *altus*, *ācer*, *diligēns*, and *audāx*. 10. Compare the adverbs just formed in three degrees. 11. Compare *bene*, *male*, and *magnopere*. 12. Give the *cardinals* and *ordinals* from 1 to 10 inclusive.

II. **Syntax.** 1. What does *quam* after a *comparative* mean? 2. What case is used when *quam* is omitted, and when is it permissible to use this case? 3. Give illustrations in English of the use of the *ablatives of degree of difference* and of *specification*. 4. Give the rules for the *objective genitive* and *ablative of manner*. 5. Name a Latin verb which takes as an object the *infinitive with subject-accusative*.

III. **Vocabulary.**¹

257. accipiō, 258. aestās, 259. arbor, 260. atque, 261. auctōritās, 262. autem, 263. brevis, 264. cāsus, 265. circumdō, 266. comparō, 267. coniungō, 268. corpus, 269. cupidus, 270. cūra, 271. decem, 272. equitātus, 273. facilis, 274. facile, 275. gravis, 276. hiems, 277. hortor, 278. humilis, 279. iam, 280. incolō, 281. iubeō, 282. magnitūdō, 283. mōs, 284. nōbilis, 285. ob, 286. obses, 287. periculum, 288. peritus, 289. pōns, 290. potēns, 291. pugna, 292. quam, 293. quārtus, 294. quoque, 295. spērō, 296. trādūcō, 297. trāns, 298. utrimque, 299. valeō.

¹ See footnote to 67, IV.

CHAPTER 37

DATIVE WITH INTRANSITIVE VERBS

278.

VOCABULARY

before, *ante*, *prep. with acc.*
 commander, *imperātor*, -ōris, M.
 hostage, 272

light, *lūx*, *lūcis*, F.
 meanwhile, *interim*, *adverb*
 revolution (*new things*), *rēs novae*,
rērum novārum, F. *pl.*

be eager for, *studeō*, -ēre, *studui*, —
 harm, injure, *noceō*, -ēre, *noceui*, *nocitum*
 persuade, *persuadeō*, -ēre, *persuāsī*, *persuāsum*
 please, *placeō*, -ēre, *placui*, *placitum*
 resist, *resistō*, -ere, *restiti*, —
 spare, *parcō*, -ere, *peperci*, *parsurus*¹

279. Intransitive Verbs. Any verb that has no direct object (accusative) is called *intransitive*. It may take *another case* than the accusative or *none* at all. Some English verbs are transitive, taking a *direct object*, while their equivalents in Latin are intransitive, requiring an *indirect object* (dative).

280. Indirect Object. Study 538, and 539 with I and II. Say in Latin, *The man gave the boy a sword*, and *This pleased the man*. Explain the difference between the verbs of these sentences. The verbs in 278 are all of them *intransitive*, taking the dative case.

281.

EXERCISE

Point out all illustrations:

I. 1. *Hostēs Caesarī centum obsidēs dabunt.* 2. *Virtūs legiōnis decimae imperātōrī placēbat.* 3. *Interim cōpiae nostrae agrīs Gallōrum nocēbant.* 4. *Princeps amicō filiā suā in mātīmōnium (marriage) dedit.* 5. *Helvētīi legiōnibus Rōmānīs fortissimē restitērunt.* 6. *Principēs Galliae rēbus novīs studēbant.* 7. *Hostium uxōribus et liberīs Rōmānī saepe nōn parcēbant.* 8. *Imperātōr militibus facilius persuādere potest (184, a) quam lēgātus.* 9. *Oppidum dēlentēs (226, a)*

are active participle. This verb has no perfect passive participle.

hominibus pepercērunt. 10. Imperātor suōs (64) vulneribus dēfessōs hostibus resistere iussit.

II. 1. This affair (rēs) did not please Caesar. 2. They will persuade the people very-easily. 3. In a short time (204) the very-brave commander persuaded his-men (64). 4. Meanwhile he did not harm the children. 5. The tenth legion bravely resisted the enemy. 6. After the battle the Gauls gave the commander many hostages. 7. Our men, fighting (225) boldly, pleased the general. 8. He will give his daughter in marriage (see I, sent. 4) to his son's best friend. 9. The leader, desirous of royal-power, was eager for revolution. 10. Who would not (= is unwilling to, 184, a) spare the children?

CHAPTER 38

PRONOUNS (*Forms*)

282. Pronouns are words that *denote* persons or things *without naming them*. They may be classified as follows:

I. *Personal* and *reflexive* pronouns, which distinguish the *three persons*;

II. *Demonstrative* and *intensive* pronouns, which *point out* or *emphasize* persons and things;

III. *Relative*, *interrogative*, and *indefinite* pronouns, nearly all of which begin in the nom. sing. with the letters qu-.

I. PERSONAL AND REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

283. PARADIGMS OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS

	FIRST PERSON		SECOND PERSON		THIRD PERSON
	Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.	
Nom.	ego, I	nōs, we	tū, you	vōs, you	Wanting.
Gen.	meī	nostrum or nostri	tui	vestrum or vestri	Its place is supplied by is, ea, id.
Dat.	mihi	nōbīs	tibi	vōbīs	See 287, 290.
Acc.	mē	nōs	tē	vōs	
Voc.	—	—	tū	vōs	
Abl.	mē	nōbīs	tē	vōbīs	

(a) The forms *nostrum* and *vestrum* in the gen. pl. are used as *positive genitives* (229): *multi nostrum*, *many of us*. In other cases *nostrī* and *vestrī* are employed: *memor nostrī*, *mindful of us* (objective genitive, 261).

(b) The ablative of pronouns, referring to *persons*, usually requires a preposition (80, c): *ā mē*, *from or by me*. The preposition *cum*, *with*, is appended as an enclitic (29) to certain pronouns: *mēcum*, *with me*; *nōbiscum*, *with us*; so with relative pronouns (294): *quibuscum*, *with whom*.

284. Possessive Adjectives. The following adjectives denote possession:

meus, -a, -um, *my, mine*, and *noster*, -tra, -trum, *our, ours*.
tuus, -a, -um, *your, yours*, and *vester*, -tra, -trum, *your, yours*.
eius, -a, -um, *his, her, its, their*, called *reflexive*, that is, referring to the subject of the sentence.

285. PARADIGMS OF REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

FIRST PERSON		SECOND PERSON	THIRD PERSON
Singular		Singular	Singular
Nom.	(none)	(none)	(none)
Gen.	<i>meī</i> , <i>of myself</i>	<i>tuī</i> , <i>of yourself</i>	<i>sui</i> , <i>of him-, her-, or itself</i>
Dat.	<i>mihi</i>	<i>tibi</i>	<i>sibi</i>
Acc.	<i>mē</i>	<i>tē</i>	<i>sē</i> or <i>sēsē</i>
Abl.	<i>mē</i>	<i>tē</i>	<i>sē</i> or <i>sēsē</i>
Plural		Plural	Plural
Nom.	(none)	(none)	(none)
Gen.	<i>nostrum</i> , -trī etc. (283)	<i>vestrum</i> , -trī etc. (283)	<i>sui</i> , <i>of themselves</i> , etc. (exactly like the singular)

(a) Since the reflexive is used to *refer to the subject* (nom.), it cannot itself be the subject, and so has no nominative. In other cases, the reflexive pronouns of the *first* and *second* persons are the same as the personal pronouns. In the *third* person *sui* has the same forms for all genders and both numbers.

286.

EXERCISE

servus, -ī, M., *slave*

administrō, -āre, etc., *govern*,
manage

sub, *prep. with acc. or abl.*, *unde*,
up to, to or at the foot of (110)
cēlō, -āre, etc., *hide, conceal*

I. 1. Tibi, ā tē, tēcum. 2. Mēcum, mihi, nōbīs (dat.), nōbīscum. 3. Sēcum, ā sē, sibi. 4. Servus sē cēlat. 5. Servi sē cēlant. 6. Sub monte nōbīs resistent. 7. Sub montem nōs dūcet. 8. Sēsē cum hostibus coniūnxērunt. 9. Mihi persuāsīt. 10. Vōbīs nōn parcent. 11. Nōbīs nocēre nōn possunt (184, a). 12. Rēgnum optimē administrāvit. 13. To me (ind. obj.), to me (place to which). 14. By us, with you (pl.). 15. Of ourselves, with themselves. 16. With me she concealed the king's death.

II. DEMONSTRATIVE AND INTENSIVE PRONOUNS

287. The *demonstrative* and *intensive* pronouns are:

Demonstrative: **hic**, *this (near me)*, **iste**, *that (near you)*, **ille**, *that, yonder (distant)*; **is**, *that, this*, or (as personal pronoun) *he*, etc.; **idem**, *the same*.

Intensive: **ipse**, *-self (myself, yourself, itself)*.

288.

PARADIGMS

hic, haec, hoc, this (near me)

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	hic	haec	hoc	hi	hae	haec
Gen.	huius	huius	huius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
Dat.	huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
Acc.	hunc	hanc	hoc	hōs	hās	haec
Abl.	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

ille, illa, illud, that, yonder (distant)

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	ille	illa	illud	illi	illae	illa
Gen.	illius	illius	illius	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
Dat.	illi	illi	illi	illis	illis	illis
Acc.	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
Abl.	illō	illā	illō	illis	illis	illis

LATIN LADDER

ipse, ipsa, ipsum, self (*myself, yourself, himself, etc.*)

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsi	ipsae	ipsa
Gen.	ipsius	ipsius	ipsius	ipsorum	ipsarum	ipsorum
Dat.	ipsi	ipsi	ipsi	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis
Acc.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsos	ipsas	ipsa
Abl.	ipso	ipsa	ipso	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis

(1) *Iste, that (near you)*, is declined exactly like *ille*.

(2) All these pronouns may be used as adjectives: *hic vir, this man; illa lux, that light; telum ipsum, the weapon itself, or the very weapon.*

289.

EXERCISE

I. Decline together, with meanings, *ille eques fortis, haec lux clara (bright), and bellum ipsum.*

II. 1. *Horum servorum, illius pugnae.* 2. *Cum obsidibus ipsis.* 3. *Huius imperatoris.* 4. *In illis castris.* 5. *De fratre meo ipso.* 6. *Ante lucem ipsam.* 7. *Ab illo oppido ad hanc urbem.* 8. *Huic duci optimo.* 9. *Ab his copiis.* 10. *Horum omnium fortissimi sunt Belgae (Belgians).* 11. *Illo die cum duabus legionibus profectus est.* 12. *Ipse quarta vigilia ad hostes contendit.* 13. *Out of this camp.* 14. *With the king himself.* 15. *Of those missiles.* 16. *Into this very (ipse) town.* 17. *To that skilled commander (ind. obj.).* 18. *With you, the friend (apposition) of this hostage.*

290.

PARADIGMS

is, ea, id, that, this; he, she, or it

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	is	ea	id	ei, ii	ae	ea
Gen.	eius	eius	eius	eorum	eorum	eorum
Dat.	ei	ei	ei	eis, iis	eis, iis	eis, iis
Acc.	eum	eam	id	eos	eas	ea
Abl.	eo	ea	eo	eis, iis	eis, iis	eis, iis

idem, eadem, idem, the same

	SINGULAR			•	PLURAL		
	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.		Mas.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	idem	eadem	idem	{	eidem iidem	eaedem	eadem
Gen.	eiusdem	eiusdem	eiusdem		eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
Dat.	eidem	eidem	eidem	{	eīsdem iīsdem	eīsdem iīsdem	eīsdem iīsdem
Acc.	eundem	eandem	idem		eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
Abl.	eōdem	eādem	eōdem	{	eīsdem iīsdem	eīsdem iīsdem	eīsdem iīsdem

(a) The gen. **eius**, of *him, her, or it*, may be translated *his, her, or its*, and the plural **eōrum, eārum, eōrum**, of *them*, may be translated *their*. Thus, **filius eius**, *his son*; **amicus eōrum**, *their friend*. But they have the demonstrative meanings also, *that, this* (pl. *those, these*).

(b) Notice that **idem** = **is** + **-dem**. Wherever **m** comes before **d**, it is changed to **n**. Nom. pl. **iidem** and dat. pl. **iīsdem** are often shortened to **idem** and **isdem**.

291.

EXERCISE

I. Decline together with meanings **is nūntius, ea filia, id oppidum, idem miles, eadem prōvincia**, and **idem scūtum**.

II. 1. Ab eius filiō, ab eōrum filiābus (290, a). 2. Eī lēgātō, eī lēgātī. 3. Cum iīs obsidibus, cum iīsdem nūntiīs. 4. In eā aciē, ad eadem castra. 5. Eius lūcis, eā hieme. 6. Eōrum montium, eōrundem equitum. 7. Eādem nocte, in eādem nāvi. 8. Eum vident, eōs nōn videt. 9. Hoc ab eō facile factum est. 10. Idem cōnsilium imperātōri eōrum placēbat. 11. In eō itinere amīcis lēgātus persuadet. 12. Duo milia equitum in eōrum finēs contendent. 13. On the same day (204). 14. Of that messenger. 15. By the same man (127). 16. With that slave (113). 17. In the same camp (81, Rule 9). 18. Of their (290, a) army. 19. Of the same five ships. 20. In the same plight (*causa*) were many of the leaders.

292. SUMMARY OF PERSONAL, REFLEXIVE, AND POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS (ADJECTIVES)

PERSONAL	REFLEXIVE	POSSESSIVE
FIRST PERSON		
S. ego, <i>I</i>	mei, <i>of myself</i>	meus, -a, -um, <i>my, mine</i>
P. nōs, <i>we</i>	nostrum, or -tri, <i>of ourselves</i>	noster, -tra, -trum, <i>our, ours</i>
SECOND PERSON		
S. tū, <i>you</i>	tui, <i>of yourself</i>	tuus, -a, -um, <i>your, yours</i>
P. vōs, <i>you</i>	vestrum, or -tri, <i>of yourselves</i>	vester, -tra, -trum, <i>your, yours</i>
THIRD PERSON		
S. is, ea, id, <i>he, she, it</i>	sui, <i>of himself</i>	(gen. eius, <i>his, her, its, or</i>) suus, -a, -um, <i>his, her, its</i>
P. ii, eae, ea, <i>they</i>	sui, <i>of themselves</i>	(gen. eōrum, etc., <i>their, or</i>) suus, -a, -um, <i>their</i>

III. RELATIVE, INTERROGATIVE, AND INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

293. The *relative, interrogative, and indefinite* pronouns are:

Relative: *qui, quae, quod, who, which, or that*

Interrogative: *quis, quid, who? what?*

Indefinite: *quis, quid, any one, anything*

294. PARADIGM OF RELATIVE PRONOUN

	SINGULAR				PLURAL		
	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.		Mas.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	qui	quae	quod	Nom.	qui	quae	quae
Gen.	cuius	cuius	cuius	Gen.	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cui	cui	cui	Dat.	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quem	quam	quod	Acc.	quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	quō	quā	quō	Abl.	quibus	quibus	quibus

SINGULAR		PLURAL
English		
Nom.	<i>who, which, that</i>	The English is the same in the plural.
Gen.	<i>whose, of whom, of which</i>	
Dat.	<i>to or for whom or which</i>	
Acc.	<i>whom, which, that</i>	
Abl.	<i>from, etc., whom or which</i>	

(a) In English, *who* and *that* are used in referring to *persons*, whatever their gender, and *which* and *that* in referring to *things*, whatever their gender in Latin: *vir quī, the man who* or *that*; *scūtum quod, the shield which* or *that*.

(b) Notice the combinations *is quī, he who*; *ea quae, she who*; *id quod, that which*.

295. The *interrogative* pronoun is declined like the relative (294), except that it has *quis* for *quī*, and *quid* for *quod*, and has no separate form for the *feminine singular*. Thus:

SINGULAR		PLURAL
M. F.	N.	
Nom. quis	quid	The plural is exactly like that of the relative (294) with the three gender forms.
Gen. cuius	cuius	
Dat. cui	cui	
Acc. quem	quid	
Abl. quō	quō	

(a) In the *singular* also, when used as an *adjective* (*i.e.* modifying a noun), the interrogative is often like the relative, regularly so in the *neuter*: *quod scūtum, what shield?* but either *quis* or *quī vir, what man?*

296.**EXERCISE**

1. Is *quī mē amat amīcus meus est*. 2. *Quis nōs vocāvit? Ego vōs vocāvi* (93, a). 3. *Quem ad Caesarem dē pāce mīsērunt?* 4. *Bonus cīvis* (173) *est is quī patriam amat*. 5. *Cui cāra (dear) est patria? Bonō cīvī*. 6. *Vincit quī sē vincit*. 7. *Proximī sunt Germānīs (Germans, dat.), quī trāns flūmen incolunt*. 8. *Imperātor in urbem mittit ea* (64) *quae sunt*

optima. 9. Gallia est. *divisa* (*divided*, adj.) in partēs trēs, quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae (289, II, 10).

297. The *indefinite* pronoun, *quis*, *any one*, *quid*, *anything*, is declined like the interrogative, but may have *qua* for *quae* in the *feminine singular* and *neuter plural*.

(a) From the indefinite *quis*, *quid*, are derived other indefinite pronouns, such as :

<i>aliquis</i> , <i>aliquid</i> , <i>some one</i> , <i>something</i>	<i>quisque</i> , <i>quidque</i> , <i>each</i>
<i>quidam</i> , <i>quaedam</i> , <i>quiddam</i> , <i>certain</i> , <i>a certain one or thing</i>	<i>quisquam</i> , <i>quicquam</i> , <i>any one (at all)</i> , <i>anything (at all)</i>

(b) Only the *pronoun part* of the words named in a is declined. Thus :

Nom. *aliquis*, *aliquid*, gen. *alicuius*, dat. *alicui*, acc. *aliquem*, *aliquid*, etc.

298.

EXERCISE

1. Vir *quidam*, pueri *cuiusdam*. 2. Ad quemque, cuique.
3. Aliquem ad tē mīsit. 4. Cum aliquibus militibus. 5. Sē quisque laudat. 6. Cuique haec (64) sunt grāta. 7. Quemquam nōn vidit. 8. Amicum quendam¹ hodiē (*to-day*) vidī (93, a). 9. Quis est ille vir? Quidam quem saepe laudāvi (93, a). 10. Quidam ē servīs (229) hoc fēcit.

CHAPTER 39

PERSONAL ENDINGS

TO THE STUDENT. The first principal part of verbs has been given in the *first person singular* (*parō*, *I prepare*), and so has the third principal part (*parāvī*, *I have prepared*). All other verb forms thus far studied have been in the *third person*. You are now to learn how the *first* and *second persons* are formed.

299. Personal Endings. The personal endings for all tenses of the indicative mood, active voice (except the perfect) are :

¹ *M* before *d* is changed to *n*, as in the case of *īdem*, 290, b.

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1st person, -ō or -m, <i>I</i>	-mus, <i>we</i>
2d person, -s, <i>you</i>	-tis, <i>you</i>
3d person, -t, <i>he, she, or it</i>	-nt, <i>they</i>

300. Present Indicative Active. This tense is formed by adding the above endings to the *present stem*, **parā-**, **monē-**, **rege-** (with changes), and **audi-**. Thus :

CONJ. I	CONJ. II	CONJ. III	CONJ. IV
<i>I prepare, am preparing, or do prepare</i>	<i>I advise, etc.</i>	<i>I rule, etc.</i>	<i>I hear, etc.</i>
S. par -ō (<i>I</i>)	mone-ō	reg -ō	audi-ō
parā-s (<i>you</i>)	monē-s	regi-s	audi-s
para-t (<i>he, etc.</i>)	mone-t	regi-t	audi-t
P. parā-mus (<i>we</i>)	monē-mus	regi-mus	audi-mus
parā-tis (<i>you</i>)	monē-tis	regi-tis	audi-tis
para-nt (<i>they</i>)	mone-nt	regu-nt	audi-u-nt

(a) Notice: I. the stem **parā-** drops final ā before ō in the first person singular; II. **moneō** requires no special attention; III. the stem **rege-** appears as **reg-**, **regi-**, and **regu-**; IV. **audiō** inserts u before nt in the third person plural.

(b) **Capiō**, an -iō verb of the third conjugation, is thus conjugated :

S. capi-ō (IV)	P. capi-mus (III)
capi-s (III)	capi-tis (III)
capi-t (III, IV)	capi-u-nt (IV)

The figures III and IV in parentheses refer to the conjugation resembled. How do **capis**, **capimus**, and **capitis** differ from the corresponding forms of **audiō**?

301. Perfect Indicative Active. The personal endings of the *perfect* indicative active are different from those of other tenses. They are :

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1st person -i, <i>I</i>	-imus, <i>we</i>
2d person -isti, <i>you</i>	-istis, <i>you</i>
3d person -it, <i>he, etc.</i>	-erunt or -ere, <i>they</i>

These endings are added directly to the *perfect stem*, **parāv-**, **monu-**, **rēx-**, **audiu-**. Thus :

	CONJ. I	CONJ. II	CONJ. III	CONJ. IV
	<i>I (have) prepared, or did prepare</i>	<i>I (have) ad- vised, etc.</i>	<i>I (have) ruled, etc.</i>	<i>I (have) heard, etc.</i>
S.	parāv-i (<i>I</i>) parāv-isti (<i>you</i>) parāv-it (<i>he, etc.</i>)	monu-i monu-isti monu-it	rēx-i rēx-isti rēx-it	audiv-i audiv-isti audiv-it
P.	parāv-imus (<i>we</i>) parāv-istis (<i>you</i>) parāv-ērunt or -ēre (<i>they</i>)	monu-imus monu-istis monu-ērunt or -ēre	rēx-imus rēx-istis rēx-ērunt or -ēre	audiv-imus audiv-istis audiv-ērunt or -ēre

How is the *perfect stem* found (103)? Why is the auxiliary *have* put in parentheses above (101, end)? How is the *perfect tense* used (106)?

302.

EXERCISE

accidō, -ere, accidī, —, happen
adiungō, -ere, adiūnxī, adiūnctum, annex
suscipio, -ere, suscipi, susceptum (sub + capiō), undertake, take up

I. Review 150, Rule 3, with Note; then make the proper forms of the following verbs in parenthesis to agree with the pronoun subjects: ¹

PRESENT TENSE: 1. Tū (occupāre). 2. Is (mūnīre). 3. Ego (dūcere). 4. Ilī (facere). 5. Nōs (mittere). 6. Vōs (vidēre).

PERFECT TENSE: 7. Vōs (manēre). 8. Ilī (accipere). 9. Is (pugnāre). 10. Ego (movēre). 11. Nōs (gerere). 12. Tū (dare).

II. On the model of 300 and 301, conjugate the present and perfect of *dō*, *videō*, *gerō*, *suscipio*, and *mūniō*, with the meanings.

III. 1. Hoc in cōspectū omnium accidit. 2. Aciem nostram sub colle instruximus. 3. Rōmānī ea loca finitimae provinciae (dat.²) adiungere volēbant (184, a). 4. Quis post

¹ The pronoun subject of a finite verb (14) is usually not expressed (except for emphasis, etc.) on account of the personal endings. It is used here only to show the number and person wanted.

² *Adiungō*, *I annex (to)*, takes a dative (as well as acc.) for a reason to be stated later.

Tarquinium Priscum imperium suscepit? 5. Servius Tullius fuit sextus Rōmānōrum rēx. 6. Pueritiam in rēgis domō ēgī (139). 7. Bene imperium administrāvistī. 8. Quid sub illō rēge accidit? 9. Quis mūrō lapideō (276, Note 4) urbem circumdedit? 10. Rēx quidam trēs montēs urbi (see sent. 3) adiūnxit.

CHAPTER 40

PRONOUNS (Syntax)

303. Clauses. A *clause* is a group of words, containing subject and predicate, that does the duty of a single part of speech (noun, adjective, or adverb). Thus, (1) *Where he is, I do not know.* The word-group *where he is*, containing a subject (*he*) and a predicate (*is*), is used like a noun, the object of the verb *know*. It is therefore a noun or substantive clause. (2) *I lost the book that you gave me.* Here the words *that you gave me*, containing a subject and predicate, describe the book, and are therefore an adjective clause. (3) *When he came, I went away.* The group *when he came*, containing a subject and predicate, does the duty of an adverb, modifying the verb *went*, and is therefore an adverb clause.

304. Relative Clauses. The adjective clause, which is always introduced by some relative form (as *that* in the second example above), is generally called a *relative clause*.

305. Principal and Subordinate Clauses. Strictly speaking, a clause is always subordinate; that is, *dependent* on the rest of the sentence. For convenience, however, the principal statement may be called the *principal clause*, and the clause proper is then called the *subordinate* (or *dependent*) *clause*.

306. Word Order. The *relative* (or any other introductory word of a *dependent clause*) regularly stands *first*, and *its verb last* in the dependent clause. The two are like brackets, or parentheses, in algebra, all other words of the clause standing between them. Thus:

Ea legiō QUAM Caesar sēcum HABĒBAT trāns flūmen missa est,
The legion WHICH Caesar with him HAD was sent across, etc.

307. Agreement of the Relative. Study 528, and repeat the rule. Say in Latin, *The man who praises you is coming*; also, *The man whom you praise is coming*.

308.**EXERCISE**

I. Explain the *gender*, *number*, and *case* of all relatives:
 1. Is quī hoc fēcit amīcus meus ēst. 2. Ea quam parvō in oppidō vidistī filia frātris mei est. 3. Scūtum quod miles habet nōn est bonum. 4. Vir cuius filium in viā vidimus est rēx. 5. Puer cui gladium dedistī (from dare) sē vulnerāvit. 6. Militēs quōrum virtutem laudāvimus hostibus fortissimē resistant. 7. Hostēs quibuscum nostrī magnā virtute pugnāvērunt in silvam fūgērunt.

II. Supply relative pronouns in the proper *gender*, *number*, and *case*:
 1. Dux — laudāvistī est Caesar. 2. Dux — militēs laudābāmus est Caesar. 3. Imperātor — militēs fortiter pugnāvērunt hostēs superāvit. 4. Bellum — rēx gessit fuit breve. 5. Urbs in — habitāmus (*we live*) maxima est. 6. Tēla — Rōmānī pugnābant erant pīla. 7. Is vir — populus Rōmānus imperium (*chief command*) dedit ab omnibus laudābātur. 8. Id — vidēmus crēdimus (*we believe*). 9. Militēs — dux erat Caesar fortissimē pugnābant.

309. Reflexive Pronouns. Study 581, 582, and 583 with the examples. How are *reflexive* pronouns used? Say in Latin, *Cicero praises himself*. What are the reflexive pronouns of the *first* and *second* persons, and to what is the term “*reflexive*” usually applied? Distinguish the uses of *suus* and *eius* or *eōrum*. Apply the principle in the sentence, *Caesar, the commander of Labienus, praised his soldiers*.

310.**EXERCISE**

call, summon, *vocō, -āre, etc.*

defend, *dēfendō, -ere, dēfendī, dēfēnsus*

give one's self up to, *sē mandāre* (from *mandō, -āre, etc.*, commit)

retreat, betake one's self, *sē recipere*; see *recipiō*, 199

I. 1. Ego mē dēfendō, tū tē dēfendis, is sē dēfendit, hostēs sē dēfendunt. 2. Imperātor duōs lēgātōs ad sē vocāvit. 3. Reliquī (133) sēsē fugae mandāverant. 4. Caesar cōpias suās ad hostium castra dūcet. 5. Labiēnus, lēgātus Caesaris, eius militēs laudat. 6. Labiēnus, lēgātus Caesaris, suōs militēs laudat. 7. In castra nōs recēpimus.

II. 1. The enemy are retreating towards their camp. 2. I retreat, we retreat, you (pl.) retreat. 3. These brave soldiers did not give themselves up to flight. 4. The remaining (see I, 3) forces followed (146, III) the lieutenant. 5. The leader (princeps) of this part of Gaul had summoned three of (ex) his bravest friends before (ad) him.

311. Intensive Pronouns. Study 585 with *a* and 586 with *a*. How is the *intensive* pronoun translated in *ipse parō, ipse parās, ipse parat, ipsi parant*? How is the word often used by Caesar? Distinguish between the *intensive* and the *reflexive* pronouns, and apply in, *He himself wounds the enemy* and *He wounds himself*. May both pronouns be used in the same sentence?

312. Alter and Alius. Study 589 with *a* and 590. How do *alter* and *alius* differ in meaning? Say in Latin, *One praises, the other does not*; also, *Some fight, others flee*. Translate *Alius aliud facit*. How should *inter sē* be translated?

313.**EXERCISE**

I. 1. Alii aliud dixērunt (*said*). 2. Dux cuius exercitus victor erat ipse ā proeliō aberat (200, *a*). 3. Alii fortiter pugnāverunt, aliī fugae sē mandāverunt. 4. Caesar lēgātum cum unā legiōne in hostium finēs mittit; ipse cum reliquīs cōpiis subsequitur (*follows up*). 5. Hōrum duōrum virōrum alter dīves (*rich*), alter pauper (*poor*) fuit. 6. Tertiam partem Galliae incolunt ei qui ipsōrum linguā (*language*) appellantur Celtae (*Celts*). 7. Galli obsidēs inter sē dant. 8. Servius Tullius duās filiās habēbat, quārum altera ferōx (*cruel*) erat, altera mītis (*gentle*).

II. 1. One of the horsemen was captured, the other was killed. 2. Some of the enemy resisted our men (280), others retreated to their camp. 3. He sends all the cavalry ahead of him (*ante se*); he-himself during (*dē*) the third watch pushes on (107) with two legions.

CHAPTER 41

READING LESSON

314.

VOCABULARY

circum, *prep. with acc.*, around

flamma, -ae, F., flame

speciēs, -ēī, F., semblance, appearance

mātrimōnium, *mātrimōnī*, N., mat-

rimony; in *mātrimōnium dū-*

cere, to marry (*said of the man*)

incipiō, -ere, *incēpī*, *inceptum* (in + *capiō*), begin

pāreō, -ēre, *pāruī*, —, obey (*with the dative*, 280)

SERVIUS TULLIUS, THE SIXTH KING OF ROME

315. *Primus Rōmānōrum rēx fuit Rōmulus, alter Numa Pompilius, tertius Tullus Hostilius, quārtus Ancus Mārcius, quīntus Tarquinius Prīscus. Post hunc¹ Servius Tullius imperium suscepit. Is captivae² fuit filius, quī cum mātē suā in Tarquini domō habitābat.³*

NOTES: 1. *him*, i.e. the last named; *hic* and *ille* may be used as personal pronouns. 2. Feminine of *captivus*. 3. For the meaning, compare 308, II, 5.

THE OMEN OF THE FLAME

316. *In eius pueritiā mirābile¹ in cōspectū multōrum accidit. Flammae speciēs pueri dormientis² caput amplexa³ est.³ Quidam ex servīs⁴ flammam aquā restinguere⁵ volēbat. Tanāquil, uxor Tarquini, vetuit.⁶ "Hic puer," inquit, "lūmen⁷ regnō nostrō erit. Eum magnā cum cūrā educābimus."⁸ Itaque Tarquinius puerum cum suis ipsius⁹ liberis educāvit.⁸*

NOTES: 1. *a wonderful-thing* (64). 2. *while-sleeping*, pres. part., 226, a. 3. *surrounded*. 4. 229. 5. *to extinguish*. 6. *forbade*. 7. = *lūx*. 8. From *educāre*, *to rear, educate*. 9. The gen. of *ipse* may be used to strengthen *suus*, *his own*.

HOW SERVIUS BECAME KING

317. Postea Servius filiam regis in matrimonium duxit. Tarquinius, ut demonstravimus,¹ ab Anci filiis interfectus est. Mortem eius Tanaquil celavit, et populum ex superiore domus parte adlocuta est.² "Rex," inquit, "grave vulnus accepit, sed non morietur."³ Populus interim Servio Tullio parebit.⁴ Sic Servius regnare⁵ incepit; bene autem imperium administravit.

NOTES: 1. Compare 207 (ut demonstratum est). 2. *adlocuta est*, *addressed*. 3. Future of *mori*, 146, III. 4. Trans. this fut., *shall*, etc. 5. Compare 211, Note 2.

THE ADMINISTRATION OF SERVIUS

318. Multos finitimos vicit; tres montes urbi¹ adiunxit; fossas circum urbis murum duxit, quem murum Tarquinius aedificare inceperat. Primus census² omnium ordinavit.³ Sub eo Roma capita⁴ LXXXIII milia civium habuit cum iis qui in agris erant. XLIV annos regnaverat,⁵ cum⁶ ab sua ipsius⁶ filia interfectus est.

NOTES: 1. See footnote to 302, III, 3 (*provinciae*). 2. *a census*, accusative. The object of this census was to enroll and classify the people according to the amount of their property. 3. *arranged*. 4. Omit in translating; we say "head" of *cattle*, but not (as in Latin) head of *persons*. 5. See 276, Note 4. 6. Compare *suis ipsius*, 316 and Note 9. The story of the death of Servius is told in a later lesson.

CHAPTER 42

INDICATIVE ACTIVE

319. Principal parts:

parō,	-āre,	parāvī,	parātum,	<i>prepare</i>
moneō,	-ēre,	monuī,	monitum,	<i>advise</i>
regō,	-ere,	rēxī,	rēctum,	<i>rule</i>
capīō,	-ere,	cēpī,	captum,	<i>take</i>
audiō,	-īre,	audīvī,	audītum,	<i>hear</i>

320.

ACTIVE VOICE

INDICATIVE MOOD (Present System)

I

II

III

IV

PRESENT

I prepare, advise, rule, take, hear

par -ō	mone-ō	reg -ō	capi-ō	audi-ō
parā-s	monē-s	regi-s	capi-s	audi-s
para-t	mone-t	regi-t	capi-t	audi-t
parā-mus	monē-mus	regi-mus	capi-mus	audi-mus
parā-tis	monē-tis	regi-tis	capi-tis	audi-tis
para-nt	mone-nt	regu-nt	capi-u-nt	audi-u-nt

IMPERFECT

I was preparing, advising, ruling, taking, hearing

parāba-m	monēba-m	regēba-m	capiēba-m	audiēba-m
parābā-s	monēbā-s	regēbā-s	capiēbā-s	audiēbā-s
parāba-t	monēba-t	regēba-t	capiēba-t	audiēba-t
parābā-mus	monēbā-mus	regēbā-mus	capiēbā-mus	audiēbā-mus
parābā-tis	monēbā-tis	regēbā-tis	capiēbā-tis	audiēbā-tis
parāba-nt	monēba-nt	regēba-nt	capiēba-nt	audiēba-nt

FUTURE

I shall prepare, advise, rule, take, hear

parāb -ō	monēb -ō	rega-m	capia-m	audia-m
parābi -s	monēbi -s	regē-s	capiē-s	audiē-s
parābi -t	monēbi -t	rege-t	capiet	audiet
parābi -mus	monēbi -mus	regē-mus	capiē-mus	audiē-mus
parābi -tis	monēbi -tis	regē-tis	capiē-tis	audiē-tis
parābu-nt	monēbu-nt	rege-nt	capien-t	audien-t

(a) Give all the meanings of the *present* and the *imperfect* indicative active (15).

(b) Why do the above tenses belong to the *present system* (92)? How is the *present stem* found? In which conjugation does this stem undergo several changes in the *present* tense (300, a)? Which of these tenses have *tense signs*? Which has none? Is the sign of the *future* in Conjs. III and IV (8) the same in *every person* (320)? Tell the personal endings of these tenses (299).

321.

ACTIVE VOICE. — *Continued*

INDICATIVE MOOD (Perfect System)

I

II

III

IV

PERFECT

I (have) prepared, advised, ruled, taken, heard

parāv-i	monu-i	rēx-i	cēp-i	audiv-i
parāv-isti	monu-isti	rēx-isti	cēp-isti	audiv-isti
parāv-it	monu-it	rēx-it	cēp-it	etc.
parāv-imus	monu-imus	rēx-imus	etc.	
parāv-istis	monu-istis	etc.		
parāv-erunt	monu-erunt			
or -ēre	or -ēre			

PLUPERFECT

I had prepared, advised, ruled, taken, heard

parāv-eram	monu-eram	rēx-eram	cēp-eram	audiv-eram
parāv-erās	monu-erās	rēx-erās	cēp-erās	audiv-erās
parāv-erat	monu-erat	rēx-erat	etc.	etc.
parāv-erāmus	etc.	etc.		
parāv-erātis				
parāv-erant				

FUTURE PERFECT

I shall have prepared, advised, ruled, taken, heard

parāv-erō	monu-erō	rēx-erō	cēp-erō	audiv-erō
parāv-eris	monu-eris	rēx-eris	cēp-eris	etc.
parāv-erit	monu-erit	rēx-erit	etc.	
parāv-erimus	monu-erimus	etc.		
parāv-eritis	monu-eritis			
parāv-erint	monu-erint			

(a) Give *all* the meanings of the *perfect* indicative active (15).

(b) Why do the above tenses belong to the *perfect system* (92)? How is the *perfect stem* found? Does it change in any of the above forms? Which of the above tenses has no *tense sign*? Give the *tense signs* of the other tenses of the perfect system. Which tense has *personal endings* differing from those of other tenses?

322.

EXERCISE

iuvenis, iuvenis, M., young man quadrāgintā, indecl. num. adj.,
forty

impediō, -ire, impedivī, impeditum, hinder, impede

incipiō, -ere, incēpī, inceptum, 314

incitō, -āre, incitāvī, incitātum, urge on

iungō, -ere, iūnxī, iūnctum, join (*compare coniungō, 272, and*
adiungō, 302)

pāreō, -ēre, pārui, —, 314

perdō, -ere, perdidi, perditum, lose

I. Examine the table below (323). The figures represent all the forms given in 320 and 321. Thus, 1 stands for *1st per. sing. of the present*, 8 for the *2d per. sing. of the imperfect*, 24 for the *3d per. pl. of the perfect*, etc. Give for each verb named below the forms called for by figures in parentheses, and the meanings: incitō (2, 9, 16, 23); pāreō (8, 17, 26, 35); perdō (13, 20, 27, 34); incipiō (15, 22, 29, 36); impediō (6, 14, 22, 30).

II. Write the *English* forms of the following verbs, then translate into Latin: *hinder* (3, 11, 19, 27); *lose* (10, 15, 20, 25); *obey* (17, 23, 29, 35); *urge on* (4, 14, 24, 34).

III. 1. Frūmenti cōpia esse (118) incipiēbat. 2. Mīlia passuum quadrāgintā iter duōbus diēbus fēcērunt. 3. Multa (64) Caesarem ad id bellum incitābant. 4. Cum quadrāgintā iuvenibus hunc locum dēfendēmus. 5. Multis ante (here adverb, *before*) annis mātirimōniō iūncti sunt. 6. Quis tē in tuō iūre (*rights*) impedit? 7. Omnī tempore (*always*) rēgī nostrō pārēbimus. 8. Multās nāvēs illō proeliō perdidistis.

323.

TABLE

	PRES.	IMPF.	FUT.	PERF.	PLUP.	F. PERF.
Sing. 1 person	1	7	13	19	25	31
2 person	2	8	14	20	26	32
3 person	3	9	15	21	27	33
Plur. 1 person	4	10	16	22	28	34
2 person	5	11	17	23	29	35
3 person	6	12	18	24	30	36

CHAPTER 43

DATIVE OF POSSESSOR, ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION

324.

VOCABULARY

Aquitanians, Aquītānī , -ōrum, M.	or, <i>aut</i> , <i>conjunction</i> ; <i>aut</i> . . . <i>aut</i> ,
<i>pl.</i>	either . . . or
defender, dēfēnsor , -ōris, M.	townsman, oppidānus , -ī, M.
free, <i>adjective</i> , 159	without, empty of, vacuus , -a, -um,
Garonne, Garūna , -ae, M. or F.	(with <i>ab</i> + <i>abl.</i>)
Germans, Germānī , -ōrum, M. <i>pl.</i>	
deprive, privō , -āre, <i>etc.</i>	
free, <i>verb</i> , 128	
keep from, prevent, prohibeō , -ēre, prohibui , prohibitum	
separate, divide, dividō , -ere, divisi , divisum	

325. Dative of the Possessor. Study 541, repeat the rule, and say in Latin, *The boy has a sword*. What is this expression practically equivalent to? To illustrate, change the following sentences to others containing the dative with forms of **sum**:

326. 1. **Frātre**m habeo. 2. **Patrem** habebās. 3. **Multōs** amīcōs habēbit. 4. **Multās** nāvēs habuimus. 5. **Gladiōs** longōs habuerātis. 6. **Magnam** pecūniam (*sum of money*) habuerint.

327. Ablative of Separation. Study 554 with *a*. What verbs and adjectives take this ablative? What prepositions are sometimes used with this ablative? When regularly? Say in Latin, *The Garonne separates the Gauls from the Aquitanians*; also, *He freed his country from danger*.

328.

EXERCISE

Point out all *datives* and *ablatives* illustrating the principles of 325 and 327:

I. 1. **Serviō** (nom. -ius) erant duae filiae. 2. **Vacuum** ab dēfēnsōribus fuit illud oppidum. 3. **Hīs** quadrāgintā iuvenibus sunt optima arma. 4. **Puellae** puerique cūrā liberī saepe sunt. 5. **Flūmen** lātum hanc terram ab illā dividit. 6. **Helvētīi** cum **Germānīs** saepe contendunt (*struggle*), cum (*when*) aut suis fin

ibus eōs prohibent aut ipsi in eōrum finibus bellum gerunt.
7. Oppidānis magnus numerus erit scūtōrum et pūōrum.

II. 1. The townsmen had a supply of arms. 2. Our country will not be free from great danger. 3. We shall keep their forces from our territory (*finēs*). 4. He had deprived the enemy of (not the gen.) all their arms. 5. You were freeing the city from many dangers. 6. A very-broad and very-deep river separates the Germans from the Helvetians. 7. We had kept the horsemen from these lands (*ager*, pl.). 8. At this time the people (sing.) were not free from anxiety (*cūra*).

329. **Word Studies.** Look up the following words in the general vocabulary at the end of the book, and learn about each all that the vocabulary tells: *complūrēs*, *ducenti*, *petō*, *repetō*, *quā rē*.

330.

SIXTH REVIEW (276-329)

I. **Inflection.** 1. Tell what *kind of pronoun* each of the following is, and give its *gen.* and *dat. sing.* and its *gen.* and *abl. pl.*: *ego*, *sui*, *hic*, *idem*, *ipae*, *qui*, *quis*. 2. Give the *personal endings* of the indicative active (299 and 301). 3. Analyze *parāvistis*, *monēbāmus*, *rēxērunt*, *audiverās*. 4. Give a synopsis (as in 149) in the *second person singular* of the indicative active of *pugnō*, *maneō*, *iungō*, *suscipiō*, and *veniō*, first finding the *two stems* of each.

II. **Syntax.** 1. Name six *intransitive verbs* that take the dative of the indirect object. 2. Say in Latin, *by me, with us, with whom* (pl.). 3. What is the rule of agreement of the *relative pronoun*? 4. How are *reflexives* used? 5. When should *eius* or *eōrum* be used instead of *suus*? 6. Distinguish *eē* and *ipse* in name and use. 7. Translate: *alter vult, alter nōn vult; alii possunt, alii nōn possunt; alii aliud iubent*. 8. Give *rules* for the cases of italicized words: *militibus erant arma; haec urbs vacua est ab dēfēnsōribus; eōs nostris finibus prohibēmus*.

III. **Word Order.** Give a rule for *word order* in dependent clauses (306).

IV. Vocabulary.¹

300. accidō, 301. administrō, 302. aliquis, 303. ante, 304. aut (aut . . . aut), 305. cēlō, 306. circum, 307. complūrēs, 308. dēfendō, 309. dividō, 310. ducentī, 311. ego, 312. īdem, 313. impediō, 314. incipiō, 315. incitō, 316. interim, 317. ipse, 318. is, 319. iungō, (iuvēnis²), 320. lūx, 321. mandō (sē mandāre), (mātrimōnium²), 322. noceō, 323. persuādeō, (perdō²), 324. petō, (repetō²), 325. privō, 326. prohibeō, 327. quadrāgintā, (quā rē), 328. quī, 329. quidam, 330. quis, 331. quisquam, 332. quisque, 333. resistō, (rēs novae), (sē recipere), 334. studeō, 335. sub, 336. suī, 337. suscipiō, 338. vacuus.

CHAPTER 44

SUBJUNCTIVE AND IMPERATIVE ACTIVE, PURPOSE

331.

ACTIVE VOICE

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD (Present System)

I	II	PRESENT		
par-em	mone-am	reg-am	capi-am	audi-am
par-ēs	mone-ās	reg-ās	capi-ās	audi-ās
par-et	mone-at	reg-at	capi-at	audi-at
par-ēmus	mone-āmus	reg-āmus	capi-āmus	audi-āmus
par-ētis	mone-ātis	reg-ātis	capi-ātis	audi-ātis
par-ent	mone-ant	reg-ant	capi-ant	audi-ant
IMPERFECT				
parāre-m	monēre-m	regere-m	capere-m	audire-m
parārē-s	monērē-s	regerē-s	caperē-s	audirē-s
parāre-t	monēre-t	regere-t	capere-t	audire-t
parārē-mus	monērē-mus	regerē-mus	caperē-mus	audirē-mus
parārē-tis	monērē-tis	regerē-tis	caperē-tis	audirē-tis
parāre-nt	monēre-nt	regere-nt	capere-nt	audire-nt

Before attempting to memorize these forms, study carefully the following paragraphs:

¹ See footnote to 67, IV.

² Not in the Lodge list (hence not numbered), but required in the next reading lesson.

332. Subjunctive. This mood is far more frequent in Latin than in English. It is often used in Latin where the indicative would be used in English. In fact, the English subjunctive has almost disappeared from the language, and in its stead certain phrases are used, made up of the auxiliaries *may, might, should, would*, etc. The Latin subjunctive is usually translated either by one of these auxiliaries or by our indicative.

333. Tenses of the Subjunctive. The subjunctive has *four tenses* (no futures): present and imperfect, denoting *incomplete action*, and perfect and pluperfect, denoting *completed action*.

334. Tense Signs. The *signs* of the subjunctive active tenses are :

present, -ā- (Conj. I, -ē-)	perfect, -eri-
imperfect, -re-	pluperfect, -isse-

335. Personal Endings. The endings of the subjunctive active are those already given for the indicative (299), but always with -m in the first person singular.

336. Present Subjunctive Active. This tense is thus formed : *present stem + tense sign -ā- (Conj. I, -ē-) + personal endings*. But since the stem here is not treated alike for all conjugations, the simplest method of forming the tense is as follows :

	I	II		III	IV
<i>1st princ. part,</i>	par-ō	mone-ō	reg-ō	capi-ō	audi-ō
<i>drop ō,</i>	par	mone	reg	capi	audi
<i>add tense signs,</i>	parē	moneā	regā	capiā	audiā

Now add the personal endings (m, s, t, etc.).

337. Learn the *present* subjunctive of these verbs (331). Form, exactly as explained in 336, the pres. subjv. of incitō, placeō, petō, incipiō, and impediō.

338. Imperfect Subjunctive Active. Formation : *present stem + tense sign -re- + personal endings*. But the pres. stem

SUBJUNCTIVE AND IMPERATIVE ACTIVE 131

+ *-re* = infinitive ; therefore, the shortest way to proceed is to *add the personal endings directly to the infinitive* (second principal part). Thus :

2d princ. part., *parāre* *monēre* *regere*, *capere* *audire*
add per. endings, *parārem* *monērem* *regerem*, *caperem* *audirem*

339. Learn the *imperfect* subjunctive of these verbs (331). Then form, exactly as explained above (338), the *imp. subjv.* of the verbs named in 337.

340. Tenses. Study 605. What is a *primary* tense? a *secondary* tense? Which tenses of the indicative are primary, and which secondary?

341. Purpose Clauses. Study 610 and 611 with *a*. How do English and Latin differ in expressing *purpose*? Illustrate with the sentence, *They are coming to see the town.* What tense is *videant*? Why used here? If the leading verb (*are coming*) were past (*were coming, came, did come, or had come*), what change would be made in *videant*? Tell different ways of translating *ut* in a purpose clause. What is the *negative* of *ut* expressing purpose, and how may it be translated?

342.

EXERCISE

domus, -ūs, *F.*, 193, *a*
timor, -ōris, *M.*, 228

suspiciō, -ōnis, *F.*, suspicion

hiemō, -āre, *etc.*, winter, pass the winter
nūntiō, -āre, *etc.*, 82
petō, -ere, *petivī*, *petitum*, seek, beg (329)
properō, -āre, *etc.*, hasten
vītō, -āre, *etc.*, avoid, shun

I. Tell the *tense* of each subjunctive, and say *why* that tense is used : 1. *Rēgem interfēcit, ut rēgnum occupāret.* 2. *Rēgem interficiet, ut rēgnum occupet.* 3. *Lēgātī ad Caesarem venient, ut auxilium petant.* 4. *Nostrī agrōs hostium vāstāverant, nē illī (they, the enemy) frūmentī cōpiam habērent.* 5. *Agrōs hostium vāstābimus, nē in patriam nostram iter faciant.* 6. *Domum properāmus, ut victōriam nūntiēmus.* 7. In hos-

tium agrum (*country*) properābimus, ut impetum in eōrum cōpiās faciāmus. 8. Cōpiaē duōrum cōsulum ad (*near*) urbem mānsērunt, ut timōris suspiciōnem vitārent. 9. Nostri summā cum virtūte pugnābunt, ut patriam timōre liberent. 10. Manum equitātūs per Gallōrum finēs dūcēbat, ut eōs terreret.

II. Be careful *not* to express *purpose* by the infinitive:

1. They came to Caesar to seek peace. 2. A large force of cavalry will march into the enemy's country (*ager*) in order to terrify them. 3. He hastened home (193, *a*) for the purpose of reporting these matters (*rēs*). 4. With a thousand soldiers he set out to lay waste the territory of the Gauls. 5. They fought very bravely that the enemy might not take the town.

343.

ACTIVE VOICE

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD (Perfect System). — *Continued*

I	II	III		IV
PERFECT				
parāv-eri-m	monu-eri-m	rēx-eri-m	cēp-eri-m	audiv-eri-m
parāv-eri-s	monu-eri-s	rēx-eri-s	cēp-eri-s	audiv-eri-s
parāv-eri-t	monu-eri-t	rēx-eri-t	cēp-eri-t	audiv-eri-t
parāv-eri-mus	monu-eri-mus	rēx-eri-mus	cēp-eri-mus	audiv-eri-mus
parāv-eri-tis	monu-eri-tis	rēx-eri-tis	cēp-eri-tis	audiv-eri-tis
parāv-eri-nt	monu-eri-nt	rēx-eri-nt	cēp-eri-nt	audiv-eri-nt
PLUPERFECT				
parāv-isse-m	monu-isse-m	rēx-isse-m	cēp-isse-m	audiv-isse-m
parāv-issēs	monu-issēs	rēx-issēs	cēp-issēs	audiv-issēs
parāv-isse-t	monu-isse-t	rēx-isse-t	cēp-isse-t	audiv-isse-t
parāv-issēs-mus	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.
parāv-issēs-tis				
parāv-isse-nt				

Before memorizing the above forms, study carefully paragraph 344.

344. Perfect System, Subjunctive Active. The tenses of the *perfect system* of the subjunctive active are formed as follows:

Perfect: *perf. stem + tense sign -eri- + per. endings*

Pluperfect: *perf. stem + tense sign -isse- + per. endings*

345. Learn the tenses of the perfect system of the subjunctive active (343). Form the same tenses of *incitō*, *placeō*, *petō*, *incipiō*, and *impediō*.

346. ACTIVE VOICE

IMPERATIVE MOOD (Present Stem)

I

PRESENT

S. 2, *parā*, *prepare (you)*

P. 2, *parā-te*, *prepare (you)*

FUTURE

S. 2, *parā-tō*, *you shall prepare*

3, *parā-tō*, *he shall prepare*

P. 2, *parā-tōte*, *you shall prepare*

3, *para-ntō*, *they shall prepare*

II

III

IV

PRESENT

S. 2, *monē*

rege

cape

audi

P. 2, *monē-te*

regi-te

capi-te

audi-te

FUTURE

S. 2, *monē-tō*

regi-tō

capi-tō

audi-tō

3, *monē-tō*

regi-tō

capi-tō

audi-tō

P. 2, *monē-tōte*

regi-tōte

capi-tōte

audi-tōte

3, *mone-ntō*

regu-ntō

capi-untō

audi-untō

Before memorizing the imperative forms, study carefully 347.

347. Imperative Active. The *imperative* (mood of command, 10) is formed by adding to the present stem the following endings:

Pres., S. 2, — Fut., S. 2, -tō P. 2, -tōte

P. 2, -te

3, -tō

3, -ntō (-iō verbs, -untō)

Notice in Conj. III (346) the changing vowel (e, i, u), and in the 3d per. pl. of -iō verbs (III and IV) u inserted before -nto.

348. Learn the imperatives in 346, and form the imperatives of the verbs given in 345.

349.**EXERCISE**

NOTE. We learned in 341 that the subjunctive, expressing *purpose*, may be translated *may* (present) and *might* (imperfect): *ut veniat, that he may come*; *nō veniret, that he might not come*.

I. **Regam, capiam, and audiam** may each represent two tenses (one *indicative*, the other *subjunctive*); which are they? Are they alike in *all* the persons?

II. Point out all *perfect* and *pluperfect* tenses, and translate the other forms:

1. Ut incitet. 2. Incitā. 3. Nē parāret. 4. Iūnxissēmus.
5. Ut persuādēret. 6. Nē capiant. 7. Placēte. 8. Cēperit.
9. Ut susciperet. 10. Impediuntō. 11. Petītō. 12. Petiv-
erint. 13. Petivissent. 14. Mūnitōte. 15. Dēfendite.

350. Derivatives (beginning with Chap. 32): *quarter* (coin), *pontoon*, *deleble* (*in-delible*), *cupidity*, *similar*, *trans-mit*, *accept*, *conjunction*, *in-nocent*, *accident*, *reception*, *specious*, *incipient*, *juvenile*, *impede*, *perdition*, *vacuum*, *privation*, *petition*, *suspicion*.

CHAPTER 45

SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE

351.**VOCABULARY**

ally, socius, soci, m.

friendship, amicitia, -ae, f.

arrival, adventus, -ūs, m.

state, civitas, -tatis, f.

command, imperō, -āre, etc.

demand, require, postulō, -āre, etc.

establish, strengthen, cōfirmō, -āre, etc.

persuade, 278

352. Substantive Clauses. "Substantive clause" means *noun clause* (303, 1). Any clause used as a noun (chiefly as *subject* or *object*) is therefore a *substantive clause*.

353. Substantive Clauses of Purpose. Study 612 with *a*, and repeat the rule. Say in Latin, *He demanded that I should do this.* Why is the clause *that I should do this* a substantive clause of purpose? How do *iubeō*, *I order*, and *imperō*, *I command*, differ in construction? Illustrate with the sentence, *He orders, or commands, the lieutenant to hasten.*

(*a*) Notice that *should* may be used to translate this use of the subjunctive, as in the first example of 353. The *infinitive* may also be used, as in 354, II, 1 below.

354.**EXERCISE**

I. Tell the *tense* of each subjunctive, and explain *why* that tense is used :

1. Postulat ut hostēs ducentōs (329) obsidēs dent. 2. Hostēs ducentōs obsidēs dare iubet. 3. Iis persuāsit ut amicitiam cum civitātibus finitimis cōfirmārent. 4. Nōs monent nē illud faciāmus. 5. Petivērunt nē Caesar castra prope (*near*) sē movēret. 6. Mihi persuādēbit ut veniam. 7. Dux iis imperāvit nē sociis populi Rōmāni nocērent. 8. Civitāti (*state*, here *citizens*) persuāsit ut dē finibus suis cum omnibus cōpiis exīrent (*exire, to go out*). 9. Postulat ut omnia cognōscant. 10. Eum monet ut omnēs suspiciōnēs vitet.

II. Be careful *not* to use the infinitive to express purpose :

1. I will persuade him (280) to come. 2. We demanded that they should come. 3. He commands (use *imperō*) them to lead the troops out of camp. 4. (Write sentence 3 with *iubeō*). 5. You (sing.) have persuaded the allies not to establish friendship with (*cum*) this state. 6. He-himself commanded the lieutenant to find out the plans of the enemy before his (*suus*) arrival. 7. Who will persuade the neighbors not to give hostages to the allies? 8. I will advise our general to join (160) battle with the enemy immediately.

355. Word Studies (329). *adimō*, *convocō*, *ēvocō*, *dēiciō*, *gradus*, *refugiō*, *scelus*, and *templum*.

CHAPTER 46

READING LESSON

356.

VOCABULARY

dissimilis , -e, unlike	super , <i>prep. with acc. and abl.</i> , over,
paternus , -a, -um (one's) father's	upon
tamen , <i>conj.</i> , nevertheless, yet	

(a) Review 329 and 355. Glance over the following proper names, and refer to them as needed in the lesson below:

Ardea, -ae, F., *Ardea*, a town in Italy, about 20 miles south of Rome.

Capitōlium, -i, N., *the Capitol*, the chief temple of Jupiter in Rome, and the hill (known also as the Mons Capitolinus) on which the temple was situated.

Cūria, -ae, F., *the Curia*, or senate-house.

Forum, -i, N., *the Forum*, an open space in the heart of Rome, the centre of business and political activity.

Tarquinius Superbus, -i -i, M. *Tarquinius Superbus*, seventh and last king of Rome. After expelling him for his cruelty, the Romans had no more kings, but were governed by two consuls, chief executives (like our President) of a republic.

Tullia, -ae, F., *Tullia*, daughter of Servius Tullius.

THE PLANS OF SERVIUS UNSUCCESSFUL

357. Serviō Tulliō¹ erant duae filiae, quārum altera erat ferōx,² altera mitis.³ Duo filiī erant Tarquiniō Superbō,¹ quī quoque dissimilēs erant mōribus.⁴ Servius ferōcem filiām mīti iuvenī in mātirimōnium dedit, et mītem filiām ferōci iuvenī. Hoc fēcit, nē duo ferōcēs mātirimōniō iungerentur.⁵ Tamen mītēs perierunt,⁶ et ferōcēs mātirimōniō iūcti⁷ sunt. Statim Tarquinius, ferōx iuvenis, ā Tulliā incitātus,⁸ senātum convocāvit. Rēgnum paternum repetivit. Quā rē Servius rēx ad Cūriam properāvit. Sed is, iussū⁹ Tarquini, dē gradibus Cūriae dēiectus¹⁰ est, atque domum refugiēns¹¹ interfectus est. Corpus eius in viā relictum¹² est.



TULLIA

NOTES: 1. Dat. of possessor. 2. *ferōx, -ōcis, cruel*. 3. *mītis, -e, gentle*. 4. *in character*, abl. of specification. 5. Imperfect subjunctive passive (-ntur) in a neg. clause of purpose. 6. *died*. 7. From *iungō*. 8. Perf. pass. part., (*having been*) *urged on*. 9. *by the order*. 10. From *dēiciō* (355). 11. Pres. part. of *refugiō*, *while-fleeing*. 12. From *relinquō*.

TULLIA'S CRUELTY

358. Tullia carpentō¹ in Forum properāvit. Virum² ē Cūriā ēvocāvit. Eum salūtāvit³ rēgem.⁴ Domum rediēns⁵ corpus suī patris in viā iacēns⁶ vīdit. Mūliōnem⁷ super ipsum corpus carpentum agere⁸ iussit. Quā rē via illa Scelerāta⁹ appellāta est.

NOTES: 1. *carpentum, -i, N., carriage*; the derivative *carpenter* originally meant "wagon-maker." 2. *husband*. 3. *saluted*. 4. (*as*) *king*. 5. *while-returning*, pres. participle. 6. *lying*, acc. neut. sing. of pres. participle. 7. *driver*, acc. 8. *drive*, inf. 9. *Accursed (via, street)*.

THE EXPULSION OF TARQUINIUS

359. Ita Tarquinius Superbus per scelus rēgnum occupāvit. Tamen fortis erat bellō. Complūrēs gentēs finitimās vicit. Cum aliīs pācem cōfirmāvit. Templum Iovī¹ in Capitōliō aedificāvit. Postea Ardeam oppugnāns,² quae urbs nōn longē ā Rōmā abest, imperium perdidit. Nam ob scelera populus Rōmānus ei³ imperium adēmit.⁴ Ille⁵ cum uxōre liberisque fūgit. Septem Rōmānōrum rēgēs, quōrum Tarquinius Superbus fuit ultimus,⁶ annōs ducentōs quadrāgintā trēs⁷ Rōmam rēxērunt.

NOTES: 1. *To (= in honor of) Jupiter, from Iuppiter, Iovis, irreg. noun*. 2. Pres. part. of *oppugnō*. 3. Dat. of *is*, but trans. *from him*, literally *for him*. 4. From *adimō* (355). 5. *He* (315, Note 1); never trans. *that one*. 6. *last*. 7. That is, from 753 to 510 B.C.

CHAPTER 47

ACTIVE VOICE. — *Completed*

360.

ACTIVE VOICE

INFINITIVE MOOD

	I	II	III	IV	
Pres.	parā-re	monē-re	rege-re	cape-re	audi-re
		<i>to prepare, advise, rule, take, hear</i>			
Perf.	parāv-isse	monu-isse	rēx-isse	cēp-isse	audiv-isse
		<i>to have prepared, advised, ruled, etc.</i>			
Fut.	parāt-ūrus	monit-ūrus	rēct-ūrus	capt-ūrus	audit-ūrus
	(a, um)	(a, um)	(a, um)	(a, um)	(a, um)
	esse	esse	esse	esse	esse
		<i>to be going to prepare, advise, etc.</i>			

PARTICIPLES

Pres.	parā-ns	monē-ns	regē-ns	capi-ēns	audi-ēns
		<i>preparing, advising, ruling, taking, etc.</i>			
Fut.	parāt-ūrus	monit-ūrus	rēct-ūrus	capt-ūrus	audit-ūrus
	(a, um)	(a, um)	(a, um)	(a, um)	(a, um)
		<i>going to prepare, advise, etc.</i>			

GERUND

Gen.	para-ndī	mone-ndī	rege-ndī	capi-endī	audi-endī
		<i>of preparing, advising, etc.</i>			
Dat.	para-ndō	mone-ndō	rege-ndō	capi-endō	audi-endō
		<i>for preparing, etc.</i>			
Acc.	para-ndum	mone-ndum	rege-ndum	capi-endum	audi-endum
		<i>preparing, etc.</i>			
Abl.	para-ndō	mone-ndō	rege-ndō	capi-endō	audi-endō
		<i>by preparing, etc.</i>			

SUPINES

Acc.	parāt-um	monit-um	rēct-um	capt-um	audit-um
		<i>to prepare, advise, etc.</i>			
Abl.	parāt-ū	monit-ū	rēct-ū	capt-ū	audit-ū
		<i>in preparing, advising, etc.</i>			

361. Formations. The above forms, completing the active voice, are made as follows :

- A. INFINITIVES— present = *second princ. part*
perfect = *perf. stem + -isse*
future = *fut. participle + esse, to be*
- B. PARTICIPLES— present = *pres. stem + -ns, or*
+ -ēns (all -iō verbs)
future = *base of fourth princ. part + -ūrus, -a, -um*
- C. GERUND = *pres. stem + -ndī, -ndō, etc., or*
+ -endī, -endō, etc. (all -iō verbs)
- D. SUPINES—accusative = *same as fourth princ. part*
ablative = *acc. supine with -um changed to -ū*

362. Declension. For the declension of the present participle, see 226. The future participle (*parātūrus, -a, -um*, etc.) is declined like adjectives in *-us, -a, -um*. The supine is a verbal noun of the fourth declension (192), but has only two cases,—acc. in *-um* and abl. in *-ū*.

363.

EXERCISE

potestās, -tātis, F., power, opportunity **spatium, spati, N., distance, space, time**

expellō, -ere, expulī, expulsum, drive out, expel

cōficiō, -ere, cōfēcī, cōfectum (con- + faciō), complete, accomplish

iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussum, 260

pervenīō, -īre, pervēnī, perventum (per + veniō), arrive (with ad or in + acc.)

vexō, -āre, etc., harass, ravage

I. 1. Vexāvisse, iussisse. 2. Iubendō, cōficiendi. 3. Expellēns, perveniēns. 4. Vexātūrus esse, expulsūrus esse. 5. Cōfectūrus, perventūrus. 6. To have completed, to have arrived. 7. Completing, ordering (pres. part.). 8. Going to ravage, going to drive out. 9. By ravaging, of expelling. 10. To seek (supine of *petō*), to report (supine of *nūntiō*).

II. 1. Caesari (325) fuit potestās cum hostibus pugnandi.
2. Magnum spatium paucīs diēbus cōficere cōstituit.
3. Magnum spatium cōnfēcisse dicitur (*he is said*). 4. Prō

patriā suā fortiter pugnāns (226, a) interfectus est. 5. Multōs fugientēs interfēcisse dicitur (see sent. 3). 6. Multitudinem fugientium hostium vidimus. 7. Bellum parātūrus esse (360) dicitur. 8. Spatium pīla in hostēs coniciendī nostris nōn dabātur.

CHAPTER 48

RELATIVE CLAUSE OF PURPOSE, DATIVE OF PURPOSE, DOUBLE DATIVE

364.

VOCABULARY

disgrace, turpitudō, -dinis, F. guard, garrison, praesidium, praefor-
mer, old-time, pristinus, -a, -um sidī, N.
hindrance, impedimentum, -ī, N.; pl. baggage

choose, dēligō, -ere, dēlēgī, dēlēctum

send forward, praemittō, -ere, praemisī, praemissum (prae, in front + mittō)

withstand, sustain, check, sustineō, -ēre, sustinui, sustentum (sub + teneō)

365. Relative Clause of Purpose. Study 613 with *a*, state the rule, and give the Latin for, *He sent ambassadors to say (dicō, -ere)*. When may the *relative* be so used? What is the *antecedent* in the above sentence? What other way of expressing purpose have you learned (341)? What is the only difference between the two ways? What *two tenses* of the subjunctive may be used, and when should each be used?

(a) Remember that although the Latin *infinitive* is *not* the proper form for expressing purpose, yet in English the infinitive is so used.

366. Dative of Purpose, Double Dative. Study 543. Say in Latin, *They sent cavalry as an aid to Caesar*. Give the *name* of each dative and also of the two used together.

367.

EXERCISE

I. Point out all *purpose* expressions, explaining the *tense* of every subjunctive: 1. Equitātum praemittit, quī agrōs hostium

vāstet. 2. Hae legiōnēs missae sunt, quae in Galliā hiemārent. 3. Tēla comparābunt, quibus (*with which*, abl. of means) cum Helvētiis pugnent. 4. Lēgātī ab hostibus ad Caesarem mittentur, quī pācem petant. 5. Ibi legiōnem reliquit, quae auxiliō oppidānis esset. 6. Dux hostium milia militum sēdecim (= *sex + decem*) quī nostrōs finibus suis prohibērent (306), mīsit. 7. Equitēs ad proelium veniēbant, quī audācius pugnandō (360) turpitūdinem pristinae fugae dēlērent (*wipe out*). 8. Haec est ea legiō quae praesidiō impedimentis fuerat. 9. Omnem equitātum praemisit, quae hostium impetum sustinēret. 10. Imperātor mīsit quī haec cognōscerent (supply *eōs* as antecedent of *quī*). 11. Caesar legiōnem decimam auxiliō reliquis cōpiīs mittet. 12. Postea mille militēs praemisit quī hostēs ex mūrō ac (= *et*) turribus submovērent (*dislodge*). 13. Equitēs Gallōrum Caesarī saepe auxiliō erant. 14. In hōc proeliō scūta hostibus fuērunt impedimentō.

II. 1. Envoys will come to seek aid. 2. The general collected (*comparō*) a very-large army with which to carry on the war (compare I, 3, above). 3. These brave soldiers were an aid to the townsmen. 4. He sent forward two lieutenants to choose a place suitable for a camp. 5. A hundred soldiers acted (were) as a guard for the baggage. 6. Three legions will be sent to withstand the attack of the enemy. 7. He sent envoys to the enemy to seek peace. 8. The consul led with him all his forces with which to attack the enemy's camp (see sent. 2). 9. In this emergency (*casus*, 241) the soldiers whom the lieutenant had with him were a great help to the townsmen. 10. After this battle the same envoys came to the Roman general to sue-for (seek) peace.

368. Word Studies (329). *Ferē, quinquāgēsīmus, quinquāgintā, septīngentēsīmus, tandem.*

CHAPTER 49

THE VERB *SUM*

369. Principal parts : *sum, esse, fui, futūrus* (118).

370.

PARADIGM

INDICATIVE MOOD

PRESENT SYSTEM		PERFECT SYSTEM	
Pres.	<i>sum, I am es, you are est, he, etc., is sumus, we are estis, you are sunt, they are</i>	Perf.	<i>fui, I have been, was fuisti, you have been, were fuit, he has been, was fuimus, we have been, were fuistis, you have been, were fuērunt (-ēre), they have, etc.</i>
Impf.	<i>eram, I was erās, you were erat, he was erāmus, we were erātis, you were erant, they were</i>	Plup.	<i>fueram, I had been fuerās, you had been fuerat, he had been fuerāmus, we had been fuerātis, you had been fuerant, they had been</i>
Fut.	<i>erō, I shall be eris, you will be erit, he will be erimus, we shall be eritis, you will be erunt, they will be</i>	F. Pf.	<i>fuerō, I shall have been fueris, you will have been fuerit, he will have been fuerimus, we shall have been fueritis, you will have been fuerint, they will have been</i>

371.

EXERCISE

1. Estis, es, sumus. 2. Fuērunt, fuēre, fuisti. 3. Erimus, erunt, eris. 4. Erās, erātis, erāmus. 5. Fuerās, fueris, fueritis. 6. We shall be, we were (two tenses). 7. I have been, I had been. 8. You (sing.) were, you are. 9. There is, there was. 10. She is, she will be.

372.

PARADIGM

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

PRESENT SYSTEM		PERFECT SYSTEM	
Pres. sim	Impf. essem	Perf. fueroim	Plup. fuissem
sis	essēs	fuēris	fuiſsēs
sit	esset	fuērit	fuiſſet
simus	essēmus	fuērimus	fuiſſēmus
sitis	essētis	fuēritis	fuiſſētis
sint	essent	fuērint	fuiſſent

IMPERATIVE MOOD

Pres. es, be (you)
este, be (you)
Fut. estō, you shall be
estō, he shall be
estōte, you shall be
suntō, they shall be

INFINITIVE MOOD

Pres. esse, to be
Perf. fuisse, to have been
Fut. futūrus esse (or fore), to be
<i>going to be</i>

PARTICIPLE

Fut. futūrus (-a, -um), going to be
--

(a) Which of the above tenses of the subjunctive may be formed according to rule (336, 338, and 345)? Are the endings of the imperative regular (347)? Are the infinitives and the participle formed regularly (361)?

373.

EXERCISE

Point out *perfect* and *pluperfect subjunctives*, and translate other forms: 1. Fuisse, futūrus esse. 2. Esse, fore. 3. Es, suntō. 4. Ut sim, nē sis (341). 5. Ut esset, nē esset. 6. Fu-erit, fuisset. 7. Es bonus, ut tē laudēmus. 8. Dux noster esse vult (184, a). 9. Partem ūnius legiōnis reliquit, quae praesidiō impedimentis esset (365). 10. Be, to have been. 11. That he may be, that he might not be. 12. Going to be, they shall be. 13. That the soldiers may not be worn out (215). 14. Caesar is said (363, II, 3) to be going to be their (583) leader.

CHAPTER 50

CLAUSES OF RESULT, CUM-CLAUSES

374.

VOCABULARY

change, <i>commūtātiō</i> , -ōnis, F.	so, <i>tam</i> , <i>adv.</i> (<i>with adjs. and advs.</i>)
departure, <i>discessus</i> , -ūs, M.	so great, <i>tantus</i> , -a, -um
running, course (<i>of ships</i>), <i>cursor</i> , -ūs, M.	when, since, although, <i>cum</i> , <i>conj.</i>
speedily, quickly, <i>celeriter</i> , <i>adv.</i>	unexpectedly, <i>imprōvisō</i> , <i>adv.</i>

depart, *discēdō*, 199

inform (*make more certain*), *certiōrem* (*pl. certiōrēs*) *faciō* (99), *the adjective agreeing with the object of faciō*

renew, *redintegrō*, -āre, *etc.*

thoroughly frighten, demoralize, *perterreō*, -ēre, *perterrui*, *perterritum* (*per + terreō*)

(a) Subjunctive pres. and impf. of *potest*, *he is able, can* (184, a):

Pres. <i>possim</i>	<i>possimus</i>	Impf. <i>possem</i>	<i>possemus</i>
<i>possis</i>	<i>possitis</i>	<i>possēs</i>	<i>possētis</i>
<i>possit</i>	<i>possint</i>	<i>posset</i>	<i>possent</i>

375. Clauses of Result. Study 614 with *a*. How is *result* expressed in Latin? How is this subjunctive translated? What words are often found in the *principal clause*? Say in Latin, *He is so good that all praise him*. Tell in what respects *purpose* and *result* clauses are alike, and in what different.

(a) From the example (375) it is seen that the subjunctive is translated by the *same tense of the indicative*: *ut sit*, (*so*) *that he is*; *ut esset*, (*so*) *that he was*. How are these forms translated when expressing *purpose*?

376.

EXERCISE

I. Translate every subjunctive by the *same tense of the indicative*: 1. *Tam celeriter discēdunt, ut fugae similis discessus sit.* 2. *Tanta tempestās subitō coorta est (arose) ut nūlla nāvis cursum tenēre posset.* 3. *Hoc oppidum nātūrā loci sic mūnītum est, ut nostrī capere nōn possent.* 4. *Ita hostēs perterriti*

sunt, ut in castra sua refūgerint. 5. *Ā* nostris tam ācritē pugnātum est (245, Note), ut hostēs impetum sustinere nōn possent. 6. Hōrum adventū tanta rērum commūtātiō est facta, ut nostrī proelium redintegrārent. 7. Tantus timor exercitum occupāvit, ut animōs omnium perterreret. 8. Omnium timor erat tantus ut aliī aliam in partem fugerent (589, a).

II. 1. Our men fought so sharply that the enemy fled. 2. So quickly did they march that in a short time they arrived at (ad) the river. 3. They made the attack so unexpectedly that the horsemen were fleeing into the forest. 4. The arrival of the tenth legion produced (= made) so great a change in-the-state-of-affairs (gen. pl. of *rēs*) that our men renewed the battle.

377. *Cum*-Clauses. Study 620-624. Which *mood* is the more common after *cum*? Tell *three meanings* of *cum*. How is the *subjunctive* translated? Name each of the *uses* of *cum*. If *cum*, *when*, denotes the *circumstances* of an action, what *tenses* of the subjunctive are used? What does each tense denote? Why is *cum* *causal* so called? What tenses follow? What name is given to *cum* meaning *although*? What tenses follow? How can we tell which *meaning* to give to *cum*? When does *cum* take the *indicative*?

378.

EXERCISE

I. Tell the *mood* and *tense* of every verb with *cum*, and say what use of *cum* is illustrated: 1. Caesar, cum in Galliā esset, haec cognōvit. 2. Cum patriam nostram amēmus, prō (*for*) eā pugnābimus. 3. Cōsul, cum haec audivisset, magnīs itineribus in Galliam contendit. 4. Militēs, cum fortiter pugnāvissent, tamen superāti sunt. 5. Dux, cum explorātōrēs (*scouts*) eum dē his rēbus certiōrem fēcissent, cōpiās ē castris edūxit. 6. Ipse, cum frūmentī cōpia inciperet, ad exercitum vēnit.

II. 1. The messenger, when he saw Caesar, informed him of (concerning) the enemy's plans. 2. Since he had arrived unexpectedly, envoys were sent to him to seek (365) peace.

3. Their departure, although it was like flight (dat.), produced (= made) no change in-the-situation (see 376, II, 4). 4. They were fortifying the camp when messengers came (time alone indicated).

379.

SEVENTH REVIEW (331-378)

I. **Inflection.** 1. What tenses has the *subjunctive*? 2. Give the simplest way to form the *pres. subj. active*; the *imperf. subj. active*. 3. How are the tenses of the *perfect system* of the subjunctive active formed? 4. Give the *three infinitives* (act.) of *iubeō*; 5. the *two participles* of *mandō*; 6. the *gerund* of *dūcō*; 7. the *supines* of *audiō*. 8. Give a synopsis in the *third person plural* of *sum* in the indicative and subjunctive. 9. Tell the *three infinitives* of *sum*. 10. What is meant by *primary* tense? by *secondary* tense? 11. Name the *primary* tenses of the indicative; 12. the *secondary* tenses.

II. **Syntax.** 1. How do English and Latin differ in expressing *purpose*? 2. Give the *rule* for expressing purpose in Latin. 3. In what ways may *ut* with the subj. of purpose be *translated*? 4. and *nē*? 5. What is a *substantive clause*? 6. Name three or four verbs that take a *substantive clause of purpose* (612). 7. How do *iubeō* and *imperō* differ in construction? 8. When a *relative* takes the place of *ut* in a purpose clause, what is the clause called? 9. Express in Latin the italicized words: "He sent 1000 horsemen *as an aid to the town*," and name this construction. 10. How is *result* expressed? 11. How is the subjunctive of *result* translated? 12. Tell *four ways* in which purpose and result clauses differ (614, a). 13. What are the *three meanings* of *cum*, and the *names* of its three uses with the subjunctive? 14. Is the *indicative* or the *subjunctive* the more common after *cum*? 15. What *tenses* of the subjunctive are found in each of its uses? 16. When does *cum* take the *indicative*?

III. **Vocabulary.**¹

339. adimō, 340. adventus, 341. amicitia, 342. celeriter, (certiorem faciō), 343. civitās, 344. commutātiō, 345. cōficiō, 346. cōfirmō, 347. convocō, 348. cum, 349. cursus, 350. dēiciō, 351. dēligō, 352. discessus, 353. ēvocō, 354. expellō, 355. ferē, 356. hiemō, 357. imperō, 358. impedimentum (*pl.*), 359. nē, 360. perterreo,

¹ See footnote to 67, IV.

361. perveniō, 362. postulō, 363. potestās, 364. praemittō, 365. praesidium, 366. pristinus, 367. properō, (quīnquāgēsīmus¹), 368. quīnquāgīntā, (septīngentēsīmus¹), 369. socius, 370. spatium, 371. suspīciō, 372. sustineō, 373. tam, 374. tamen, 375. tandem, 376. tantus, (ut, ut nōn), 377. vexō.

CHAPTER 51

READING LESSON

380.

VOCABULARY

extrā, prep. with acc., outside of, orbis, orbis, M., circle; orbis terrarum, the whole world
beyond

coerceō, -ēre, coercuī, coercitum, restrain, check

condō, -ere, condidī, conditum (con-, together + dō, I put), build, found

subigō, -ere, subēgī, subāctum (sub + agō, I drive), subdue

(a) Phrases:

ante Christum nātum (before the born Christ), before the birth of Christ.
post expulsōs rēgēs (after the expelled kings), after the expulsion of the kings.

THE INFANCY OF ROME

381. Urbs Rōma annō¹ septīngentēsīmō quīnquāgēsīmō ter-tiō ante Christum nātum condita est. Per annōs ducentōs quadrāgīntā trēs rēxērunt civitātem rēgēs. Hanc aetātem² quasi³ infantiam⁴ populī Rōmānī appellāmus.

NOTES: 1. 204. 2. aetās, -tātis, F., age. 3. as it were. 4. infancy.

THE PERIOD OF ITS YOUTH

382. Postquam¹ Tarquinius Superbus ex rēgnō expulsus est, duo cōsulēs prō² ūnō rēge creābantur. Qui³ potestātem similem habēbant, ut, si⁴ ūnus malus esset, alter eum coercēret.⁵ Ducentis quīnquāgīntā ferē annis⁶ post expulsōs rēgēs tōtam

¹ Not in the Lodge list (hence not numbered), but required in the next reading lesson.

Ītaliā populū Rōmānus vīcerat. Hoc spatium temporis fuit adulescentia⁷ populī Rōmānī. Iam clārum fuit nōmen urbis Rōmae. Bella tamen extrā Ītaliā gesta nōn erant.

NOTES: 1. *After*, conjunction. 2. *instead of*. 3. The relative often begins a Latin sentence, a practice to be avoided in English. It is best rendered as a *personal* or *demonstrative* pronoun. Thus, *They had like power*. 4. *si . . . esset, if one were wicked*. 5. With *ut* expressing the *purpose* for which equal power was given them, *that the other might restrain him*. 6. 252, b. 7. *youth*, nom.

ITS MIDDLE AGE

383. Postea in Sicilia¹ contra Poenos² pugnatum est,³ qui illō tempore eius insulae partem obtinebant. Brevi⁴ tamen populus Rōmānus multās nāvēs novās aedificāverat, quibus cum Poenis pugnarent.⁵ Ita incēperunt illa tria bella quae ā Rōmānīs cum Poenis gesta sunt. His bellis Rōmānī finēs imperī prōpāgābant⁶ trāns mare medium.⁷ Bellō Pūnicō⁸ secundō cum Hannibale⁹ pugnāverunt. Hic Poenōrum dux ab Africā cum magnō exercitū multisque impedimentis profectus est. In Hispāniā¹⁰ pervēnit. Ex Hispāniā iter per montēs altōs flūminaque lāta in Ītaliā fēcit. Quindecim ferē annōs¹¹ Ītaliā vexāvit. Tandem victus est. Postea Rōmānī multa bella alia exteris¹² cum gentibus gessērunt. Quōrum¹³ nōn minimum¹⁴ fuit id bellum quō Caesar Galliam superāvit. Haec aetās¹⁵ fuit media populī Rōmānī, quā aetate¹⁶ Rōma orbem terrarum subēgit.

NOTES: 1. 79, Note. 2. *Poenī, -ōrum*, M. pl., *Carthaginians*. 3. 245, Note. 4. Supply *tempore*. 5. For the translation of this clause, see 367, I, 3. 6. *began to extend* (*finēs, boundaries*). 7. *middle*, hence *mare medium, Mediterranean Sea*. 8. *Pūnicus, -a, -um, Punic* (*i.e. Carthaginian*). 9. *Hannibal*, abl. 10. For meaning, see 79, I, last sentence. 11. 203. 12. *foreign*, abl. 13. Compare 382, Note 3, above. 14. 242. 15. See 381, Note 2, above. 16. 204.

CHAPTER 52

INDICATIVE PASSIVE

384.

PASSIVE VOICE

INDICATIVE MOOD (Present System)

I

II

III

IV

PRESENT

I am (being) prepared, advised, ruled, taken, heard

par-or	mone-or	reg-or	capi-or	audi-or
parā-ris	monē-ris	rege-ris	cape-ris	audi-ris
parā-tur	monē-tur	regi-tur	capi-tur	audi-tur
parā-mur	monē-mur	regi-mur	capi-mur	audi-mur
parā-mini	monē-mini	regi-mini	capi-mini	audi-mini
para-ntur	mone-ntur	regu-ntur	capi-u-ntur	audi-u-ntur

IMPERFECT

I was (being) prepared, advised, ruled, taken, heard

parāba-r	monēba-r	regēba-r	capiēba-r	audiēba-r
parābā-ris	monēbā-ris	regēbā-ris	capiēbā-ris	audiēbā-ris
parābā-tur	monēbā-tur	regēbā-tur	capiēbā-tur	audiēbā-tur
parābā-mur	monēbā-mur	regēbā-mur	capiēbā-mur	audiēbā-mur
parābā-mini	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.
parāba-ntur				

FUTURE

I shall be prepared, advised, ruled, taken, heard

parāb-or	monēb-or	rega-r	capia-r	audia-r
parābe-ris	monēbe-ris	regē-ris	capiē-ris	audiē-ris
parābi-tur	etc.	regē-tur	capiē-tur	audiē-tur
parābi-mur		regē-mur	capiē-mur	etc.
parābi-mini		regē-mini	etc.	
parābu-ntur		rege-ntur		

385. **Passive Personal Endings.** The above tenses of the indicative *passive* are, with the exceptions noted below (386),

exactly like the corresponding *active* forms with the substitution of the following *passive personal endings* for the active :

Singular, 1. -or or -r, <i>I</i>	Plural, 1. -mur, <i>we</i>
2. -ris (-re), <i>you</i>	2. -mini, <i>you</i>
3. -tur, <i>he, etc.</i>	3. -ntur, <i>they</i>

(a) In the second per. sing. -re, *you*, is sometimes used for -ris.

386. Peculiarities. Notice the following points, in which the passive forms in the *second person singular* differ from the active (320):

Future (Conjs. I and II), *be* instead of *bi* (parā-be-ris, monē-be-ris)
Present (Conj. III), *e* instead of *i* (rege-ris, cape-ris)

387. PASSIVE VOICE. — Continued

INDICATIVE MOOD (Perfect System)

	PERFECT	PLUPERFECT	FUTURE PERFECT
	<i>I have been or was prepared</i>	<i>I had been prepared</i>	<i>I shall have been prepared</i>
I.	parātus sum parātus es parātus est parāti sumus parāti estis parāti sunt	parātus eram parātus erās parātus erat parāti erāmus parāti erātis parāti erant	parātus erō parātus eris parātus erit parāti erimus parāti eritis parāti erunt
II.	monitus sum	monitus eram	monitus erō
III.	{ rēctus sum captus sum	{ rēctus eram captus eram	{ rēctus erō captus erō
IV.	audītus sum	audītus eram	audītus erō

388. EXERCISE

Belgae, -ārum, *M. pl.*, Belgians Rhēnus, -ī, *M.*, the Rhine (*river*)
Oceanus, -ī, *M.*, Ocean (*the Atlantic*)

contineō, -ēre, continui, contentum (con- + teneō), keep, bound (*in
geography*)

effeminō, -āre, *etc.*, enervate, make effeminate

importō, -āre, *etc.*, carry in, import

I. Make a synopsis in the second person plural of *portō*, *I carry* (I), *iubeō* (II), *mittō* (III), *accipiō* (III), and *mūniō* (IV) for the indicative passive (384, 387).

II. 1. *Parāta est, parāta sunt.* 2. *Monitum est, monitae erant.* 3. *Rēcti sunt, rēcti erunt.* 4. *Captus eris, capta eris.* 5. *Auditum erat, audita es.* 6. *Regēbāmur, capiēbāmini.* 7. *Regeris, regēris.* 8. *Monētur, regētur.* 9. *Regēmur, monēmur.* 10. *Parāberis, parābāris.* 11. I was (being) heard, I was heard. 12. We had been prepared, you (sing.) will be advised. 13. She is (being) ruled, she will be ruled. 14. They (fem.) have been taken, they (neut.) have been advised. 15. You (sing.) are (being) taken, you will be taken.

III. 1. *Omnium Gallōrum fortissimī sunt Belgae.* 2. *Ea (64) nōn important, quae animōs (character) effēminant.* 3. *Proximī sunt Germānis, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt.* 4. *Cum Germānis saepe bellum gerunt.* 5. *Helvētīi quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecedunt.* 6. *Maxima Galliae pars Garumnā flūmine et Ōceanō et finibus Belgārum continētur.*

CHAPTER 53

INFINITIVE AS SUBJECT, DIRECT QUESTIONS

389.

VOCABULARY

habit, institution, *īnstitūtum*, -ī, N. language, *lingua*, -ae, F.
merchant, trader, *mercātor*, -ōris, M.

extend, *pertineō*, -ēre, *pertinui*, — (per + *teneō*)

(a) Impersonal verbs (245, Note):

it is better, *praestat* (*praestō*, -āre, *praestiti*, *praestitum*, excel)

it is fitting, (one) ought, *oportet*, -ēre, *oportuit*

it is permitted, (one) may, *licet*, -ēre, *licuit* (with the dat. of the person permitted)

390. Infinitive as Subject. Study 630 and 631 with *a*. What is the *infinitive*? Its *gender*? What *cases* has it? How are the *other cases* supplied? Name *two uses* of the infinitive (630, 1 and

2). When the infinitive itself has a *subject*, in what *case* is it? Translate **Potiri est facile**, and explain the syntax of **potiri** (deponent) and **facile**. Translate **Rōmānōs potiri est facile**, and explain the syntax of **Rōmānōs**. What is the subject of **est** in the second example? Name *four verbs* that may have an infinitive as subject (631, a).

(a) It is often best to translate the accusative and infinitive in English by a *that*-clause. Thus: **Eum properāre praestat**, (him-to-hasten is better), *it is better that he should hasten*.

391.

EXERCISE

I. Point out all illustrations: 1. **Eum venire oportet**. 2. **Helvētiōs iter per prōvinciam facere praestat**. 3. **Sed id facere iis nōn licet**. 4. **Hanc legiōnem ad reliquās cōpiās properāre oportet**. 5. **Militēs oppidum dēfendere oportet**. 6. **Ducem cōpiās castris continēre praestat**.

II. 1. It is not permitted merchants to import many-things (64) into the country of the Belgians. 2. The Germans ought not to march into Gaul (= the G. to march, etc., is not fitting). 3. It is easier to say (**dīcere**) many-things (64) than to do [them].

392. Direct Questions. Study 594-598. What two kinds of *direct questions* are there in English? What is a *Yes-* or *No-question*? How is it indicated in *English*? How in *Latin*? Explain fully the use of **-ne**? of **nōnne**? of **num**? What is the usual *position* of these words in a sentence?

393.

EXERCISE

I. Tell the answer suggested by each question: 1. **Oportetne eum venire**? 2. **Nōnne lēgātum cōpiās in castra reducere oportet**? 3. **Num Galli cum nostris illō diē pugnāvērunt**? 4. **Nōnne iter per prōvinciam facere praestat**? 5. **Num nōbis hoc licēbit**? 6. **Multane (64) ā mercātōribus in prōvinciam nostram importāta sunt**? 7. **Num Caesar cōpiās suās castris continēbit**? 8. **Nōnne Rōmānōs Poenqrum (383, Note 2)**

ducem vincere praestitit? 9. Multane bella ā Rōmānīs extrā Ītaliā gesta sunt? 10. Nōnne nostrī tam fortiter pugnāvērunt, ut omnēs hostēs superāverint?

II. Unless the answer *No* is plainly suggested by the thought, use *-ne*, but questions containing the negative (*not*), of course, are introduced by *nōnne*: 1. Is it permitted an enemy to injure (278, 280) us? 2. Ought not these soldiers to fight for (*prō*) their wives and children? 3. Is it not better to fight than to flee? 4. Do the boundaries of the Gauls extend to the river Rhine? 5. Were consuls elected (*impf.*) after the expulsion of the kings (380, *a*)?

CHAPTER 54

SUBJUNCTIVE AND IMPERATIVE PASSIVE

394.

PASSIVE VOICE

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD (Present System)

I	II	III	IV
PRESENT			
pare-r	monea-r	rega-r	capia-r
parē-ris	moneā-ris	regā-ris	capiā-ris
parē-tur	moneā-tur	regā-tur	capiā-tur
parē-mur	moneā-mur	regā-mur	capiā-mur
parē-mini	moneā-mini	etc.	etc.
pare-ntur	monea-ntur		
IMPERFECT			
parāre-r	monēre-r	regere-r	capere-r
parārē-ris	monērē-ris	regerē-ris	caperē-ris
parārē-tur	monērē-tur	regerē-tur	caperē-tur
parārē-mur	monērē-mur	etc.	etc.
parārē-mini	monērē-mini		
parāre-ntur	monēre-ntur		

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD (Perfect System)

I	II	III	IV
PERFECT			
parātus sim	monitus sim	rēctus sim	captus sim
parātus sis	etc.	etc.	auditus sim
parātus sit			etc.
parāti simus			
parāti sitis			
parāti sint			
PLUPERFECT			
parātus	monitus	rēctus	captus
essem	essem	essem	essem
parātus essem	etc.	etc.	auditus
parātus esset			etc.
parāti essemus			
parāti essetis			
parāti essent			

(a) Review the *pass. personal endings* (385). Are they found in the *present system* above (394)? Are the *tense signs* of the pres. and imp. subj. the same in the passive (394) as in the active (334)? How are the tenses of the *perfect system* formed?

395.

PASSIVE VOICE

IMPERATIVE MOOD

I			
Pres. S. 2, parā-re, be (you) prepared			
P. 2, parā-mini, be (you) prepared			
Fut. S. 2, parā-tor, you shall be prepared			
3, parā-tor, he shall be prepared			
P. 2, (wanting)			
3, para-ntor, they shall be prepared			
II	III	IV	
Pres. S. 2, monē-re	rege-re	cape-re	audi-re
P. 2, monē-mini	regi-mini	capi-mini	audi-mini
Fut. S. 2, monē-tor	regi-tor	capi-tor	audi-tor
3, monē-tor	regi-tor	capi-tor	audi-tor
P. 2, (wanting)			
3, mone-ntor	regu-ntor	capi-untor	audi-untor

(a) *Parāre*, *monēre*, etc. of the pass. imperative are like what *active* form? Also *parāmini*, *monēmini*, etc., are like what other forms in the *passive*?

396.

EXERCISE

Haeduus, -a, -um, Haeduan; *pl. as* *mēns*, *mentis*, F., mind. *Compare*
noun, the Haeduans *animus*, spirit, disposition, character, courage

perturbō, -āre, etc., throw into confusion, disturb

I. Write the princ. parts of *nūntiō*, *videō*, *dūcō*, *suscipiō*, and *mūniō*; make a synopsis of each in the third person plural for the *passive subjunctive*; form the *passive imperatives* of *videō* with meanings.

II. 1. *Tantus subitō timor exercitum occupāvit, ut omnium mentēs animōsque perturbāret.* 2. *Haeduis imperāvit ut frūmentī cōpiam facerent* (here, *furnish*). 3. *Postulāvit nē bellum cum populī Rōmānī sociis gereretur.* 4. *Caesar ad eum lēgātōs mīsit, qui postulārent* (365) *ut obsidēs ab eō statim darentur.* 5. *Ipse, cum locus castris idōneus dēlectus esset, omnibus copiis profectus est.* 6. *Imperābit ut pars huius legiōnis praesidiō oppidō relinqūatur.*

III. 1. That they may not be thrown into confusion (purpose). 2. So that he was not seen (result). 3. When the camp had been fortified (*cum* circumstantial). 4. Since the troops have been led (*cum* causal). 5. Although this had not been reported (*cum* concessive).

CHAPTER 55

INDIRECT QUESTIONS, SEQUENCE OF TENSES

397. Indirect questions are *substantive clauses* (352). When a *direct* question (as *Who is he?*) becomes the subject or the object of a verb like *ask*, *tell*, *know*, etc., it is called an *indirect* question. Thus, *I know who he is*, in which the clause *who he*

is is the object of the word *know*, and is therefore an indirect question. Point out the *direct and indirect questions* in the following :

1. Where is he ? 2. You ask where he is. 3. They told me where he was. 4. Let me know whether you are coming. 5. Are you coming ? 6. Do not tell how this happened. 7. Did you ask me what I like ? (The last sentence contains both kinds of questions.)

398. Three points to be considered in indirect questions are the *introducing words*, the *mood*, and the *tenses* to be used. Thus :

I. Indirect questions are *introduced* by interrogative words, such as *who, quis ? what, quid ? where, ubi ?* etc., and also by the interrogative particles *num* and *-ne*, both meaning *whether*. (*Num* here does not suggest the answer *No*, as it does in direct questions, 392.)

II. The *mood* of indirect questions is the *subjunctive*, which is translated, however, as the indicative. Thus: Direct, *Who is he, quis est ?* Indirect, *I know who he is, sciō quis sit* (subj.).

III. The *tenses* used in indirect questions follow a law to be explained in the following paragraph.

399. Sequence of Tenses. Study 605-608 with *a* and *b*. Which tenses of the *indicative* are *primary*? which *secondary*? Which tenses of the *subjunctive* are *primary*? which *secondary*? From what Latin word is "sequence" derived? Illustrate its meaning with an English sentence. State the *law of sequence* in Latin (608). With the table (608, *a*) before you, decide what *tense* of the *subjunctive* would be used in each dependent clause below :

I know (to-day) where he is (to-day).

I knew (yesterday) where he was (yesterday).

I knew (yesterday) where he had been (day before yesterday).

I know (to-day) where he was (yesterday).

(*a*) The above points may be seen at a glance from the following scheme :

PRINCIPAL VERB	SUBJUNCTIVE	
	(<i>same time</i>)	(<i>prior time</i>)
PRIMARY (pres., fut., fut. perf.)	Present	Perfect
SECONDARY (impf., perf., plup.)	Imperfect	Pluperfect

400.

EXERCISE

how great, **quantus**, -a, -um
scout, **explōrātor**, -ōris, m.
why, **cūr**, *adv. and conj.*

whether, **num** or **-ne** (398, I)
whither, (where, *of place to which*)
quō, *adv. and conj.*

ask, **rogō**, -āre, *etc.*

know, **sciō**, -īre, **scīvī**, **scītum**

say, tell, **dīcō**, -ere, **dīxī**, **dictum**

I. 1. **Sciō** quid **dīcat**. 2. **Sciō** quid **dixerit**. 3. **Scīvī** quid **diceret**. 4. **Rogat** num **Helvētīi** iter per **prōvinciam** **faciant**. 5. **Rogāvit** **cūr** hoc **fēcissēs**. 6. **Nōnne** **rogābit** num hoc **facere** liceat (389, a)? 7. Per **explōrātōrēs** certior factus est, **quās** in **partēs** (*direction*) **hostēs** **fugerent**. 8. **Caesar** **rogat** **cūr** **frūmen-**
tum **nōn** **mittant**. 9. **Scīvīt** **quantō** in **periculō** **exercitus** **esset**. 10. **Explōrātōrēs** **Caesarem** certīorem **fēcērunt** **quantae** **civī-**
tātēs in **armīs** **essent**. 11. **Rogāvērunt** **quot** **hostēs** **essent**. 12. **Nōnne** **nūntius** **dixit** **quō** **Gallī** iter **facerent**?

II. Decide first whether the principal verb (*know, ask, etc.*) is *primary* or *secondary*, then follow the directions given in the scheme above (399, a): 1. I know who you are. 2. We know why you came. 3. He asked where (= whither) the enemy had marched. 4. They will know in what direction (see I, 7) the Helvetians are fleeing. 5. Our men did not give (use **faciō**) the enemy an opportunity (363) of finding out (gerund) what they were doing. 6. Caesar was not able (184, a) to discover (**reperiō**, -īre) how great the size of Britain was. 7. Do you not know how many horsemen there are in the camp? 8. They asked whether it were better (389, a) to defend the city. 9. They informed him why the scouts had not been sent forward. 10. The soldiers are discovering (see sent. 6) in how great peril (= danger) the camp is. 11. He sent horsemen to find out (365) where (not **quō**) the enemy were.

401. Word Studies. **Commeō**, **cultus**, **hūmānitās**, **inīitium**, **neque** (*nec*).

402. INTRODUCTION TO CAESAR'S GALLIC WAR

1. **The Gauls** from early times had been enemies to Rome. They were a barbarous people, living in the country now called France with much other territory northeast, east, and southeast of France. Before the Roman conquest even of central Italy, the Gauls had begun to cross the Alps and settle in northern Italy. Their growing numbers began to threaten the neighbors of Rome to the north. A Roman army went out to meet them, and suffered a terrible defeat. Onward the Gauls swept down to the city of Rome itself. They captured the city, plundered it, and burned it to the ground. The Romans never forgot this disastrous conflict nor the humiliation it brought upon them. Many, many years afterwards a Roman orator said in the senate that since the foundation of Rome the enemies most to be dreaded by the Romans had ever been the Gauls.

2. **The Province.** For a hundred years after the Gauls left the city, the Romans had battles with them from time to time. Sometimes other nations, jealous of the growth of Rome, combined their forces to conquer her. In the end Rome always got the better of them, until finally she had conquered the whole of Italy. Then she began to conquer lands *outside of Italy*. Territory thus conquered and ruled by a Roman governor was called a *province*. The term *prōvincia*, however, as used in reading lessons to follow, applies especially to a particular province, the land now called Provence in southeastern France. Having been in Roman possession for about sixty years, it was now thoroughly "Romanized"; that is, had adopted Roman customs and modes of living. In the first sentence of 405, below, we read of its *cultus atque hūmānitās* (*civilization and refinement*).

3. **The Helvetians.** About the year 60 B.C. certain kinsmen of the Gauls, the *Helvetians*, living in the western part of modern Switzerland, felt that they had outgrown their little country, and, being also hard-pressed by their German neighbors, decided to emigrate westward in a body. The movement was delayed for two years on account of the treason of their leader, *Orget'orix*. It was only delayed, however. For the next two years they made every preparation to emigrate in earnest. To the Roman imagination this meant trouble. If the Helvetians left their country, it would be occupied by the Germans, who were quite as formidable to the Romans as the Gauls. Moreover, the Helvetians, when once started in their quest of new homes, might settle in the Province, or even in Italy itself. Is it strange that the Romans felt alarmed?

4. **Caius Julius Caesar** (102-44 B.C.) is the greatest name in Roman history. Caesar was great because he never failed. A man of marvellous gifts of mind and character, and with boundless ambition, he could not but be a great leader of men. After holding various offices, he combined with two other powerful men to form a ring, known as the First Triumvirate (from *trēs viri*). These three men then controlled the political world. Caesar was elected consul for the year 59 B.C. The consuls at the close of their terms (one year) were sent out as governors of the various provinces for *another year*. Caesar, however, through the influence of his ring, was appointed governor for a period of *five years*, which was later extended to *ten years*. His government included the Province in Gaul. Thus it happened that when he began his career as governor in Gaul, he had to deal with the Helvetians, who were beginning to move westward. He had an army of about 20,000 men; the Helvetians, including men, women, and children, numbered 368,000, about a fourth of whom consisted of fighting men. How he defeated the plans of the Helvetians will be learned in the following lessons.

5. **The Commentaries.** Caesar wrote a history of his campaigns in Gaul, which he called Commentaries on the Gallic War. The word "commentaries" means *notes*, for he did not pretend that his book was more than a series of notes and sketches which he had made about his nine years of warfare in Gaul. The book is nevertheless of great historical value, for it gives us the beginnings of the history of the great nations of western Europe.

CHAPTER 56

READING LESSON

403.

VOCABULARY

Aquitānia , -ae, F., Aquitania	Pŷrēnaeus , -a, -um, Pyrenaean;
Celtae , -ārum, M. <i>pl.</i> , Celts	Pŷrēnaei montēs , the Pyrenees
initium , initi , N., beginning; initium capere ā , to begin at	Mountains
Matrona , -ae, M., the Marne (<i>river</i>)	Rhodanus , -ī, M., the Rhone (<i>river</i>)
	Sēquana , -ae, M., the Seine (<i>river</i>)

(a) Note the following common phrases :

inter sē, one another, from one another, with one another, *etc.* (590)
quā dē causā (*from which cause*), for this reason

THE NATIONS OF GAUL

404. Gallia est omnis¹ divisa² in partēs trēs. Ūnam partem incolunt Belgae. Aliam partem incolunt Aquitānī. Tertiam partem incolunt Galli,³ qui ipsōrum⁴ linguā⁵ Celtae⁶ appellantur. Hī omnēs linguā, institūtis, lēgibus⁷ inter sē differunt.⁸ Garumna flūmen Gallōs ab Aquitānīs dividit. Matrona et Sēquana Gallōs ā Belgīs dividit.⁹

NOTES: 1. Trans. *as a whole*. 2. Participle used as adjective; hence *est* is translated *is*. 3. *Gauls*, in a narrow sense, or Celts, the largest division of the whole people. 4. *their own*, literally, *of themselves*. 5. Abl. of specification, *in*, etc.; so also in the next sentence *linguā, institūtis, lēgibus*. 6. Predicate noun. 7. *et, and*, is omitted between every pair of a series, or else repeated each time; supply *and* before *lēgibus*. 8. *differ*. 9. Singular verb because the two rivers are practically one.

WHY THE BELGIANS AND THE HELVETIANS ARE BRAVE

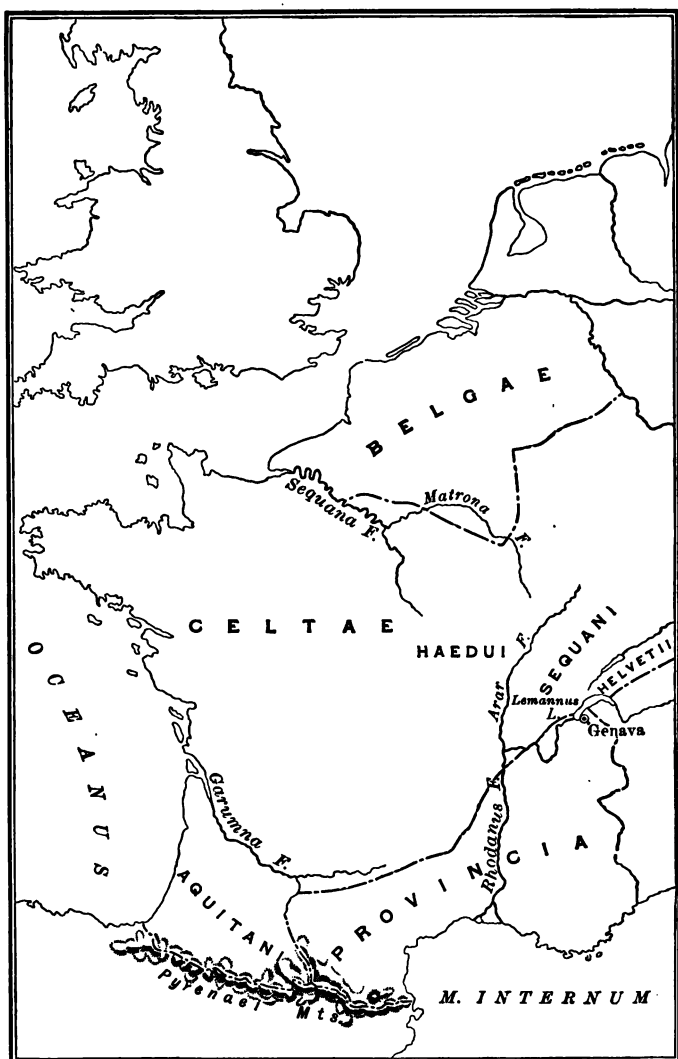
405. Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, nam ā cultū atque hūmānitāte prōvinciae longissimē¹ absunt.¹ Mercātōrēs ad eōs nōn saepe commeant, neque important ea² quae animōs effēminant. Proximī sunt Germānis, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum³ saepe bellum gerunt. Quā dē causā Helvētiū quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtūte⁴ praecēdunt, nam saepe cum Germānīs pugnant, cum aut suis finibus eōs prohibent aut ipsi in eōrum finibus bellum gerunt.

NOTES: 1. *are farthest away*. 2. Neut. acc. pl. of *is*, *ea*, *id* (64). 3. For meaning, see 283, *b*, end. 4. 404, Note 5.

THE BOUNDARIES OF EACH COUNTRY

406. Eōrum¹ ūna pars ā flūmine Rhodanō initium capit; continētur Garumnā flūmine, Oceanō, finibus² Belgārum; pertinet quoque ad flūmen Rhēnum. Belgae ab extrēmīs Galliae finibus initium capiunt; pertinent ad inferiōrem partem flūminis Rhēnī. Aquitānia ā Garumnā flūmine ad Pyrēnaeōs montēs pertinet.

NOTES: 1. *of them, i.e. of the Celts or their country*. 2. 404, Note 7.



GALLIA TRANSALPINA

CHAPTER 57

PASSIVE VOICE. — *Completed*

407.

PASSIVE VOICE

INFINITIVE MOOD

I	II	III	IV	
PRESENT				
parā-ri	monē-ri	reg-i	cap-i	audi-ri
<i>to be prepared, advised, ruled, taken, heard</i>				
PERFECT				
parātus esse	monitus esse	rēctus esse	captus esse	auditus esse
<i>to have been prepared, advised, ruled, taken, heard</i>				
FUTURE				
parātum iri	monitum iri	rēctum iri	captum iri	auditum iri
<i>to be going to be prepared, advised, ruled, taken, heard</i>				

PARTICIPLES

PERFECT				
parātus	monitus	rēctus	captus	auditus
-a, -um	-a, -um	-a, -um	-a, -um	-a, -um
<i>(having been) prepared, advised, ruled, taken, heard</i>				
GERUNDIVE				
para-ndus	mone-ndus	rege-ndus	capi-endus	audi-endus
-a, -um	-a, -um	-a, -um	-a, -um	-a, -um
<i>to be prepared, advised, ruled, taken, heard</i>				

408. Formations. The remaining parts of the *passive voice* (407) are formed as follows :

- A. INFINITIVES present. See 144, a, 2
 perfect = *perfect pass. participle* + *esse*
 future = *accusative supine* + *iri* (pass. of *ire*, to go)
- B. PARTICIPLES perfect = *fourth princ. part with endings -us, -a, -um*
 gerundive (also called *future pass. participle*) =
 present stem + *-ndus, -a, -um*, or (all
 -iō verbs), *-endus, -a, -um*

409.

EXERCISE

coniūrātiō, -ōnis, F., conspiracy
lacus, -ūs, M., lake

Lemannus, -ī, M., Leman or Lake
Geneva

nōbilitās, -tātis, F., nobility, nobles

ēripiō, -ere, ēripui, ēreptum, snatch away, seize; sē ēripere, to escape
indūcō, -ere, indūxi, inductum (in + dūcō), prompt, induce

I. Form the *passive infinitives* and *participles* with meanings of cōfirmō, obtineō, indūcō, ēripiō, and impediō.

II. Review 132. 1. Captus esse; oppidum captum esse dicitur. 2. Captum iri; urbs captum iri dicēbatur.¹ 3. Laudāri: laudāri² est grātum. 4. Monita; puella monita sē bene gessit (*conducted*). 5. Parandus; boni (64) laudandi² sunt. 6. Rēctus esse; patria nostra optimē rēcta esse dicitur. 7. Superātus; hostēs superāti fūgerunt. 8. Interfectus; hostis interfectus armīs spoliātus (= privātus) est.

III. 1. To be ruled (inf.). 2. To have been taken. 3. Having been heard. 4. To be hurled (gerundive of mittō). 5. Javelins were to be hurled (see phrase 4). 6. Having been taken; the two towns, having been taken, were destroyed (dēleō). 7. To be seized (say in two ways).

IV. 1. Rēgni cupiditāte inductus³ coniūratiōnem nōbilitātis fēcit (*formed*). 2. Ab Helvētiis captus in vincula coniectus est. 3. Prōvincia ab Helvētiis flūmine Rhodanō et lacū Lemannō divisa esse dicitur. 4. Hāc orātiōne (*speech*, abl.) adducti ad Caesarem obsidēs statim misērunt. 5. Caesaris orātiōne (see sent. 4) adductus haec (*as follows*) dixit. 6. Castra fossā decem pedum mūniri iussit.

¹ Give the literal version first, then trans. *It was said that the city was going*, etc. The fut. pass. infinitive, however, is rarely used.

² For the difference between *laudāri* and *laudandus*, review 13.

³ Participles are usually *preceded by their modifiers*. In translation, the participle is somewhat like a mark of punctuation, reminding us to stop, and take in the preceding modifiers. Thus, in sentence 1, *of royal-power by the desire having been prompted* = (*having been*) *prompted by the desire*, etc.

410. EIGHTH REVIEW (380-409)

I. Inflection. Synopsis of the *passive voice* in all conjugations:

PASSIVE VOICE

INDICATIVE MOOD

PRESENT SYSTEM

	I	II	III	IV	
Pres.	paror	moneor	regor	capior	audior
Impf.	parābar	monēbar	regēbar	capiēbar	audiēbar
Fut.	parābor	monēbor	regar	capiar	audiar

PERFECT SYSTEM

Perf.	parātus	(monitus, rēctus, captus, auditus)	sum
Plup.	parātus	(monitus, rēctus, captus, auditus)	eram
F. Pf.	parātus	(monitus, rēctus, captus, auditus)	erō

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

PRESENT SYSTEM

Pres.	parer	monear	regar	capiar	audiar
Impf.	parārer	monērer	regerer	caperer	audīrer

PERFECT SYSTEM

Perf.	parātus	(monitus, rēctus, captus, auditus)	sim
Plup.	parātus	(monitus, rēctus, captus, auditus)	essem

IMPERATIVE MOOD

Pres.	parāre	monēre	regere	capere	audire
Fut.	parātor	monētor	regitor	capior	auditor

INFINITIVE MOOD

Pres.	parāri	monēri	regi	capi	audiri
Perf.	parātus	(monitus,	rēctus,	captus,	auditus) esse
Fut.	parātum	(monitum,	rēctum,	captum,	auditum) iri

PARTICIPLES

Perf.	parātus	monitus	rēctus	captus	auditus
	-a, -um	-a, -um	-a, -um	-a, -um	-a, -um
G'dive	parandus	monendus	regendus	capendus	audiendus
	-a, -um	-a, -um	-a, -um	-a, -um	-a, -um

II. **Syntax.** 1. Give an illustration of the *infinitive* used as *subject*. 2. In what case is the *subject* of the infinitive itself? 3. Name *four verbs* that may have an infinitive as subject. 4. Tell two kinds of *direct questions*. 5. How are *Yes-* and *No-*questions introduced? 6. Give the *answer* suggested by each of these words, and their usual *position* in the sentence. 7. Think of a *direct question*, and show how to make it an *indirect question*. 8. What *three points* are to be considered in indirect questions? 9. What words *introduce* indirect questions? 10. What is the *mood*? 11. Name the law that determines the *tenses* to be used; *state* the law.

III. Vocabulary.¹

(coniūratiō²), 378. contineō, 379. cūr, 380. dīcō, (ēripiō,³ sē ēri-
pere), 381. explorātor, 382. indūcō, 383. initium (initium capere
ā), 384. institūtum, (inter sē), 385. lacus, 386. licet, 387. lingua,
388. mercātor, 389. neque *or* nec, 390. nōbilitās, 391. oportet,
392. pertineō, 393. perturbō, 394. praestō (praestat), (quā dē
causā), 395. quantus, 396. quō, 397. rogō, 398. sciō.

CHAPTER 58

DATIVE WITH COMPOUND VERBS

411.

VOCABULARY

early, *mātūrē, adv.*

especially, very greatly, *maximē,*
superl. of magnopere (258)

face to face, facing, opposite, *adver-*
sus, -a, -um

fleet, *classis, classis, f.*

winter-quarters, *hiberna, -ōrum, n. pl.*

fortification, *mūnitiō, -ōnis, f.*

greatly, much; *multum, neut. acc.*
sing. of multus, used as adverb

Labienus, *Labienus, -i, m., a promi-*
nent officer in Caesar's army

speed, quickness, *celeritās, -tātis, f.*

approach, *appropinquō, -āre, etc. (ad + propinquō, I draw near)*

be at the head of, *praesum, -ere, praeesse, praefui, praefuturus (prae + sum)*
excel, *praestō, 389, a*

¹ See the footnote to 67, IV.

² Not in the Lodge list, but required in the next reading lesson.

³ This verb, though properly classified with intrans. verbs (280), is put here for convenience.

⁴ *Praesum* is conjugated exactly like *sum* with the prefix *prae*.

meet, encounter, **occurrō, -ere, occurri, occursum** (ob, against + **currō, I run**)

put at the head of, **praeficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum** (**prae + faciō**)
trust, rely on, **cōfidō,¹ -ere, cōfīsus sum²** (con- + **fidō, I trust**)

412. Dative with Compound Verbs. Study 539, III, and 540. State the rule (III), and illustrate it with the sentence, *They surpass all*. If a *transitive* verb is compounded with one of these prefixes, what *cases* may the compound take (540)? Illustrate with the Latin for *He put the lieutenant in charge of the camp*.

(a) While *many* of the compound verbs referred to in 412 take the dative, there are some verbs so compounded that do not. The best course to pursue is to notice carefully the verbs as they occur in your reading. As a fairly safe rule, it may be said that if the preposition changes the *meaning* of the simple verb, the compound takes the *dative*. Thus, **stō** means *I stand*, but **praestō, I excel**; hence the *dative*. But **mittō** means *I send*, and **praemittō, I send forward**; hence the *accusative*. In **praestō** the *preposition* and in **praemittō** the *verb* is the prominent part of the compound.

413. I. Point out every illustration : 1. Brevi tempore hostium castris appropinquābant. 2. Labiēnus huic legiōni praefuit, alter legātus illi. 3. Eōdem diē equitēs adversis hostibus occurrunt. 4. Caesar legiōni decimae maximē cōfidēbat. 5. Caesarī (325) erant decem lēgātī, ē quibus (533, a) ūnum hibernis praefecit. 6. Nostra classis hostium nāvibus celeritāte praestābit. 7. Caesar Britanniae appropinquābat, cum tempestās coorta est (*arose*). 8. Helvētīi, ut dēmōnstrātum est (207), reliquīs Gallis virtūte praestābant. 9. Caesar suis militibus maximē sed equitātui nōn multum cōfidēbat. 10. Eum lēgātum, cui maximē cōfidēbat, oppidō praefecit. 11. Amicī nōbīs ad oppidum venientibus (226, a) occurrunt. 12. Caesar, nē graviōri bellō occurreret (341), mātūrē ad exercitum profectus est. 13. Ei lēgātō, quī hibernis praefuerat, imperāvit ut in Galliam maximā celeritāte omnibus cōpiīs contenderet.

¹ See footnote 3 on preceding page.

² A few verbs have *active* forms in the *pres. system*, but *deponent* forms (146) in the *perf. system*. They are called *semi-deponents*. The most common semi-deponent is **audeō, audēre, ausus sum, dare**.

II. 1. They met the enemy face to face. 2. We were already (*iam*) approaching the enemy's territory. 3. Who will-be-at-the-head-of the fleet? 4. Caesar put Labienus in-charge-of (at the head of) the fortification. 5. He had the utmost confidence in (trusted especially) his very brave soldiers. 6. The enemy, in order not to meet (341) our men face to face, immediately fled to the river. 7. Did not the Romans excel all their enemies in courage? 8. Whom will the general place-in-charge-of the cavalry? 9. He sent one of (see I, 5) the lieutenants to be-in-charge-of (365) the city.

CHAPTER 59

DEPONENT VERBS

414. Principal parts. What are *deponent* verbs (146) ?

- I. hortor, hortārī, hortātus sum, *urge, encourage* (245)
 II. vereor, verērī, veritus sum, *fear* (146)
 III. } sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, *follow* (146)
 } ēgredior, ēgredī, ēgressus sum, *go out*
 IV. potior, potīrī potītus sum, *gain possession*

415.

PARADIGMS

INDICATIVE MOOD

	I	II	III	IV
Pres.	hortor hortārīs hortātur etc.	vereor verērīs verētur etc.	sequor sequerīs sequitur etc.	ēgredior ēgrederīs ēgreditur etc.
Impf.	hortābar	verēbar	sequēbar	ēgrediēbar
Fut.	hortābor hortāberīs hortābitur etc.	verēbor verēberīs verēbitur etc.	sequar sequērīs sequētur etc.	potiār potiērīs potiētur etc.

INDICATIVE MOOD.— *Continued*

	I	II		III	IV
Perf.	hortātus sum	veritus sum	secūtus sum	ēgressus sum	potītus sum
Plup.	hortātus eram	veritus eram	secūtus eram	ēgressus eram	potītus eram
F. Pf.	hortātus erō	veritus erō	secūtus erō	ēgressus erō	potītus erō

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

Pres.	horter hortēris hortētur etc.	verear verēaris verēatur etc.	sequar sequāris sequātur etc.	ēgrediar ēgrediāris ēgrediātur etc.	potiar potiāris potiātur etc.
Impf.	hortārer	verērer	sequerer	ēgrederer	potirer
Perf.	hortātus sim	veritus sim	secūtus sim	ēgressus sim	potītus sim
Plup.	hortātus essem	veritus essem	secūtus essem	ēgressus essem	potītus essem

IMPERATIVE MOOD

Pres.	hortāre hortāmini	verēre verēmini	sequere sequimini	ēgredere ēgredimini	potire potimini
Fut.	hortātor hortantor	verētor verentor	sequitor sequuntor	ēgreditor ēgrediuntor	potitor potiuntor

INFINITIVE MOOD

Pres.	hortāri	verēri	sequi	ēgredi	potiri
Perf.	hortātus esse	veritus esse	secūtus esse	ēgressus esse	potītus esse
Fut.	hortātūrus esse	veritūrus esse	secūtūrus esse	ēgressūrus esse	potitūrus esse

PARTICIPLES

Pres.	hortāns	verēns	sequēns	ēgrediēns	potiēns
Fut.	hortātūrus	veritūrus	secūtūrus	ēgressūrus	potitūrus
Perf.	hortātus	veritus	secūtus	ēgressus	potītus
G'dive	hortandus	verendus	sequendus	ēgrediendus	potiendus

GERUND

	I	II	III	IV	
Gen.	hortandi	verendi	sequendi	egrediendi	potiendi
Dat.	hortandō	verendō	sequendō	egrediendō	potiendō
	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.

SUPINE

Acc.	hortātum	veritum	secūtum	egressum	potitum
Abl.	hortātū	veritū	secūtū	egressū	potitū

(a) Deponents have *five active forms*: fut. inf. *hortātūrus esse*, pres. and fut. part. *hortāns* and *hortātūrus*, gerund *hortandi*, etc., and supines *hortātum*, *hortatū*.

(b) Deponents have one form with the *passive meaning*: gerundive *hortandus*, *to be urged*.

(c) In the second per. sing. throughout, deponents, like passive verbs, sometimes have the personal ending *-re* for *-ris* (385, a)

416.

EXERCISE

propter, *prep. with acc.*, on account of *trīdium*, -ī, N., (a period of) three days

- I. *cōnor*, -ārī, *cōnātus sum* (146)
moror, -ārī, *morātus sum*, linger, stop
praedor, -ārī, *praedātus sum*, plunder
- II. *polliceor*, -ērī, *pollicitus sum*, promise
videor, -ērī, *vīsus sum*, (1) seem; (2) be seen (*pass.*)

I. 1. *Hortāmur*, *hortātus*, *hortāre*. 2. *Verērī*, *verēbiminī*, *verēbāminī*. 3. *Sequendus*, *sequendi*, *sequētur*. 4. *Ēgressus*, *ēgressus esse*, *ēgrediēns*. 5. *Potiēre* (415, c), *potimur*, *potiti erant*. 6. *Ut hortētur* (purpose). 7. *Ut hortētur* (result). 8. *Nē verērentur* (neg. purpose). 9. *Ut nōn potirentur* (neg. result). 10. *Cum secūtī essent* (*cum* causal). 11. *Cum ēgrederētur* (concessive). 12. *Eōs hortātus est ut sequerentur* (subst. clause of purpose). 13. He will urge, they urged. 14. They fear, they will fear. 15. They follow, they were following. 16. Go out, to have gone out. 17. Of gaining possession, having gained possession (nom. mas. pl.).

II. 1. Cōnandī, cōnandī causā (114). 2. E castris ēgressi erant. 3. Pauci praedandī causā (see sent. 1) ex castris ēgredientur. 4. Propter vulnera militum triduum morātī sunt. 5. Quā dē causā (403, a) nostrī hostēs nōn secūtī sunt. 6. Profectiō (*departure*) eōrum fugae simillima vidēbatur. 7. Equitēs, qui in colle morābantur, ā nostris visī sunt. 8. Haedui Caesari frūmentī cōpiam polliciti erant. 9. Hi militēs, praedandī causā ē castris ēgressi, cum respexissent (*looked back*), et hostēs in nostris castris esse (*to be*, trans. *were*) vidissent, statim fugae sēsē mandābant.

417.

EXERCISE 2

necessārius, -a, -um, needful, necessary novissimum agmen, rear of an army; *for agmen*, see 178

III. cōnsequor, cōnsequī, cōnsecūtus sum (con- + sequor), follow up, overtake

insequor, insequi, insecūtus sum (in + sequor), follow on, pursue

loquor, loqui, locūtus sum, speak, talk
patior, pati, passus sum, allow, suffer

IV. experior, experiri, expertus sum, 146
orior, oriri, ortus sum, arise
adorior, adoriri, adortus sum (ad + orior), attack

I. 1. Inter sē (403, a) loquuntur. 2. Equitēs hostēs fugientēs cōnsecūtī erant. 3. Dux militēs Helvētiōs impeditos (*when-hampered*) adoriri iussit. 4. Equitēs hostium ā nostris procul visī sunt. 5. Cum in castris triduum morātī essent, bellī fortunā experiri cōstituērunt. 6. Quārtā vigiliā ex castris ēgressi impetū (*vigor*) magnō hostēs adortī sunt. 7. Labiēnus rei militāris (266, 1, 9) peritissimus esse vidēbatur. 8. Reliquās cōpiās Helvētiōrum cōnsequi nōn poterant (184, a). 9. Cum omnia ad (*for*) iter necessāria comparāvisset, mātūrē profectus est. 10. Rhēnus oritur ex Lepontiis (*the Lepontii*), qui Alpēs (*the Alps*) incolunt, et multis capitibus (*here, mouths*) in Oceanum influit (*empties*). 11. Praestat hanc fortunā ā

(*from = at the hands of*) populō Rōmānō patī quam ā finitimīs interficī. 12. Nostri cupidius (*too eagerly*) novissimum agmen īsecūtī cum equitātū Helvētiōrum proelium committunt. 13. That they may follow up (purpose). 14. That he might not speak (neg. purpose). 15. So that they were not pursuing (neg. result). 16. Since he had attacked (*cum* causal). 17. He persuaded the lieutenant (280) to attack the camp (353).

CHAPTER 60

PARTICIPLES, ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

418. Participles. A review of the *participles* shows that there are only *four* in the two voices :

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

Pres., **parāns**, *preparing*

—

Fut., **parātūrus**, *going to prepare*

parandus, *to be prepared*

Perf., —

parātus, (*having been*) *prepared*

In this chapter we have to deal only with the *present* and *perfect* participles.

419. The Present Participle is *active*, and marks an action as going on at the *same time* as that of the main verb. Thus, **Miles prō patriā pugnāns occisus est**, *the soldier was slain (while in the act of) fighting for his country*.

(a) All *present* participles are declined like **parāns** (226).

420. The Perfect Participle is *passive*, and marks an action as *completed* before that of the main verb begins. Thus, **Miles occisus armīs spoliātus est**, *the soldier, having (first) been slain, was (then) stripped of his arms*. Here the soldier was slain (**occisus**) before he was stripped (**spoliātus**).

(a) All *perfect* participles are declined like **parātus**, -a, -um (213).

421. Practice. 1. Form the *present* participle of *occupō*, *videō*, *adducō*, *faciō*, *mūniō*. 2. Tell the *abl. sing.* and *pl.* of each participle. 3. Form the *perf. pass.* participle of the same verbs. 4. Tell the *abl. sing.* and *pl.* of each.

422. Translation of Participles. The participle, especially the *perf. pass. participle*, is far more common in Latin than in English. It is often best translated by a phrase or a relative clause (*who, which, that*) or by a clause beginning with a conjunction (*after, when, because, if, although, etc.*). In other words, *the Latin participle usually stands for a condensed clause.* The best translation in any given case must be determined by the sentence as a whole. Thus :

1. *Pugnantēs occisi sunt, they were slain fighting.* Here the *pres. part. pugnantēs* is best translated *while they were fighting* or simply *while fighting*. (Observe that it agrees with the subject *eī*, *they*, understood, nominative plural masculine.)

2. *Eum captum interficiē, they will kill him having-been-taken.* Here the *part. captum* is best translated *when or if he is taken*. (It agrees with the object *eum*, *him*, accusative singular masculine.)

3. *Legiōnī ibi relictæ præerat, he was-at-the-head-of the legion having-been-left there.* Clearly the *part. relictæ* is best translated here by a relative clause, *which had been left*. (It agrees with *legiōnī*, *legion*, dative singular feminine.)

423. In the above sentences the participle agrees with the *subject* (as in 1) or the *object* (as in 2) or with *some other case* in the sentence (as the *dative* in 3). Now examine another example :

4. *The camp having been fortified, he left a legion there.*

Here the *subject* of the sentence is *he* and the *object* is *legion*, while the participle (*having been fortified*) modifies neither of these but an entirely different word, *camp*, which is only loosely connected with the principal clause (*he left, etc.*). The question therefore arises, In what case must *camp* and its modifying participle be? The question is answered in the next paragraph.

424. Ablative Absolute. Study 565-568 carefully. Of what parts of speech does this construction consist? What does it *denote*? How can one tell whether it denotes in a particular sentence *time* or *cause* or some other circumstance? What is the equivalent construction in *English* called? Illustrate in *English*. Give several translations of the abl. absolute in *Urbe incensā, milites discesserunt*. What parts of speech, other than a noun and a participle, may be so used (566)? When is it *wrong* to use the ablative absolute (568)? What does "absolute" mean? Why may not the italicized words in "*When the city was captured, it was set afire,*" be in the ablative absolute? How would it be expressed in Latin?

425.**EXERCISE**

incola, -ae, M. or F., inhabitant *vallum*, -ī, N., rampart, earthworks
vivus, -a, -um, living, alive

incendō, -ere, *incendī*, *incensum*, set on fire
occidō, -ere, *occidī*, *occisum*, slay, kill

1. Apply the principles learned in this lesson to the italicized words: 1. *Oppidō captō*, incolae occisi sunt. 2. *Munitis* vallō fossaque *castris* duās ibi legiōnēs reliquit. 3. *Helvētī* his rēbus *adductī* cum proximis civitatibus pācem cōfirmant. 4. *Is* rēgnī cupiditāte *inductus* coniūratiōnem nobilitātis fecit. 5. Bellum cum Gallis nōn *nōbis vivis* gestum est. 6. *Vicō incensō* iter fecerunt. 7. *Occupātō* ā nostris *oppidō* multi incolārum occisi sunt. 8. *His rēbus cognitis* hostēs in itinere agmen nostrum adortī sunt. 9. *Hāc rē cōstitutā* nostrōs hostium novissimum agmen adoriri iussit. 10. *Caesar* tertiā vigiliā *profectus* ad oppidum brevī tempore pervēnit. 11. *Cōpiae* ex hibernis *egressae* impetum in Gallōs fecerunt. 12. *Equitēs* nostrī hostēs *cōsecutī* magnam partem eōrum occiderunt. 13. *Helvētī* per prōvinciam iter facere *cōnatī* ā Caesare prohibiti sunt. 14. *Haedui* Caesarī frūmenti cōpiam *polliciti* (trans. as if a *cum* concessive clause) nōn comportāverant (*comportāre*, to collect). 15. Ibi hostēs, *locis superiōribus occupātis*, itinere (327) exercitum prohibere cōnantur.

II. 1. *The soldiers [being] worn out* with wounds will not fight. 2. *The soldiers [being] worn out*, the general will not fight. 3. *[Since] few [were] defending* the town, they took it very easily. 4. *The few defending* the town were very brave. 5. *[After] a supply of grain [was] collected* (see I, 14), they set out. 6. This-thing (64) happened (was done) *[when] Caesar [was] consul*.

426. Perfect Active Participle. There is no *perfect active* participle in Latin (418), but in English there is one (*having prepared*, for example). Deponent verbs alone have a perfect participle with *active meaning*. Thus, *hortātus* (deponent), *having urged* (active), but *parātus* (not deponent), *having been prepared* (passive). How then are we to translate the English perfect active participle with a Latin verb that is not deponent? This is done by *changing the participial phrase to the passive form*, then translating by the *ablative absolute*. Thus, *having captured the town* (active) = *the town having been captured* (passive), *oppidō captō* (abl. abs.).

(a) In translating Latin into English, the reverse of the above process (426) is often followed. Thus, *Caesar, superātis hostibus, sē ad castra recēpit*, *having conquered the enemy, Caesar returned to the camp*.

427.

EXERCISE

Change from the *active* to the *passive* form, then translate into Latin according to 426: 1. The Romans, *having collected* (*comparāre*) *an army*, waged war with them. 2. *Having procured* (*comparāre*) *grain*, the army marched with great speed. 3. *Having done this*, Labienus sent a hundred horsemen ahead. 4. Our men, *having heard [of] this affair* (thing), returned immediately to winter-quarters. 5. The Aquitanians, *having made an attack* on our men, were overcome.

CHAPTER 61

READING LESSON

NOTE. In this and future reading lessons new words should be looked up in the general vocabulary at the end of the book.

ORGETORIX PERSUADES THE HELVETIANS TO EMIGRATE

428. Apud Helvētios longē nōbilissimus fuit Orgetorix. Is, rēgnī cupiditāte inductus, coniūratiōnem nōbilitātis fēcit. Cīvitātī persuāsit, ut patriam suam cum omnibus cōpiis relinquerent.¹ Undique locī nātūrā Helvētii continentur. Unā ex² parte est flūmen Rhēnus; alterā ex parte est Mōns Iūra; tertiā³ est lacus Lemannus et flūmen Rhodanus, quī prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētiis dividit. Itaque Orgetorix facile iis persuāsit.

NOTES: 1. Subjv. in a subst. cl. of purpose. 2. Trans. *on*. 3. Supply *ex parte*.

HIS AMBITIOUS SCHEME

429. Helvētii omnia ad¹ iter necessāria comparāre cōstituerunt. Ad¹ eās rēs duo annī satis esse vidēbantur. Itaque in¹ tertium annum profectiōnem² lēge cōfirmāverunt.² Interim Orgetorix sibi³ lēgatiōnem ad cīvitātēs finitimās suscepit.³ In eō itinere aliis persuāsit, ut rēgna in suis cīvitātibus occuparent.⁴ "Ego ipse," inquit, "meae cīvitātis imperium occupābō. Ita imperium totius Galliae obtinēbimus."

NOTES: 1. *for*. 2. *they fixed their departure*, meaning the time of departure. 3. *sibi . . . suscepit, took upon himself*. 4. Compare above, 428, Note 1.

HIS FAILURE AND DEATH

430. Ea rēs¹ est Helvētiis ēnūtiāta. Mōribus² suis³ Helvētii Orgetorigem ex vinculis causam dicere³ coēgērunt.⁴ Is autem per amicōs sē ēripuit. Ante iūdicium mortuus⁵ est, vel, ut⁶ Helvētii arbitrantur, sē ipse⁷ interfēcit.

NOTES: 1. *scheme*. 2. *According to their customs*. 3. *to plead*. 4. From *cōgō*. 5. From *morior*. 6. *ut* with the indicative does *not* mean "that" (617, a). 7. 586, a.

CHAPTER 62

ABLATIVE WITH *ŪTOR*, ETC., ACCUSATIVE SUPINE

431. VOCABULARY

home (homeward), 193, *a* return, reditiō, -ōnis, *f*.

come together, come, *conveniō*, -īre, *convēnī*, *conventum* (*con-* + *veniō*)

congratulate, *grātulor*, -āri, *grātulātus sum*

enjoy, *fruor*, *frui*, *fructus sum*

get possession of, 414

use, make use of, *ūtor*, *ūtī*, *ūsus sum*

432. Ablative with *ūtor*, etc. Study 562, *a*. What deponents take an *ablative of means* instead of a direct object? Say in Latin, *He uses his sword*.

433. Accusative Supine. What is the *supine*, and how is its *accusative* formed (361, *D* and 362)? Form the acc. supine of *rogō*, *videō*, *petō*, and *audiō*. Study 653, and say in Latin, *They send envoys to ask for aid*.

434. EXERCISE

I. Point out illustrations: 1. *Oppidum vīsum vēnērunt*. 2. *Castris hostium nocte potītī sumus*. 3. *Omnibus in vitā (life) rēbus frui vidēbātur*. 4. *Lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt rogātum auxilium*. 5. *Fīnitīmīs persuādent ut eōdem cōsiliō ūtantur*. 6. *Frūmentō ūtēmur quod Haedui polliciti sunt*. 7. *Bellō Helvētiōrum cōfectō* (424), *tōtius ferē Galliae lēgātī ad Caesarem grātulātum convēnērunt*. 8. *Facile est, cum (causal) virtūte omnibus praestētis, tōtius Galliae imperiō potīrī*.

II. 1. They will make-use-of their javelins. 2. Our men in a short time got-possession-of the enemy's baggage. 3. This nation (*gēns*) will not send envoys to seek peace. 4. Almost all the chief-men of this state came to him (not dat.) to congratulate [him]. 5. Since they excelled us (see I, 8) in these things (*rēs*), we sent envoys to demand (*postulō*) aid. 6. The same-persons (= men, 64) do not always (*semper*) enjoy the

same things (*rēs*). 7. Having discharged (*mittō*) their javelins (426), they used their swords.

435. Review 611, 612, 613, and 433 above. May a *noun alone* express purpose (543)? Point out all *purpose* expressions:

1. *Hīs persuādēre cōnātī sunt, ut per suōs finēs eōs ire pate-
rentur* (417). 2. *Hoc fēcērunt, nē domum reditiōnis spēs
esset*. 3. *Hostēs summā audaciā pugnāvērunt, nē oppidum
caperētur*. 4. *Equitēs praesidiō impedimentis erunt*. 5. *Nūn-
tium misērunt, quī ducem dē hīs rēbus certiōrem faceret*. 6. *In Galliam magnīs itineribus contendit, ut eōs prōvinciā
nostrā prohiberet*. 7. *Nostrī trīdium morātī sunt, ut auxiliō
oppidānis essent*. 8. *Ipse cum omni equitātū insecūtus est, ut
hostēs fugientēs occideret*. 9. *Caesar suis (64) imperāvit, nē
qua (297) tēla in (at) hostēs mitterent*. 10. *Eī (over him) cus-
tōdēs (guards) pōnit, ut quae agat (398, II) scire possit (374, a)*.

436. Derivatives: *dissimilar, sustain, impediment, paternal, expel, space, vex, commutation, course, contain, diction, nobility, pertain, induce, perturb, quantity, initial, institution, adverse, celerity, hibernate, prefect, egress, confide, predatory, consequent, patient, expert, orient, exhort, revere, sequence, incendiary*.

CHAPTER 63

PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS, DATIVE OF THE AGENT

437.

PARADIGM

INDICATIVE MOOD

Pres. *parātūrus sum, I am going or intend to prepare*
Impf. *parātūrus eram, I was going, etc., to prepare*
Fut. *parātūrus erō, I shall be going, etc., to prepare*
Perf. *parātūrus fui, I have been or was going, etc., to prepare*
Plup. *parātūrus eram, I had been going, etc., to prepare*
F. Pf. *parātūrus fuerō, I shall have been going, etc., to prepare*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

Pres. parātūrus sim	Perf. parātūrus fuerim
Impf. parātūrus essem	Plup. parātūrus fuisset

INFINITIVE MOOD

Pres. parātūrus esse, to be going, etc.	Perf. parātūrus fuisse, to have been going, etc.
--	---

438. Periphrastic Conjugations. "Periphrastic" means *in phrases*, and a *periphrastic conjugation* is one made up of verb-phrases. There are two such conjugations, called the *active* and the *passive* periphrastic conjugations:

(1) Active periphr. conj. = *future active participle* + **sum** (as in 437).

(2) Passive periphr. conj. = *future passive participle* (or *gerundive*) + **sum** (as in 440).

(a) The *active* forms denote *futurity* or *intention*; the *passive*, *duty* or *necessity*.

439.**EXERCISE**

mūniō, -īre, mūnīvī, mūnītum, 99	
perducō, -ere, perduxī, perductum (per + dūcō), lead through; construct (walls, etc.)	
portō, -āre, portāvī, portātum, carry	
respondeō, -ēre, respondi, respōnsum, reply	

I. How is the *future active participle* formed (361, B)? Form the fut. act. part. of the four verbs above.

II. 1. Portātūrus est, portātūrī erant. 2. Respōnsūrus erit, respōnsūra est. 3. Perductūrī fuērunt, perductūrus fuisti. 4. Mūnītūrus es, mūnītūrī erāmus. 5. Frūmentum sēcum portātūrī erant. 6. Mūrū perductūrus est. 7. Fossā castra mūnītūrī fuērunt. 8. Omnia sua (*their property*, 64) dē finibus suis portātūrī sunt. 9. Militēs ex hibernis ēgressūrī erant. 10. They are going-to-carry. 11. We intended-to-construct.

12. She was going-to-reply. 13. They had intended-to-fortify.
14. The cavalry were going-to-attack the rear of the enemy.
15. He intends-to-set-out for (ad) the winter-quarters. 16. Do
you (pl.) intend-to-reply?

PARADIGMS

Pres. **parandus** um, *I have or am to or must be prepared*
 Impf. **parandus** eram, *I had to be prepared*
 Fut. **parandus** erō, *I shall have to be prepared*
 Perf. **parandus** fui, *I (have) had to be prepared*
 Plup. **parandus** fueram, *I had had to be prepared*
 F. Pf. **parandus** fuerō, *I shall have had to be prepared*

Pres.	parandus sim	Perf.	parandus fuerim
Impf.	parandus essem	Plup.	parandus fuissem

Pres. **parandus esse**, *to have to be prepared* Perf. **parandus fuisse**, *to have had to be prepared*

EXERCISE

revocō, -āre, etc. (re- + vocō), recall, call back

- I. How is the *gerundive* or *fut. pass. participle* formed (408, B)? Form this part of the three verbs above and tell their meanings.

- II. 1. Portandus est, portandī sunt. 2. Respondendum est (compare **pugnātum** est, and translate, according to 245, Note,

an answer must be made), respondendum erit. 3. Perdūcendum erat, fossa perdūcenda erit. 4. Oppidum mūrō mūnīendum fuit. 5. Aciēs instruenda erat. 6. Sīgnum dandum erit. 7. Militēs revocandī fuērunt. 8. Multa agenda sunt. 9. Proelium cum hostibus committendum erit. 10. Ab opere revocandī erāmus. 11. He had to be carried. 12. Answer had to be made (see sent. 2). 13. The grain will have to be carried. 14. These two towns have had to be fortified. 15. The signal must be given with the trumpet. 16. Walls will have to be constructed.

442. Dative of the Agent. Study 542, state the rule, and give the Latin for, *I must do this*. Notice here the difference in voice: English, *active*; Latin, *passive*. Always turn the English into the passive form before translating into Latin, and remember that the Latin *agent* (English subject) is in the *dative*. Thus, English, *The general had to do all things* = Latin, *All-things had to be done by the general* (dative).

443.**EXERCISE**

I. 1. Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda. 2. Militēs ab opere eī (dat.) revocandī erunt. 3. Sīgnum tubā ūnī ex militibus (533, a) dandum erat. 4. Ii qui praedandī causā ex castris ēgressī sunt revocandī erunt. 5. Militēs praesidiō oppidō lēgātō relinquendī sunt. 6. Aciēs statim imperātōri instruenda fuit. 7. Iter sine impedimentis nōbīs faciendum est.

II. Where necessary, change the English from *active* to *passive* before translating (442): 1. The signal must be given by me. 2. We must construct two walls. 3. The soldiers will have to fortify the camp with rampart and ditch. 4. You (pl.) had to give the signal with the trumpet. 5. Grain had to be carried by the soldiers into the city. 6. He will have to carry on war with many enemies.

CHAPTER 64

IRREGULAR VERBS

444. Principal parts: **possum, posse, potui**, —, *be able, can*

445. PARADIGM

INDICATIVE MOOD

Pres. possum , <i>I can, am able</i>	Perf. potui , <i>I have been or was able</i>
potes	potuisti
potest	potuit
possumus	potuimus
potestis	potuistis
possunt	potuērunt or -ēre
Impf. poteram , <i>I could, was able</i>	Plup. potueram , <i>I had been able</i>
poterās , etc.	potuerās , etc.
Fut. poterō , <i>I shall be able</i>	F. Pf. potuerō , <i>I shall have been able</i>
poteris , etc.	

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

IMPERATIVE MOOD

Pres. possim	Perf. potuerim	(wanting)
possis	potueris	
etc.	etc.	
Impf. possem	Plup. potuissem	
possēs	potuissēs	
etc.	etc.	

INFINITIVE MOOD

PARTICIPLES

Pres. posse , <i>to be able</i>	Pres. potēns (adj.), <i>powerful</i>
Perf. potuisse , <i>to have been able</i>	

446. Compounds of **sum**. In its *présent* system **possum** is a compound of **pot-** (for **potis** or **pote**), *able*, + **sum**, *I am*. Notice that **pot-** becomes **pos-** before forms of **sum** beginning with **s**. In its *perfect* system the stem **potu-** (with the part. **potēns**) comes from an old verb now lost. The part. **potēns** is used only as an adjective, meaning *powerful*.

(a) Four other compounds of **sum** in common use are —

absum, **abesse**, **āfui**, **āfutūrus**, *be absent, distant*
dēsum, **deesse**, **dēfui**, **dēfutūrus**, *be wanting, fail*
praesum, **praesse**, **praefui**, **praefutūrus**, *be at the head of*
supersum, **superesse**, **superfui**, **superfutūrus**, *be (left) over, survive*

(b) The pres. parts. **absēns** (gen. **absentis**), *absent*, and **praesēns** (gen. **praesentis**), *present*, are used as adjectives.

447.

EXERCISE

malefīcium, **malefīci**, N., harm, **nihil**, N., *indeclinable*, nothing
 mischief **nōnnūllus**, -a, -um (*not none*),
nēmō, —,¹ M., nobody, no one some
multum (**plūs**, **plūrimum**) **posse**, to have much (more, most) power;
nihil posse, to be not at all strong. *Compare valeō*, 249.

I. 1. **Poterat**, **potuerat**. 2. **Poterit**, **potuerit**. 3. **Posse**, **potuisse**. 4. **Potuērunt**, **poterunt**. 5. **Potestis**, **potuistī**. 6. **Nē possit**, **ut nōn possit**. 7. **Cum possit** (causal), **cum posset** (concessive). 8. **Duo potentissimī rēgēs**. 9. **They can**, **they could**. 10. **We shall be able**, **she can**. 11. **They had been able**, **they have been able**. 12. **Of powerful kings**.

II. 1. **Sine ūllō** (214, a) **malefīciō iter per prōvinciam facere poterimus**. 2. **Tōtius Galliae plūrimum Helvētīi possunt**. 3. **Equitātū plūs poterant hostēs quam Caesar**. 4. **Tum equitātū nihil poterat**, **et frūmentum ei² deerat** (= **nōn erat**). 5. **Nihil frūmenti³ erat in oppidō**, **ut incolae id defendere nōn possent**. 6. **Nōnnūlli sunt**, **quōrum auctōritās apud populum plūrimum valet** (249), **quī prīvatim⁴ plūs possunt quam ipsī magistrātūs⁵**. 7. **Haedui**, **cum sē suaque ab hostibus dēfendere nōn possent**, **lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt rogātum⁶ auxilium**. 8. **Hōc proeliō factō⁷**, **ut reliquās cōpiās Helvētiōrum cōnsequi posset⁸**, **pontem in⁹ flūmine fēcit**.

NOTES: 1. **Nēmō** is a defective noun. Its gen. and abl. sing. are supplied by **nūllus** (214, a). Thus, nom. **nēmō**, gen. **nullius**, dat. **nēmini**, acc. **nēminem**, abl. **nūllō**. 2. Dat. of the possessor, **deerat** being the opposite of **erat**. 3. *Nothing of grain* (part. gen.) = *no grain*. 4. *as private citizens*. 5. *officials*. 6. Acc. supine. 7. **hōc proeliō factō**, abl. absolute. 8. Subjv. of purpose. 9. *over*.

448. Principal parts: **volō, velle, volui, be willing, wish**
nōlō, nōlle, nōlui, be unwilling, object
mālō, mälle, mālui, wish more, prefer

449. PARADIGMS

INDICATIVE MOOD

Pres. volō	nōlō	mālō
vis	nōn vis	māvis
vult	nōn vult	māvult
volumus	nōlumus	mālumus
vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis
volunt	nōlunt	mālunt
Impf. volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam
Fut. volam, -ēs, -et, etc.	nōlam	mālam
Perf. volui, -isti, -it, etc.	nōlui	mālui
Plup. volueram	nōlueram	mālueram
F. Pf. voluerō	nōluerō	māluerō

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

Pres. velim, -is, -it, etc.	nōlim	mālim
Impf. vellem, -ēs, -et, etc.	nōllem	māllem
Perf. voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim
Plup. voluissem	nōluissem	māluissem

IMPERATIVE MOOD

Pres. (wanting)	S. nōli , P. nōlite	(wanting)
Fut. (wanting)	S. nōlitō , P. nōlitōte nōlitō nōluntō	

INFINITIVE MOOD

Pres. velle	nōlle	mälle
Perf. voluisse	nōluisse	māluisse

PARTICIPLES

Pres. volēns	nōlēns	(wanting)
---------------------	---------------	-----------

(a) **Nōlō** and **mālō** are compounds of **volō**: **nōlō** = **nōn, not**, + **volō**, and **mālō** = **magis, more**, + **volō**.

450.

EXERCISE

Allobrogēs, -um, *m. pl.*, the Allobroges, a Gallic tribe in the north-eastern part of the province

Genava, -ae, *f.*, Geneva, capital of the Allobroges

omnīnō, *adv.*, altogether, in all

Sēquanī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Sequani, a Gallic tribe, rivals of the Haedui

supplicium, **supplicī**, *n.*, punishment, penalty

afficiō, -ere, **affēcī**, **affectum** (*ad*, to, + **faciō**, do), treat, visit

fluō, -ere, **fluxī**, **fluxum**, flow

remaneō, -ēre, **remānsī**, **remānsū** (*re*- + **maneō**), remain, remain behind

temperō, -āre, *etc.*, refrain (*with ab*, from, + *abl.*)

I. 1. Vult, nōn vīs, māvīs. 2. Volēbāmus, nōlēs, mālet. 3. Voluistī, māluit, nōluerātis. 4. Nolumus, māvultis, voluerat. 5. Vultis, nōlunt, mālētis. 6. Nē velit (*neg. purpose*), ut nōn mālīt (*neg. result*). 7. Cum vellet (*circumstantial*), cum mālūisset (*causal*). 8. Sciō quid mālīt (*ind. question*). 9. Rogāvit quid vellem. 10. They wish, he does not wish. 11. You (*sing.*) wish, you (*pl.*) wish. 12. He objects, you (*sing.*) have objected. 13. To prefer, to have wished. 14. Unwilling (*part.*), they had preferred.

II. 1. Rōmānōrum novissimum agmen adorīrī voluērunt. 2. Māvult bonus esse quam vidērī. 3. Ā maleficiō prōvinciae temperāre nōlunt. 4. Is quī omnibus placēre vult, nēminī placet. 5. Dumnorīx¹ Gallōrum quam² Rōmānōrum imperia māluit. 6. Labiēnum mūnitiōnī praeficere voluit. 7. Helvētīi nostrōs ā³ novissimō agmine īnsequī voluērunt. 8. Captīvōs gravissimō suppliciō afficere vult. 9. Belgae exercitum Rōmānum in Galliā inveterāscere⁴ nōluērunt. 10. Hic princeps apud finitimās civitatēs plūrimum posse volēbat. 11. Bonus vir virtūte omnibus praestāre quam cōsul esse māvult. 12. Germānī, supplicia Gallōrum veritī,⁵ apud⁶ Caesarem remanēre mālūērunt. 13. Cum locus pugnae idōneus esset, tamen nēmō ducem proelium cum hostibus committere voluit. 14. Diēbus omnīnō XVIII trāns Rhēnum cōsūmptis,⁷ sē in

Galliam recipere voluit. 15. Mōns, quem ā lēgātō occupāri vis, ab hostibus tenētur.

NOTES: 1. *Dumnorix*, a Haeduan. 2. *Quam*, *than*, with *mālō* may be trans. to. 3. *from (the side of)* = *in* or *on*. 4. *to establish itself* (*vetus*, old). 5. Perf. part. of *vereor*, but best trans. as present. 6. *with*. 7. With *diēbus* an abl. absolute, from *cōnsūmō*, *use up*, *spend*.

451. Principal parts: *ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, bear*.

452.

PARADIGMS

INDICATIVE MOOD

ACTIVE VOICE		PASSIVE VOICE	
Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.
Pres. <i>ferō</i>	<i>ferimus</i>	Pres. <i>feror</i>	<i>ferimur</i>
<i>fers</i>	<i>fertis</i>	<i>ferris</i>	<i>ferimini</i>
<i>fert</i>	<i>ferunt</i>	<i>fertur</i>	<i>feruntur</i>
Impf. <i>ferēbam</i>		Impf. <i>ferēbar</i>	
Fut. <i>feram, -ēs, -et, etc.</i>		Fut. <i>ferar, ferēris, ferētur, etc.</i>	
Perf. <i>tulī, -istī, -it, etc.</i>		Perf. <i>lātus sum, es, est, etc.</i>	
Plup. <i>tuleram</i>		Plup. <i>lātus eram, erās, etc.</i>	
F. Pf. <i>tulerō</i>		F. Pf. <i>lātus erō, eris, etc.</i>	

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

Pres. <i>feram, -ās, -at, etc.</i>	Pres. <i>ferar, -āris, -ātur, etc.</i>
Impf. <i>ferrem, -ēs, -et, etc.</i>	Impf. <i>ferrer, -ēris, -ētur, etc.</i>
Perf. <i>tulerim -is, -it, etc.</i>	Perf. <i>latus sim, sis, etc.</i>
Plup. <i>tulisse, -ēs, -et, etc.</i>	Plup. <i>latus essem, essēs, etc.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD

Pres. <i>fer</i>	<i>ferte</i>	Pres. <i>ferre</i>	<i>ferimini</i>
Fut. <i>fertō</i>	<i>fertōte</i>	Fut. <i>fertor</i>	—
<i>fertō</i>	<i>feruntō</i>	<i>fertor</i>	<i>feruntor</i>

INFINITIVE MOOD

Pres. <i>ferre</i>	Pres. <i>ferri</i>
Perf. <i>tulisse</i>	Perf. <i>lātus esse</i>
Fut. <i>lāturus esse</i>	Fut. <i>lātum iri</i>

CHAPTER 62

ABLATIVE WITH *ŪTOR*, ETC., ACCUSATIVE SUPINE

431.

VOCABULARY

home (homeward), 193, *a*return, reditiō, -ōnis, *f*.come together, come, *conveniō*, -īre, *convēnī*, *conventum* (*con-* + *veniō*)congratulate, *grātulor*, -ārī, *grātulātus sum*enjoy, *fruor*, *frui*, *fructus sum*

get possession of, 414

use, make use of, *utor*, *uti*, *usus sum*

432. Ablative with *utor*, etc. Study 562, *a*. What deponents take an *ablative of means* instead of a direct object? Say in Latin, *He uses his sword*.

433. Accusative Supine. What is the *supine*, and how is its *accusative* formed (361, *D* and 362)? Form the acc. supine of *rogō*, *videō*, *petō*, and *audiō*. Study 653, and say in Latin, *They send envoys to ask for aid*.

434.

EXERCISE

I. Point out illustrations: 1. *Oppidum vīsum vēnērunt*. 2. *Castris hostium nocte potīti sumus*. 3. *Omnibus in vitā (life) rēbus frui vidēbātur*. 4. *Lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt rogātum auxilium*. 5. *Finitimīs persuādent ut eōdem cōsiliō ūtantur*. 6. *Frūmentō ūtēmur quod Haedui polliciti sunt*. 7. *Bellō Helvētiōrum cōfectō* (424), *tōtius ferē Galliae lēgātī ad Caesarem grātulātum convēnērunt*. 8. *Facile est, cum (causal) virtūte omnibus praestētis, tōtius Galliae imperiō potiri*.

II. 1. They will make-use-of their javelins. 2. Our men in a short time got-possession-of the enemy's baggage. 3. This nation (*gēns*) will not send envoys to seek peace. 4. Almost all the chief-men of this state came to him (not dat.) to congratulate [him]. 5. Since they excelled us (see I, 8) in these things (*rēs*), we sent envoys to demand (*postulō*) aid. 6. The same-persons (= men, 64) do not always (*semper*) enjoy the

same things (*rēs*). 7. Having discharged (*mittō*) their javelins (426), they used their swords.

435. Review 611, 612, 613, and 433 above. May a *noun alone* express purpose (543)? Point out all *purpose* expressions:

1. His *persuādēre cōnātī sunt*, ut per suōs finēs eōs ire pate-
rentur (417). 2. Hoc *fēcērunt*, nē domum reditiōnis spēs
esset. 3. Hostēs summā audāciā pugnāvērunt, nē oppidum
caperētur. 4. Equitēs praesidiō impedimentis erunt. 5. Nū-
tium misērunt, quī ducem dē his rēbus certiōrem faceret.
6. In Galliam magnis itineribus contendit, ut eōs prōvinciā
nostrā prohiberet. 7. Nostrī triduum morātī sunt, ut auxiliō
oppidānis essent. 8. Ipse cum omnī equitātū insecūsus est, ut
hostēs fugientēs occideret. 9. Caesar suis (64) imperāvit, nē
qua (297) tēla in (*at*) hostēs mitterent. 10. Eī (*over him*) cus-
tōdēs (*guards*) pōnit, ut quae agat (398, II) scire possit (374, a).

436. Derivatives: *dissimilar, sustain, impediment, paternal, expel, space, vex, commutation, course, contain, diction, nobility, pertain, induce, perturb, quantity, initial, institution, adverse, celerity, hibernate, prefect, egress, confide, predatory, consequent, patient, expert, orient, exhort, revere, sequence, incendiary.*

CHAPTER 63

PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS, DATIVE OF THE AGENT

437.

PARADIGM

INDICATIVE MOOD

Pres. *parātūrus sum*, I am going or intend to prepare
Impf. *parātūrus eram*, I was going, etc., to prepare
Fut. *parātūrus erō*, I shall be going, etc., to prepare
Perf. *parātūrus fui*, I have been or was going, etc., to prepare
Plup. *parātūrus eram*, I had been going, etc., to prepare
F. Pf. *parātūrus fuerō*, I shall have been going, etc., to prepare

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

Pres. parātūrus sim	Perf. parātūrus fuerim
Impf. parātūrus essem	Plup. parātūrus fuisset

INFINITIVE MOOD

Pres. parātūrus esse, to be going, etc.	Perf. parātūrus fuisse, to have been going, etc.
--	---

438. Periphrastic Conjugations. "Periphrastic" means *in phrases*, and a *periphrastic conjugation* is one made up of verb-phrases. There are two such conjugations, called the *active* and the *passive* periphrastic conjugations:

(1) Active periphr. conj. = *future active participle* + **sum** (as in 437).

(2) Passive periphr. conj. = *future passive participle* (or *gerundive*) + **sum** (as in 440).

(a) The *active* forms denote *futurity* or *intention*; the *passive*, *duty* or *necessity*.

439.**EXERCISE**

mūniō,	-īre, mūnīvī, mūnītum, 99
perdūcō,	-ere, perdūxī, perductum (per + dūcō), lead through; construct (walls, etc.)
portō,	-āre, portāvī, portātum, carry
respondeō,	-ēre, respondi, respōnsum, reply

I. How is the *future active participle* formed (361, B)? Form the fut. act. part. of the four verbs above.

II. 1. Portātūrus est, portātūrī erant. 2. Respōnsūrus erit, respōnsūra est. 3. Perductūrī fuērunt, perductūrus fuistī. 4. Mūnītūrus es, mūnītūrī erāmus. 5. Frūmentum sēcum portātūrī erant. 6. Mūrum perductūrus est. 7. Fossā castra mūnītūrī fuērunt. 8. Omnia sua (*their property*, 64) dē finibus suis portātūrī sunt. 9. Militēs ex hibernis ēgressūrī erant. 10. They are going-to-carry. 11. We intended-to-construct.

12. She was going-to-reply. 13. They had intended-to-fortify.
 14. The cavalry were going-to-attack the rear of the enemy.
 15. He intends-to-set-out for (ad) the winter-quarters. 16. Do you (pl.) intend-to-reply?

440.

PARADIGMS

INDICATIVE MOOD

- Pres. **parandus um**, *I have or am to or must be prepared*
 Impf. **parandus eram**, *I had to be prepared*
 Fut. **parandus erō**, *I shall have to be prepared*
 Perf. **parandus fui**, *I (have) had to be prepared*
 Plup. **parandus fueram**, *I had had to be prepared*
 F. Pf. **parandus fuerō**, *I shall have had to be prepared*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

- | | |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------|
| Pres. parandus sim | Perf. parandus fuerim |
| Impf. parandus essem | Plup. parandus fuisset |

INFINITIVE MOOD

- | | |
|--|--|
| Pres. parandus esse , <i>to have to be prepared</i> | Perf. parandus fuisse , <i>to have had to be prepared</i> |
|--|--|

441.

EXERCISE

aciēs, -ēī, F., 199

opus, operis, N., work

proelium committō, 160

signum, -ī, N., signal, standard (*a banner*)

sine, 199

tuba, -ae, F., trumpet

agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum, 139

instruō, -ere, instrūxī, instructum, 199

revocō, -āre, etc. (re- + vocō), recall, call back

I. How is the *gerundive* or *fut. pass. participle* formed (408, B)? Form this part of the three verbs above and tell their meanings.

II. 1. Portandus est, portandī sunt. 2. Respondendum est (compare pugnātum est, and translate, according to 245, Note,

an answer must be made), respondendum erit. 3. Perdūcendum erat, fossa perdūcenda erit. 4. Oppidum mūrō mūnīendum fuit. 5. Aciēs instruenda erat. 6. Signum dandum erit. 7. Milītēs revocandī fuērunt. 8. Multa agenda sunt. 9. Proelium cum hostibus committendum erit. 10. Ab opere revocandī erāmus. 11. He had to be carried. 12. Answer had to be made (see sent. 2). 13. The grain will have to be carried. 14. These two towns have had to be fortified. 15. The signal must be given with the trumpet. 16. Walls will have to be constructed.

442. Dative of the Agent. Study 542, state the rule, and give the Latin for, *I must do this*. Notice here the difference in voice: English, *active*; Latin, *passive*. Always turn the English into the passive form before translating into Latin, and remember that the Latin *agent* (English subject) is in the *dative*. Thus, English, *The general had to do all things* = Latin, *All-things had to be done by the general* (dative).

443.**EXERCISE**

I. 1. Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda. 2. Milītēs ab opere eī (dat.) revocandī erunt. 3. Signum tubā ūnī ex militibus (533, *a*) dandum erat. 4. Ii quī praedandī causā ex castrīs ēgressī sunt revocandī erunt. 5. Milītēs praesidiō oppidō lēgātō relinquendī sunt. 6. Aciēs statim imperātōri instruenda fuit. 7. Iter sine impedimentīs nōbis faciendum est.

II. Where necessary, change the English from *active* to *passive* before translating (442): 1. The signal must be given by me. 2. We must construct two walls. 3. The soldiers will have to fortify the camp with rampart and ditch. 4. You (pl.) had to give the signal with the trumpet. 5. Grain had to be carried by the soldiers into the city. 6. He will have to carry on war with many enemies.

CHAPTER 64

IRREGULAR VERBS

444. Principal parts: **possum, posse, potui**, —, *be able, can*

445. PARADIGM

INDICATIVE MOOD

Pres. possum , <i>I can, am able</i>	Perf. potui , <i>I have been or was able</i>
potes	potuisti
potest	potuit
possumus	potuimus
potestis	potuistis
possunt	potuerunt or -ēre
Impf. poteram , <i>I could, was able</i>	Plup. potueram , <i>I had been able</i>
poterās , etc.	potuerās , etc.
Fut. poterō , <i>I shall be able</i>	F. Pf. potuerō , <i>I shall have been able</i>
poteris , etc.	

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

IMPERATIVE MOOD

Pres. possim	Perf. potuerim	(wanting)
possis	potueris	
etc.	etc.	
Impf. possem	Plup. potuissem	
possēs	potuissēs	
etc.	etc.	

INFINITIVE MOOD

PARTICIPLES

Pres. posse , <i>to be able</i>	Pres. potēns (adj.), <i>powerful</i>
Perf. potuisse , <i>to have been able</i>	

446. Compounds of **sum**. In its *present* system **possum** is a compound of **pot-** (for **potis** or **pote**), *able*, + **sum**, *I am*. Notice that **pot-** becomes **pos-** before forms of **sum** beginning with **s**. In its *perfect* system the stem **potu-** (with the part. **potēns**) comes from an old verb now lost. The part. **potēns** is used only as an adjective, meaning *powerful*.

(a) Four other compounds of **sum** in common use are —

absum, **abesse**, **āfui**, **āfutūrus**, *be absent, distant*
dēsum, **deesse**, **dēfui**, **dēfutūrus**, *be wanting, fail*
praesum, **praeesse**, **praefui**, **praefutūrus**, *be at the head of*
supersum, **superesse**, **superfui**, **superfutūrus**, *be (left) over, survive*

(b) The pres. parts. **absēns** (gen. **absentis**), *absent*, and **praesēns** (gen. **praesentis**), *present*, are used as adjectives.

447.

EXERCISE

malefīcium, **malefīci**, N., harm, **nihil**, N., *indeclinable*, nothing
 mischievous, **nōnnūllus**, -a, -um (*not none*),
nēmō, —, ¹ M., nobody, no one some
multum (**plūs**, **plūrimum**) **posse**, to have much (more, most) power;
nihil posse, to be not at all strong. Compare **valeō**, 249.

I. 1. **Poterat**, **potuerat**. 2. **Poterit**, **potuerit**. 3. **Posse**, **potuisse**. 4. **Potuērunt**, **poterunt**. 5. **Potestis**, **potuistis**. 6. **Nē possit**, **ut nōn possit**. 7. **Cum possit** (causal), **cum posset** (concessive). 8. **Duo potentissimī rēgēs**. 9. They can, they could. 10. We shall be able, she can. 11. They had been able, they have been able. 12. Of powerful kings.

II. 1. **Sine ūllō** (214, a) **malefīciō** iter per prōvinciam facere poterimus. 2. **Tōtius Galliae plūrimum Helvētīi possunt**. 3. **Equitātū plūs poterant hostēs quam Caesar**. 4. **Tum equitātū nihil poterat**, et frūmentum ei² deerat (= nōn erat). 5. **Nihil frūmenti³ erat in oppidō**, ut incolae id defendere nōn possent. 6. **Nōnnūlli sunt**, quōrum auctōritās apud populum plūrimum valet (249), quī privātīm⁴ plūs possunt quam ipsī magistrātūs.⁵ 7. **Haedui**, cum sē suaeque ab hostibus dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt rogātūm⁶ auxilium. 8. **Hōc proeliō factō**,⁷ ut reliquās cōpiās Helvētiōrum cōsequi posset,⁸ pontem in⁹ flūmine fēcit.

NOTES: 1. **Nēmō** is a defective noun. Its gen. and abl. sing. are supplied by **nūllus** (214, a). Thus, nom. **nēmō**, gen. **nullius**, dat. **nēmīni**, acc. **nēmīnem**, abl. **nūllō**. 2. Dat. of the possessor, **deerat** being the opposite of **erat**. 3. *Nothing of grain* (part. gen.) = *no grain*. 4. *as private citizens*. 5. *officials*. 6. Acc. supine. 7. **hōc proeliō factō**, abl. absolute. 8. Subjv. of purpose. 9. *over*.

448. Principal parts : **volō, velle, volui, be willing, wish**
nōlō, nōlle, nōlui, be unwilling, object
mālō, mälle, mālui, wish more, prefer

449. PARADIGMS

INDICATIVE MOOD

Pres. volō	nōlō	mālō
vis	nōn vis	māvis
vult	nōn vult	māvult
volumus	nōlumus	mālumus
vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis
volunt	nōlunt	mālunt
Impf. volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam
Fut. volam, -ēs, -et, etc.	nōlam	mālam
Perf. volui, -isti, -it, etc.	nōlui	mālui
Plup. volueram	nōlueram	mālueram
F. Pf. voluerō	nōluerō	māluerō

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

Pres. velim, -is, -it, etc.	nōlim	mālim
Impf. vellem, -ēs, -et, etc.	nōllem	māllem
Perf. voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim
Plup. voluissem	nōluissem	māluissem

IMPERATIVE MOOD

Pres. (wanting)	S. nōli , P. nōlite	(wanting)
Fut. (wanting)	S. nōlitō , P. nōlitōte nōlitō nōluntō	

INFINITIVE MOOD

Pres. velle	nōlle	mälle
Perf. voluisse	nōluisse	māluisse

PARTICIPLES

Pres. volēns	nōlēns	(wanting)
---------------------	---------------	-----------

(a) **Nōlō** and **mālō** are compounds of **volō**: **nōlō** = **nōn**, *not*, + **volō**, and **mālō** = **magis**, *more*, + **volō**.

450.

EXERCISE

Allobrogēs, -um, m. pl., the Allobroges, a Gallic tribe in the north-eastern part of the province

Genava, -ae, f., Geneva, capital of the Allobroges

omnīnō, adv., altogether, in all

afficiō, -ere, affēcī, affectum (ad, to, + faciō, do), treat, visit

fluō, -ere, flūxī, flūxum, flow

remaneo, -ēre, remānsī, remānsum (re- + maneo), remain, remain behind

temperō, -āre, etc., refrain (with ab, from, + abl.)

Sēquani, -ōrum, m. pl., the Sequani, a Gallic tribe, rivals of the Haedui

supplicium, supplicī, n., punishment, penalty

I. 1. Vult, nōn vīs, māvīs. 2. Volēbāmus, nōlēs, mālet. 3. Voluistī, māluit, nōluerātis. 4. Nolumus, māvultis, voluerat. 5. Vultis, nōlunt, mālētis. 6. Nē velit (neg. purpose), ut nōn mālīt (neg. result). 7. Cum vellet (circumstantial), cum mālūisset (causal). 8. Sciō quid mālīt (ind. question). 9. Rogāvit quid vellem. 10. They wish, he does not wish. 11. You (sing.) wish, you (pl.) wish. 12. He objects, you (sing.) have objected. 13. To prefer, to have wished. 14. Unwilling (part.), they had preferred.

II. 1. Rōmānōrum novissimum agmen adorīrī voluērunt. 2. Māvult bonus esse quam vidērī. 3. Ā maleficiō prōvinciae temperāre nōlunt. 4. Is quī omnibus placēre vult, nēmīnī placet. 5. Dumnorīx¹ Gallōrum quam² Rōmānōrum imperia māluit. 6. Labiēnum mūnitiōnī praeficere voluit. 7. Helvētīi nostrōs ā³ novissimō agmine īnsequī voluērunt. 8. Captīvōs gravissimō suppliciō afficere vult. 9. Belgae exercitum Rōmānum in Galliā inveterāscere⁴ nōluērunt. 10. Hic princeps apud finitimās civitatēs plūrimum posse volēbat. 11. Bonus vir virtūte omnibus praestāre quam cōsul esse māvult. 12. Germānī, supplicia Gallōrum veritī,⁵ apud⁶ Caesarem remanēre māluerunt. 13. Cum locus pugnae idōneus esset, tamen nēmō ducem proelium cum hostibus committere voluit. 14. Diēbus omnīnō XVIII trāns Rhēnum cōsumptis,⁷ sē in

Galliam recipere voluit. 15. Mōns, quem ā lēgātō occupārī vis, ab hostibus tenētur.

NOTES: 1. *Dumnorix*, a Haeduan. 2. *Quam*, *than*, with *mālō* may be trans. to. 3. *from (the side of)* = *in or on*. 4. *to establish itself* (*vetus*, old). 5. Perf. part. of *vereor*, but best trans. as present. 6. *with*. 7. With *diēbus* an abl. absolute, from *cōnsūmō*, *use up*, *spend*.

451. Principal parts: *ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum, bear*.

452.

PARADIGMS

INDICATIVE MOOD

ACTIVE VOICE		PASSIVE VOICE	
Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.
Pres. <i>ferō</i>	<i>ferimus</i>	Pres. <i>feror</i>	<i>ferimur</i>
<i>fers</i>	<i>fertis</i>	<i>ferris</i>	<i>ferimini</i>
<i>fert</i>	<i>ferunt</i>	<i>fertur</i>	<i>feruntur</i>
Impf. <i>ferēbam</i>		Impf. <i>ferēbar</i>	
Fut. <i>feram, -ēs, -et, etc.</i>		Fut. <i>ferar, ferēris, ferētur, etc.</i>	
Perf. <i>tuli, -isti, -it, etc.</i>		Perf. <i>lātus sum, es, est, etc.</i>	
Plup. <i>tuleram</i>		Plup. <i>lātus eram, erās, etc.</i>	
F. Pf. <i>tulerō</i>		F. Pf. <i>lātus erō, eris, etc.</i>	

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

Pres. <i>feram, -ās, -at, etc.</i>	Pres. <i>ferar, -āris, -ātur, etc.</i>
Impf. <i>ferrem, -ēs, -et, etc.</i>	Impf. <i>ferrer, -ēris, -ētur, etc.</i>
Perf. <i>tulerim -īs, -it, etc.</i>	Perf. <i>latus sim, sis, etc.</i>
Plup. <i>tulissem, -ēs, -et, etc.</i>	Plup. <i>latus essem, essēs, etc.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD

Pres. <i>fer</i>	<i>ferte</i>	Pres. <i>ferre</i>	<i>ferimini</i>
Fut. <i>fertō</i>	<i>fertōte</i>	Fut. <i>fertor</i>	—
<i>fertō</i>	<i>feruntō</i>	<i>fertor</i>	<i>feruntor</i>

INFINITIVE MOOD

Pres. <i>ferre</i>	Pres. <i>ferri</i>
Perf. <i>tulisse</i>	Perf. <i>lātus esse</i>
Fut. <i>lāturus esse</i>	Fut. <i>lātum iri</i>

PARTICIPLES

Pres. ferēns	Pres. —
Perf. —	Perf. lātus, -a, -um
Fut. lātūrus, -a, -um	G'dive ferendus, -a, -um

GERUND

Gen. **ferendī**
etc.

SUPINE

Acc. **lātum**
Abl. **lātū**

(a) **Dicō, dūcō, and faciō**, like **ferō**, form the pres. imperative, 2d per. sing., without the final *e*: **fer, dīc, dūc, and fac**.

(b) The following compounds of **ferō** are in frequent use:

afferō, afferre, attulī, allātum (**ad + ferō**), bring (to)
cōnferō, cōnferre, contulī, collātum (**con- + ferō**), bring together, collect;
especially, sē cōnferre, to betake oneself, retire
inferō, inferre, intulī, illātum (**in + ferō**), bring in or on; *especially,*
bellum inferre, to bring war on (somebody, *dative*, 412)
referō, referre, rettulī, relātum (**re- + ferō**), bring back; *especially, pedem*
referre, to fall back, retreat

453.

EXERCISE

commeātus, -ūs, m., provisions, **deinde, adv.**, then, next
supplies **equus, -ī, m.**, horse

cohortor, cohortārī, cohortātus sum (**co- + hortor**), exhort, address
mātūrō, -āre, etc., hasten
removeō, -ēre, remōvī, remōtum (**re- + moveō**), remove
tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātum, take away; raise

I. 1. Affert, affertur, attulit (452, b). 2. Cōnferet, cōnferiminī, sē contulerant (452, b). 3. Inferēbat, illātum est, intulerat. 4. Rettulimus, relātus esse, pedem rettulisse (452, b). 5. Gallīs bellum inferet (452, b). 6. Ad hiberna sē contulēre (not inf.). 7. Equitēs pedem ad oppidum rettulerant. 8. He will bear, he bore. 9. They are borne, he will be borne. 10. Bear (sing.), he shall be borne (fut. impv.). 11. To have borne, having been borne. 12. He is bringing war on us (452, b).

II. 1. Commeātum in ūnum locum contulērunt. 2. Cum omnibus proficisci mātūrat. 3. Haec rēs Caesari voluptātem (*pleasure*) attulit. 4. Ex cōspectū equōs remōvit. 5. Cohortātus suōs (64) proelium commisit. 6. Omnium remōtis¹ equīs¹ pericūlum omnium aequat,² et fugae spem tollit. 7. Vulneribus dēfessī pedem referre coepērunt.³ 8. Helvētiis ā Rōmānis bellum illātum est. 9. Caesar primum suō⁴ (equō understood), deinde omnium ex cōspectū remōtis⁴ equīs,⁴ ut⁶ aequātō⁵ omnium periculō⁵ spem fugae tolleret,⁶ cohortātus⁷ suōs proelium commisit.

NOTES: 1. Abl. absolute. 2. aequō, -āre, etc., *make equal*. 3. *they began*. 4. suō (equō) and (omnium) equīs with remōtis, abl. absolute, to be trans. as a *time*-phrase, *after removing*, etc. 5. Abl. absolute, may be trans. by a phrase, *by making the danger of all equal*. 6. Purpose clause. 7. Trans. *addressed his (men) and joined battle*.

454. Principal parts : fiō, fieri, factus sum, *be made, become*
eō, ire, ii (iī), itum, go

455.

PARADIGMS

INDICATIVE MOOD

Pres.	fiō, fis, fit, fimus, fitis, fiunt	Pres.	eō, is, it imus, itis, eunt
Imperf.	fiēbam	Imperf.	ibam
Fut.	fiam, fiēs, etc.	Fut.	ibō, ibis, etc.
Perf.	factus sum, es, etc.	Perf.	ii, isti, iit
Plup.	factus eram		iimus, istis, iērunt (iēre)
F. Perf.	factus erō	Plup.	ieram, ierās, etc.
		F. Perf.	ierō, ieris, etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

Pres.	fiam, fiās, etc.	Pres.	eam, eās, etc.
Impf.	fierem	Impf.	irem
Perf.	factus sim	Perf.	ierim, ieris, etc.
Plup.	factus essem	Plup.	issem, issēs, etc.

IMPERATIVE MOOD

Pres. **fi**
fite

Pres. **i**
ite
Fut. **itō, itō,**
itōte, euntō

INFINITIVE MOOD

Pres. **fieri**
Perf. **factus esse**
Fut. **factum iri**

Pres. **ire**
Perf. **isse**
Fut. **itūrus esse**

PARTICIPLES

Pres. —
Fut. **faciendus, -a, -um**
Perf. **factus, -a, -um**

Pres. **iēns, gen. euntis**
Fut. **itūrus, -a, -um**
Perf. —

GERUND AND SUPINE

Ger. **eundi, -dō, etc.**
Sup. **itum, itū**

(a) **Fiō** supplies the passive of **faciō** in the *present system*. Thus, the expression **certiōrem** (acc.) **faciō**, *I inform*, becomes in the passive **certior** (nom.) **fiō**, *I am informed*.

(b) The following are common compounds of **eō**:

exeō, -ire, exiī, exitum, *go out*
trānseō, -ire, trānsiī, trānsitum, *go across, cross*

(c) Some compounds of the intransitive **eō** are *transitive* and have a regular passive conjugation. Thus, **trānseō**, *I cross*:

Ind. Pres. **trānseor, -iris, -itur; -imur, -imini, -euntur**
Impf. **trānsibar, Fut. trānsibor, Perf. trānsitus sum, etc.**
Subjv. Pres. **trānsear, Imp. trānsīrer, Perf. trānsitus sim, etc.**
Inf. Pres. **trānsīrī, Perf. trānsitus esse**
Part. Pf. **trānsitus, Gerundive, trānseundus**

456.

EXERCISE

diū, adv., long, for a long time **vadum, -ī, N.**, ford

1. **Fi**, **fiunt**. 2. **Fiēs**, **factus est**. 3. **Fiēbat**, **factus erat**.
4. **Fieri**, **fimus**. 5. **Fient**, **facti eritis**. 6. **Imus, iimus, eunt**.

7. *Ībunt, ībant, ierās.* 8. *Īsse, itūrus.* 9. *Exit, exeunt, exhibis.* 10. *Trānsire, trānsirī, trānsistis.* 11. *Certior fit, certiōrēs facti sunt.* 12. *He was becoming, was made (pf.).* 13. *They become, will become.* 14. *It has become, becomes.* 15. *There is a river to be crossed (gerundive).* 16. *We are informed.*

II. 1. *Certior dē hostium cōnsiliō fit.* 2. *Cōpia nostrae ex castris exhibunt.* 3. *In Britanniam trānsire cōstituit.* 4. *Dē finibus suis exire mātūrābant.* 5. *Rhodanus nōnnūllis locis¹ vadō trānsiūt.* 6. *Cum ex castris exissent, proelium redintegrāvērunt, neque² impetum nostrōrum diū ferre potuērunt.* 7. *Magnum equitum numerum praemiserat, quī³ flūmen trānsirent,³ ut reliquās cōpiās hostium cōsequerentur.* 8. *Nostrī tam fortiter pugnāvērunt, ut hostēs impetum diū sustinere nōn possent.* 9. *Hostēs, nostrōs trāseuntēs adorti,⁴ proelium redintegrāvērunt.* 10. *Lēgātum cohortātus est, ut comparātō⁵ commeātū⁵ quam⁶ celerrimē flūmen trānsiret.*

NOTES: 1. For the omission of *in*, see 569, *b*. 2. Here *neque* = *sed non*. 3. Rel. clause of purpose. 4. Nom. pl. of *adortus*, pf. part. of *adorior*, agreeing with the subject, *hostēs*. 5. Abl. abs., to be trans. *after obtaining*, etc. 6. For the meaning of *quam* + superlative, see 240, *a*.

457.

NINTH REVIEW (411-456)

I. **Inflection.** 1. On the model of 410, I, but adding the *five active forms* that deponents have (415, *a*), make a synopsis of *sequor*. 2. How are the *periphrastic conjugations* formed? 3. Tell the mood, tense, etc., of

possimus	poteris	potuisse	volet	nōlet	fertis	ferēs	fiat
possēmus	potueris	posse	velis	nōllet	fertur	ferrēs	fiet

II. **Syntax.** 1. What *compound verbs* take a dative? 2. Explain the use of *two cases* with *praeiciō*. 3. What does the *active periphrastic* denote? the *passive* (438, *a*)? 4. Translate *frūmenti cōpiam portātūrī erant*, and *aciēs ei instruenda erat*. 5. How is the *agent* expressed with the passive periphrastic? 6. What does the Latin *participle* usually represent (422)? Give an illustration. 7. Suppose a participle modifies a noun or pronoun that is only *loosely connected* with the rest of the sentence; in what *case* must

the two stand, and what is the *construction* called? 8. Change the following participial phrases into suitable *clauses* in English, and tell which of them might be in the *ablative absolute*, and why:

1. *The Remi requesting it*, he spared the others. 2. *The enemy being demoralized*, we defeated them. 3. *The enemy, being demoralized*, fled. 4. *The troops, having been led out*, were drawn up in battle array. 5. *The troops having been led out*, the enemy retired. 6. *Caesar being unwilling*, they did not march.

6. Tell several ways of expressing *purpose*, including one with a *noun* alone (435). 7. What deponent verbs take an *ablative* instead of a direct object?

III. Vocabulary.¹

399. absum, 400. adior, 401. adversus, 402. afferō, 403. appropinquo, 404. celeritās, 405. classis, 406. cohortor, 407. commeātus, 408. cōferō (sē cōferre), 409. cōsequor, 410. conveniō, 411. deinde, 412. dēsum, 413. diū, 414. ēgredior, 415. ēnūtiō, 416. eō, 417. equus, 418. exeō, 419. ferō, 420. fiō, (certior fiō), 421. fluō, 422. hiberna, 423. incendō, 424. inferō, (bellum inferre + dat.), 425. īsequor, 426. lēgātiō, 427. loquor, 428. magnopere, 429. malefīcium, 430. mātūrē, 431. mātūrō, 432. moror, 433. mūnitiō, 434. necessārius, 435. nēmō, 436. nihil, 437. nōlō, 438. nōnnūllus, (novissimum agmen), 439. occidō, 440. occurrō, 441. omnīnō, 442. opus, 443. orior, 444. patior, 445. perducō, 446. polliceor, 447. portō, 448. possum, (multum, plūs, plūrimum, nihil posse), 449. potior, 450. praedor, 451. praeficiō, 452. praesum, 453. profectiō, 454. propter, (reditiō²), 455. referō, (pedem referre), 456. remaneō, 457. removeō, 458. respondeō, 459. sīgnum, 460. supersum, 461. temperō, 462. tollō, 463. trānseō, 464. triduum, 465. tuba, 466. ūtor, 467. vadum, 468. vāllum, 469. vel, (videor), 470. volō.

CHAPTER 65

GERUND AND GERUNDIVE

458. **Gerundive.** Review the formation of the gerund (361, *C*) and gerundive (408, *B*). We have seen the *gerundive* (or fut. pass. part.) used in forming the passive periphrastic conjugation (440). The only cases so used are the nominative

¹ See the footnote to 67, IV.

² Not in the Lodge list, but needed in the next reading lesson.

and accusative. Other cases of the gerundive are used in other ways. Thus :

gen. sing. *cōnsilium belli renovandī*, the plan of the war to-be-renewed, which in English is, *the plan of renewing the war* ;

acc. plur. *ad eās rēs cōficiendās*, for those things to-be-accomplished, meaning *for accomplishing those things* ;

abl. plur. *in cōsiliis capiendis*, in plans to-be-formed, meaning *in forming plans*.

459. The gerundive, being a *verbal adjective*, agrees in gender, number, and case with the noun which it modifies. See the examples in 458.

(a) Only *transitive* verbs have full gerundive forms. Intransitive verbs may have gerundives only in the *impersonal* form (245, Note) : *mihi eundum est*, I must go.

460. Two Uses of the Gerundive should be noted as follows :

(1) *ad* + accusative gerundive, expressing *purpose*. Thus, *for-the-purpose-of seizing the wall or walls, the city or cities, and the shield or shields* may be expressed as follows :

MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
Sing. <i>ad mūrum occupandum</i>	<i>ad urbem occupandam</i>	<i>ad scūtum occupandum</i>
Plur. <i>ad mūrōs occupandōs</i>	<i>ad urbēs occupandās</i>	<i>ad scūta occupanda</i>

(2) genitive gerundive + *causā*, also expressing *purpose*. Thus, *belli renovandī causā*, *for-the-sake-of* (or *purpose-of*) *renewing the war*.

461. Gerund. When the verb has *no direct object* (as *wall, city, shield*, in 460), the *gerund* must be used instead of the gerundive. Thus, *for-the-purpose-of-fighting*, *ad pugnandum*, or *pugnandī causā* (460).

(a) The gerund is a *verbal noun* (not adjective), of the neuter gender, without a nominative, and without a plural. In other words, it has only the terminations, -ī, -ō, -um, and -ō (second declension).

462. Translation. In translating *purpose* expressions, it is well not to confine oneself to one form of English, but to vary the expression, — *for the purpose of, in order to, to, for*, etc.

463.**EXERCISE**

alacer, -cris, -cre, eager

biennium, biennī, N., two years

facultās, -tātis, F., opportunity,

means, supply

satis, adverb, enough

bellō, -āre, etc., make war

dēliberō, -āre, etc., think over, consider, deliberate

largior, -iri, largitus sum, bribe

renovō, -āre, etc., renew

subeō, -ire, subiī, subitum (sub + eō), undergo

sūmō, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptum, take

I. Distinguish *gerund* and *gerundive* in each: 1. Ad eās rēs cōficiendās. 2. Bellandī causā. 3. Ad omnia pericula subeunda.¹ 4. Cupidus bellandī erat. 5. Praedandī causā profectī sunt. 6. Ad bella suscipienda. 7. Diem² ad dēliberandum sūmet. 8. Facultātēs ad largiendum magnās comparāverat. 9. Ad eās rēs cōficiendās biennium eis satis erat. 10. Ad bella suscipienda alacer Gallōrum est animus. 11. Helvētīi, oppidīs³ suis omnibus incēnsis,³ parātī⁴ erant ad omnia pericula subeunda.¹ 12. Subitō Gallī bellī renovandī cōnsilium cēperunt (*formed*).

II. Change the expressions in 1, 3, and 6 of I above (ad + acc.) to the form, gen. + causā, remembering 459. Change the forms of 2 and 5 from the gen. + causā to ad + accusative.

III. Write the following in both ways explained in 460, not forgetting 459: 1. For the purpose of procuring⁵ grain. 2. In order to seize the cities. 3. To obtain⁵ brave soldiers. 4. In order to take⁶ time.² 5. For the purpose of setting fire to all the towns.

NOTES: 1. Compare the last form under 455, c. 2. *Diēs (day)* sometimes means *time*. 3. Abl. abs., trans. as a *time*-phrase, *after setting fire*, etc., or as causal, *since they had set fire*, etc. 4. *ready*. 5. *comparō, -āre, etc.* 6. *Not capiō*; see vocabulary (463) and sent. 7 in I.

CHAPTER 66

READING LESSON

THE HELVETIANS PREPARE TO EMIGRATE

464. Post Orgetorīgis mortem Helvētīi ē finibus suis exīre parant. Oppida sua omnia vicōsque¹ incendunt. Frūmentum omne, praeter quod² sēcum portātūrī erant, combūrunt.³ Ita domum reditiōnis spēs sublāta⁴ est. Parātī⁵ ad omnia perīcula subeunda erant.

NOTES: 1. vicōsque = et vicōs. 2. Rel. pron., *what*. 3. *They burn up*. 4. From tollō (453). 5. For meaning here, see 463, I, Note 4.

TWO ROUTES POSSIBLE

465. Erant omnīnō itinera duo, quibus itineribus¹ domō² exire poterant. E³ quibus ūnum erat per Sēquanōs, — angustum et difficile, inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum. Mōns autem altissimus impendēbat, ut facile paucī eōs prohibēre possent.⁴ Alterum iter erat per prōvinciam nostram, — multō⁵ facilius, quod⁶ inter finēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum Rhodanus fluit, isque⁷ nōnnūllis locīs vadō trānsitur.

NOTES: 1. Omit in translating. 2. 193, a. 3. 533, a. 4. Subjv. of result. 5. Abl. of degree of difference, 252, a. 6. *because*. 7. Compare 464, Note 1, above; *is*, referring to *Rhodanus*, is masculine, but trans. *it*.

CAESAR HASTENS TO THE SCENE

466. Helvētīi, ut¹ exīstimābant, Allobrogibus persuādēre poterant, ut per suōs finēs eōs ire paterentur.² Caesarī³ cum id nūntiātum esset, mātūrāt ab urbe proficisci, et magnīs itineribus in Galliam Ulteriōrem contendit, et ad⁴ Genavam pervenit. Ubi⁵ dē eius adventū Helvētīi certiōrēs facti sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt. "Sine ūllō maleficiō," inquit,⁶ "iter per prōvinciam faciēmus."

NOTES: 1. Not *that*. 2. Subjv. in substantive clause of purpose. 3. Trans. *Caesar* after *cum*, *when*. 4. *in the neighborhood of*, 110, a. 5. *When*. 6. Plur. of *inquit*, *said he*.

CAESAR'S ANSWER

467. Helvētīi inimicō animō¹ erant in² populum Rōmānum. Multis ante annis³ cōsul Rōmānus occisus est, exercitusque⁴ eius ab eis pulsus est. Haec Caesar memoriā tenēbat. Itaque Helvētīos per prōvinciam ire nōluit. "Diem," inquit, "ad dēliberandum sūmam. Sī⁵ quid⁶ vultis, paucis diēbus revertimini."⁷ Intereā ūnam legiōnem sēcum habēbat. Aliās legiōnēs comparat. Ā lacū Lemannō ad montem Iūram mūrū fossamque perdūcit. Tandem lēgātī Helvētiōrum ad eum revertērunt. "Nulli,"⁸ inquit, "iter⁹ per prōvinciam dare possum. Sī⁸ vim facere¹⁰ cōnābiminī, prohibēbō." Itaque Helvētīi eā spē dēiecti¹¹ sunt.

NOTES: 1. Abl. of quality, 231; for meaning compare 235, sent. 2. 2. *towards*. 3. See 252, *h*, but *ante* here is an adverb. 4. Compare *vicōsque*, 464, Note 1. 5. *If*. 6. *anything*, indef. pron., 297. 7. Imperative of *revertor*. 8. For *nēmīnī*, dat. of *nēmō* (447 and Note 1). 9. *passage*. 10. Trans. use. 11. *disappointed*, from *dēiciō*, *I throw down* (355).

CHAPTER 67

SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF RESULT

468.

VOCABULARY

complūrēs, -a or -ia, *gen.* -ium, dēditō, -ōnis, *F.*, surrender
many, several posterus, -a, -um, following, next
cōfectus, -a, -um (*perf. part. of*
cōficiō), exhausted
dēdō, -ere, dēdidi, dēditum (dē + dō), give away or up; sē dēdere,
to surrender
expugnō, -āre, *etc.*, take by assault, storm

469. Substantive Clauses of Result. What is a *substantive clause*? Study 615, state the rule, and translate *Perficit ut obsidēs inter sē dent*; also, *Accidit ut satis frūmentī nōn esset*. Tell in each of these sentences what *case* (nom. or acc.) the dependent clause represents.

(a) Note the following verbs, which take a substantive clause of result:

accidit, it happens <i>or</i> happened	fit, it happens, the result is (455)
(302)	fiēbat <i>or</i> factum est, it happened,
faciō, I cause, bring (it) about	the result was (455)

470.

EXERCISE

I. 1. Accidit ut inimicī sint. 2. Factum est ut oppidum expugnāre nōn cōnārētur. 3. Fit ut inimicī ā maleficiō nōn temperent. 4. Posterō diē accidit ut castra ex eō locō movērent. 5. Haec rēs contrā¹ opiniōnem¹ accidit. 6. Complūribus in proeliis acciderat ut equitātus fugeret. 7. Hīs rēbus² fit ut hostēs vulneribus cōfectī Caesarī sē dēdant. 8. Hīs dē³ causis factum est ut Helvētī lēgātōs dē dēditionē ad eum mitterent. 9. "Fit ferē,"⁴ inquit, "ut hominēs inimicō animō,⁵ datā facultāte⁶ per agrōs finitimōrum itineris faciendī,⁷ ā maleficiō nōn temperent." 10. Quā dē causā⁸ facere⁸ potuit ut Helvētī dē finibus suis nōn exirent. 11. Hīs rēbus² fiēbat ut et minus lātē¹⁰ vagārentur¹¹ et minus facile finitimīs bellum inferre possent.

II. 1. It happens that they are storming the town. 2. The result was that the legion did not surrender (impf.). 3. For many reasons (compare I, 8, above) it had happened that they could not (were not able to) storm the city. 4. On the following day it happened that envoys arrived (impf.) at the camp. 5. Meanwhile it happened that the enemy, exhausted with wounds, were retreating¹² contrary to expectation (see I, 5, above).

NOTES: 1. *contrary to expectation*. 2. Abl. of cause. 3. *for*. 4. *usually*. 5. For meaning of *inimicō animō*, see 467, Note 1. 6. With *datā*, abl. abs., trans. as an *if* or *when*-clause, *if* (or *when*) *an opportunity of*, etc., is given. 7. Gerundive agreeing with *itineris*, the two modifying *facultāte*. 8. 469, a. 9. 403, a. 10. Adverb of *lātus*. 11. *They roamed about*, from *vagor*, *vagārī*, *vagātus sum*. 12. 452, b, last word.

CHAPTER 68

SIMPLE STATEMENTS IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE

The following paragraphs are based on 655-661, which should be read carefully :—

471. Direct and Indirect Discourse. How do *direct* and *indirect discourse* differ (655, 656)? Give two or three illustrations in English. What *verbs* may introduce indirect discourse?

472. Statements in Indirect Discourse. Say in Latin, *Marcus has friends* (direct discourse) and *He says that Marcus has friends* (indirect discourse). What *three important points* must be observed in changing direct into indirect discourse? As further illustrations, write the following in Latin :

DIRECT DISCOURSE

1. *Caesar has an army.*
2. *The Helvetians are fleeing.*
3. *One legion is (being) left.*

INDIRECT DISCOURSE

1. *I say that Caesar has an army.*
2. *You say that the Helvetians, etc.*
3. *He says that one legion is, etc.*

473. Predicate Noun or Adjective. Say in Latin, *They say that Marcus is good* (or *a leader*). Explain the case of the Latin words for *good* and *leader* (658). As further illustrations, write the following in Latin :

1. *They say that our friend is brave and good.*
2. *They say that our friends are brave and good.*

474. Pronoun Subject Expressed. Why is it unnecessary to express the pronoun subject of a *finite* verb, but necessary to express that of the *infinitive* (659)? Illustrate with the sentences :

We are Romans (dir. disc.) ; *I say that we*, etc. (ind. disc.).

475. Reflexive Subject. Tell the difference of meaning between the two sentences, *Dicit se esse ducem* and *Dicit eum esse ducem* (660, 661). Illustrate further with the following sentences :

1. *The messengers say that they* (the messengers) *are coming.*
2. *The messengers say that they* (other persons) *are coming.*

476. Verbs of "Saying and Thinking." The verbs of "*saying and thinking*," which introduce indirect discourse, are very

SIMPLE STATEMENTS IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE 197

numerous. Any verb or expression that implies *speech* or *thought* may be followed by the accusative and infinitive of indirect discourse. The following list includes but a small fraction of the total of such verbs and expressions :

audiō (96)	existimō (466)	respondeō (439)
cognōscō (142)	nūntiō (82)	sciō (400)
dīcō (400)	renūntiō, -āre, etc., <i>bring</i>	
ēnūntiō (430)	<i>back word, report</i>	

and the expressions *certiōrem* (pl. -ēs) *faciō* (374) with its passive *certior fiō*, and *memoriā teneō* (227).

(a) Instead of *dīcō . . . nōn*, *I say . . . not*, the Romans used *negō*, *I deny*.

477.

EXERCISE

Dīviciācus, -ī, M., *Diviciacus*, a *Dumnorix*, -rīgis, M. *Dumnorix*,
powerful Haeduan *a brother of Diviciacus*

I. 1. *Dīcunt Dumnorīgem esse summā audāciā* (in trans. supply *man*). 2. *Memoriā tenet Helvētiōs esse inimicōs populī Rōmānī*. 3. *Certior fit cōpiās iam iter facere*. 4. *Audimus eōs iussa (the-things-ordered) nōn facere*. 5. *Caesar negat (476, a) sē iter per prōvinciam dare posse*. 6. *Dīcit sē scīre illa (64) esse vēra (true)*. 7. *Caesar certior fit montem ā suis tenērī*. 8. *Diviciacus respondet sē grātiā plūrimum domī et in reliquā Galliā posse*.

II. 1. He says that *Diviciacus* is a friend of the Romans. 2. They report that some of the enemy are approaching the town (412). 3. He thinks that he is able to prevent them. 4. Scouts bring-back-word that the enemy's horsemen are crossing the river. 5. Caesar answers that he is taking time to consider (compare 463, I, sent. 7).

478. Forms of the Infinitive. The *infinitive* plays so important a part in the following paragraphs that a review of its formation is advisable.

ACTIVE VOICE

Pres. *second princ. part*Perf. *perf. stem + -isse*Fut. *fut. act. part. + inf. esse*

PASSIVE VOICE

Pres. *-āri, -ēri, -ī, -īri*Perf. *perf. pass. part. + inf. esse*Fut. *acc. supine + īri (rare)*

479. Practice. Form all the infinitives, as above, of *portō*, *videō*, *mittō*, *suscipiō*, and *mūniō*.

480. Tenses of the Infinitive. The *tenses* of the infinitive denote, not independent time, but time as *compared with that of the verb on which it depends*. Thus, in the sentence, *Dixit sē parāre*, the present infinitive *parāre* denotes time *present* to *dixit*; but *dixit* itself denotes *past* time (*said*), and hence *parāre* in this case must also refer to past time (*was preparing*, not *is preparing*). Study the following:

I. The *present* infinitive represents an action as going on at the *same time* as that of the verb on which it depends.

Dicit sē parāre, he says that he is *preparing*.

Dixit sē parāre, he said that he *WAS* preparing.

II. The *perfect* infinitive represents an action as having occurred *before* that of the verb on which it depends.

Dicit sē parāvisse, he says that he (has) *prepared*, *was preparing*.

Dixit sē parāvisse, he said that he *HAD* prepared.

III. The *future* infinitive represents an action as going to occur *after* that of the verb on which it depends.

Dicit sē parātūrum esse, he says that he *will prepare*.

Dixit sē parātūrum esse, he said that he *WOULD* prepare.

481.

EXERCISE

liberalitās, -tātis, F., generosity, *plēbs*, *plēbis*, F., (also, *plēbēs*, -eī)
liberality, populace, common people

periculōsus, -a, -um, dangerous

intelligō, -ere, *intellēxī*, *intellēctum*, be aware, know, understand

- I. Apply 480 above to each *italicized infinitive*: 1. *Nōn existimābat hominēs inimicō animō temperātūrōs esse ā maleficiō.*
2. *Memoriā tenēbat cōsulem ab Helvētiis occisum esse.*

3. Intellegēbat id prōvinciae periculōsum *fore* (= futūrum esse). 4. Itaque respondit diem sē ad dēliberandum *sūmptūrum esse*. 5. Postēa negat¹ sē *posse* iter ūllī² per prōvinciam dare. 6. Dixit sē *prohibitūrum esse*. 7. Nūntiātum est eōs per prōvinciam iter facere *cōnārī*. 8. Audit Dumnorīgem propter liberālītātem magnā apud plēbem grātiā³ *esse*. 9. Certior factus est trēs iam partēs⁴ cōpiārum flūmen *trānsisse*. 10. Haedui negābant¹ suōs agrōs in cōspectū exercitūs Rōmānī vāstārī et oppida oppugnārī *dēbēre*.

II. 1. He says that he understands,—understood,—will understand. 2. We say that they are crossing,—crossed,—will cross. 3. I was informed that they would carry,—had carried,—were carrying. 4. It was reported that the army had marched,—were marching,—would march. 5. He was aware that this was,—would be,—had been⁵ dangerous.

NOTES: 1. 476, *a*. 2. 214 and *a*; ūllī (adj.) here = *cuiquam* (pron.), 297, *a*. 3. Abl. of quality. 4. Trans. *fourths*. 5. For the inf. of *sum*, see 372.

CHAPTER 69

WORD GROUPS

482. Definitions. Syllables added at the beginning of words are *prefixes*; those at the end *suffixes*. *Be-* is a prefix in *be-friend*; *-ship*, a suffix in *friendship*.

483. Word Formation. Words grow from other words (1) by means of *prefixes*, (2) by means of *suffixes*, and (3) by the *combination* of two words in one. Thus, from *magnus*, *great*, have grown the following words:

(1) *permagnus*, *very great*, the prefix *per* meaning *through* (and *through*), that is, *thorough* or *thoroughly*;

(2) *magnitūdō*, *greatness*, the suffix *-tūdō* denoting *quality*;

(3) *magnanimus*, *great-souled*, combining *magnus* and *animus*.

484. It is interesting further to know that in Latin (as in some other languages) words have grown from what are called *roots*. From one root many words may grow. From the root **no-**, for example (originally **gno-**, from which comes the English *know*) have grown many words. Thus :

ROOT	SUFFIX	STEM	WORD	MEANING
(g) no-	-min-	nōmin-	nōmen	<i>name</i> , that by which a thing is <i>known</i> .
	-bili-	nōbili-	nōbilis	<i>know-able</i> , that is, <i>notable</i> .
	-sc-	nōsc-	nōscō	<i>I am getting to know</i> .

Again, by prefixing **co-** (= **con-** for *cum*, *with*) to **nōmen** we get **cognōmen**, the *with-name* or *last name*, in which the original **g** reappears.

485. Changes in Spelling. In the combination of two words in one, compounds often arise that sound harsh or are difficult to pronounce. This harshness or difficulty is removed by a change in spelling. Thus, **ad** + **capiō** = **accipiō**, where **ad** is changed to **ac-** and **capiō** to **-cipiō** to make a more pronounceable compound. So **ad** + **ferō** = **afferō** (sometimes, however, the **d** is retained unchanged), and **con-** + **faciō** = **cōnficiō**. Changes of this character should be noticed in the word list below (489).

486. Word Groups. Notice that some words of the word list (489) are "indented," that is, are printed a little *to the right* of some word above. This means that the *indented* words in any group are *related* to the word not indented just above them. Thus, **amō**, *I love*, and indented under it **amicus**, and indented under **amicus** are **inimicus** (*in-*, *un-* + **amicus**, *friendly*) and **amicitia**. To show the importance of studying words in groups, notice that under **capiō** six related words are indented, under **dō** five, and under **dūcō** eight, so that these *three* words supply the keys to the meanings of *nineteen* others.

487. A few words in the word list have not occurred in preceding chapters, while one or two others have not been listed

in the reviews. They are given in the list as key words (486) to aid in memorizing related words. Two of these words are rather interesting: *cadō*, *I fall*, and *caedō*, *I fell* (that is, *cause to fall*). Here we see in English and Latin (and, it may be added, in German also) the same difference of meaning due to the same kind of change in the middle vowel of the words.

488. Review of Words (beginning with Chap. 65).

471. alacer, 472. bellō, 473. complūrēs, (cōnfectus), 474. dēditio, 475. dēdō, 476. exīstimō, 477. expugnō, 478. facultās, 479. intellegō, 480. intereā, 481. posterus, 482. praeter, 483. renovō, 484. renūntiō, 485. revertō, 486. satis, 487. subeō, 488. sūmō, 489. ulterior.

489.

WORD LIST

1. Ā, ab	24. angustus	47. bonus	68. centum
2. ācer	25. animus	48. brevis	69. ducenti
3. ācriter	26. annus		70. certāmen
4. aciēs	27. ante	49. Cadō, <i>I fall</i>	71. circum
5. ad	28. apertus	50. accidō	72. circumsistō
6. adimō	29. appellō	51. cāsus	73. cīvis, <i>citizen</i>
7. administrō	30. apud	52. caedō, <i>I fell</i>	74. civitās
8. adversus	31. aqua	53. occidō	75. classis
9. aedificō	32. aquila	54. capiō	76. collis
10. aeger	33. arbor	55. accipiō	77. commeātus
11. aestās	34. arma	56. captivus	78. commūtātiō
12. ager	35. atque	57. incipiō	79. cōnfirmō
13. agō	36. audāx	58. occupō	80. coniūrō
14. agmen (novissim- um)	37. audācia	59. recipiō (reflex.)	81. cōnor
15. alacer	38. audiō	60. suscipiō	82. cōnsilium
16. aliquis ¹	39. augeō	61. caput	83. cōnspectus
17. alius	40. auxilium	62. castra	84. contendō
18. alter	41. auctōritās	63. causa	85. contrā
19. altus	42. aut (aut . . . aut)	64. celer (quā dē c.)	86. cōpia (plural)
20. amō, <i>I love</i>	43. autem	65. celeritās	87. cornū
21. amicus	44. avis	66. celeriter	88. corpus
22. inimicus	45. Bellum	67. cēlō	89. crēber
23. amicitia	46. bellō		90. creō
			91. cum (prep.)

¹ aliquis = ali- (17) + quis (382).

92. cum (conj.)	134. ēgredior	170. fidēs	209. ille
93. cupidus	135. eō	171. filius	210. imperium
94. cūr	136. exeō	172. filia	211. imperō
95. cūra	137. initium	173. fīnis	212. in
96. cūrō	138. iter	(plural)	213. incendō
97. currō	139. subeō	174. fīnitimus	214. incitō
98. cursus	140. subitō	175. fiō	215. incolō
99. concursus	141. trānseō	(certior)	216. iniūria
100. occurrō	142. equus	176. fortis	217. inopia
	143. eques	177. fortiter	218. instruō
101. Dē	144. equester	178. fortuna	219. insula
102. decem	145. equitātus	179. fluō	220. intellegō
103. deinde	146. et	180. flūmen	221. inter
104. dēfendō	(et . . . et)	181. fossa	(sē)
105. dēfessus	147. etiam	182. frāter	222. intereā
106. dēligō	148. ex, ē	183. frūmentum	223. interim
107. dēmōnstrō	149. exercitus	184. fuga	224. ipse
108. dēnsus	150. existimō	185. fugiō	225. is
109. dicō	151. expellō	186. Gerō	226. ibi
110. diēs	152. experior	187. gladius	227. idem
111. trīduum	153. explōrātor	188. grātia	228. ita
112. diū		189. gravis	229. itaque
113. discēdō	154. Faciō	190. Habeō	230. iterum
114. discessus	(certiōrem,	191. dēbeō	231. iubeō
115. dividō	-ēs)	192. prohibeō	232. iungō
116. dō, give, put	155. facilis	193. hic	233. coniungō
117. circumdō	156. facile	194. hiems	
118. dēdō	157. facultās	195. hiemō	234. Lacus
119. dēditiō	158. cōnficiō	196. hiberna	235. lātus
120. mandō	(cōnfectus)	197. homō	236. lēgō, I ap-
121. reddō	159. interficiō	198. nēmō	point
122. domus	160. malefīcium	199. hortor	237. lēgātus
123. dūcō	161. praefficiō	200. cohortor	238. lēgatiō
124. addūcō	162. proficīscor	201. hostis	239. legiō
125. dēdūcō	163. profectiō	202. humilis	240. liber
126. dux	164. ferē		(plural)
127. ēdūcō	165. ferō	203. Iaciō, I	241. licet
128. indūcō	166. afferō	throw	242. lingua
129. perdūcō	167. cōnferō		243. locus
130. redūcō	(reflex.)	204. coniciō	(plural)
131. trādūcō	168. inferō	205. dēiciō	244. longus
132. duo	(bellum)	206. iam	245. longē
	169. referō	207. idōneus	246. loquor
133. Ego	(pedem)	208. ignis	247. lūx

248. Magnus	286. neque (nec)	323. periculum	362. propter
249. magnitūdō	(neque . . .	324. peritus	363. prōvincia
250. magnopere	neque)	325. persuādeō	364. proximus
251. maneō	287. nihil	326. perterreō	365. puer
252. remaneō	288. noceō	327. perturbō	366. pugna
253. manus	289. nōn	328. pēs	367. pugnō
254. mare	290. nōscō, <i>I be-</i>	329. impediō	368. expugnō
255. māter	<i>come ac-</i>	330. impedī-	369. oppugnō
256. mātūrus,	<i>quainted</i>	mentum	
<i>ripe, early</i>	291. cognōscō	(plural)	370. Quam
257. mātūrē	292. nōbilis	331. petō	371. quantus
258. mātūrō	293. nōbilitās	332. impetus	372. quattuor
259. memoria	294. nōmen	333. pilum	373. quadrā-
(teneō)	295. noster	334. plūs, <i>more</i>	gintā
260. mēnsis	(nostrī)	335. complūrēs	374. quārtus
261. mercātor	296. novus	336. polliceor	375. queror
262. miles	297. renovō	337. pōnō	376. quī
263. mille	298. nox	338. pōns	377. quō
(plural)	299. nūntius	339. populus	378. quīdam
264. mittō	300. nūntiō	340. porta	379. quinque
265. committō	301. ēnūntiō	341. portō	380. quīnquā-
(proelium)	302. renūntiō	342. post	gintā
266. praemittō	303. numerus	343. postea	381. quis?
267. moneō		344. posterus	(quō, see
268. mōns	304. Ob	345. postulō	377)
269. moror	305. obses	346. potestās	382. quis
270. mors	306. omnis	347. potior	383. quisquam
271. mōs	307. omnīnō	348. praedor	384. quisque
272. moveō	308. oportet	349. praesidium	385. quoque
273. removeō	309. oppidum	350. praestō	
274. multus	310. opus	(praestat)	386. Recēns
(plural)	311. orior	351. praeter	387. regō, <i>I rule</i>
275. multitūdō	312. adior	352. privō	388. rēx
276. mūniō		353. prō	389. rēgnum
277. mūnitiō	313. Parō	354. primus	390. relinquo
278. mūrus	314. comparō	(primō)	391. reliquus
	315. pars	355. princeps	392. rēs
279. Nam	316. parvus	356. pristinus	(novae)
280. nātūra	317. passus	357. prōcēdō	(quā rē)
281. nāvis	318. pater	358. proelium	393. resistō
282. nauta	319. patior	359. properō	394. respondeō
283. nē	320. paucī	360. propinquus	395. revertō
284. necessārius	321. pāx	361. appropin-	396. rogō
285. neuter	322. per	quō	

397. Saepe	425. sub	452. terra	477. vāllum
398. salūs	426. suī	453. tertius	478. vāstō
399. satis	427. suus	454. timor	479. veniō
400. saucius	428. sum	455. tollō	480. adventus
401. sciō	429. absum	456. tōtus	481. conveniō
402. scūtum	430. dēsum	457. trāns	482. perveniō
403. sed	431. possum	458. trēs	483. vereor
404. senātus	(multum)	459. tuba	484. vetus
405. sequor	432. potēns	460. tum	485. vexō
406. cōnsequor	433. praesum	461. tūtus	486. via
407. insequor	434. supersum		487. vīcus
408. sex	435. summus	462. Ubi	488. videō
409. sīc	436. sūmō	463. ūllus	(videor)
410. signum	437. superō	464. nūllus	489. vigilia
411. silva	438. suspiciō	465. nōnnūllus	490. vincō
412. simul			491. victor
413. sine	439. Tam	466. ulterior	492. victōria
414. socius	440. tantus	467. undique	493. vir
415. sōlus	441. tamen	468. ūnus	494. virtūs
416. spatium	442. tandem	469. ut, utī	495. vīs
417. spēs	443. tēlum	470. uter	496. vocō, <i>I call</i>
418. spērō	444. tempus	471. uterque	497. convocō
419. statim	445. temperō	472. utrimque	498. ēvocō
420. statuō, <i>I fix,</i> <i>settle</i>	446. tempestās	473. ūtor	499. vulnus
	447. teneō		500. vulnerō
421. cōstituō	448. contineō	474. Vacuus	501. volō
422. instituō	449. obtineō	475. vadum	502. nōlō
423. institūtum	450. pertineō	476. valeō	503. vel
424. studeō	451. sustineō	(multum)	

GENERAL REVIEW¹

490.

I

1. 1. Name the last *three syllables* of a word. 2. On which syllable is a word of *two syllables* always accented? 3. In a word of *more than two syllables*, which is the important syllable in determining the accent? 4. Accent the following words:

¹TO THE TEACHER: The questions in this general review are intended merely to be suggestive. Not all classes will be able to complete them in five days, of course.

accidō	alacer	nōbilis	relinquō
occidō	dēmōnstrō	perturbō	reliquus
amicus	fīnitimus	potestās	temperō
afferret	mātūrē	prīstinus	tempestās

II. Review the rules of *agreement* and the uses of the *nominative* (524-530).

III. Give the meanings of the first 100 words in the word list (489).

491.

II

I. 1. How are the *declensions* distinguished? 2. To which declension does each of the following nouns belong: **cāsus**, **gladius**, **tempus**, **signum**, **rēs**, and **eques**? 3. What cases of the *first declension* are alike? of the *second*? 4. Give the *gen. sing.* of **gladius** and of **cōnsilium**. 5. Into what *two classes* are third declension nouns divided? 6. Classify the following nouns (177, III), and give the *abl. sing.* and *gen.* and *acc. pl.* of each: **eques**, **collis**, **victor**, **princeps**, **pōns**, **legiō**, **flūmen**, and **pater** (see Note at the end of 183). 7. Give the *gender rules* for the first, second, fourth, and fifth declensions. 8. How are *adjectives* and *participles* declined (212)? 9. What is *irregular* in the declension of **ūnus**, and what other adjectives have the same irregularity? 10. Into what *two classes* are adjectives of the *third declension* divided? 11. What adjectives belong to each of these classes? 12. Give the *abl. sing.* and the *gen.* and *acc. pl.* of **ācer**, **ācris**, **ācre**; of **fortis**, **forte**; of **recēns**. 13. What are the three adjectives just named called with reference to the *form of their nominative singular*?

II. Review the uses of the *genitive* and the *dative* (531-544).

III. Give the meanings of words 101-202 in the word list (489).

492.

III

I. 1. Decline together **hic cāsus gravis**; **illa rēs nova**; **id flūmen alterum**. 2. Give the *gen.* and *acc. plural* of **iter** and **vis**. 3. Give the *gender rules* for the third declension. 4. Give the rule for the formation of the *comparative* of adjectives, and also of their adverbs; 5. for that of the *superlative* of most adjectives and their adverbs; 6. of the *superlative* of **facilis** and its adverb; 7. of the *superlative* of adjectives in **-er** and their adverbs. 8. Compare in three degrees the irregular adjectives **melior**, **parvus**, and **maximus**; 9. and the adverbs **ācrit**, **audācissimē**, and **facilius**. 10. Decline

the *relative* pronoun. 11. Give in both numbers the *dat.* and *acc.* of the *personal* pronouns. 12. What kind of pronoun is *sē*? Decline it.

II. Review the uses of the *accusative*, *vocative*, and the first division of the *ablative* (545-559).

III. Give the meanings of words 203-303 in the word list (489).

493.

IV.

I. 1. Tell where the following verb forms are found (voice, mood, tense, etc.):

bellāvit	imperātum erat
occupābitur	nūtiāta sunt
praeficiet	accipimus
recipiētur	accēpimus
(ut) bellent	(cum) audīvisset
(nē) inferret	(ut nōn) cōnātus sit
praedandī (causā)	(omnia) agenda erant
habuērunt	proficiscitur
dixerant	praedātī sunt
dēfendēbantur	cōnantur
monuistī	hortābāminī
(nē) occupāret	(ut nōn) incēperit
(ut) praedētur	(cum) hortātus esset
(cōpiis) ēductis	portātūrus est

2. Make a synopsis in the *third per. sing.* of **possum** in the indicative; 3. of **volō** in the subjunctive; 4. of **ferō** in the indicative passive; 5. of **fiō** in the subjunctive. 6. Give the *nom.* and *gen. sing.* of the pres. participle of **eō**; 7. the *dat.* of the gerund of **trānseō**.

II. Review the remaining uses of the *ablative* (560-570).

III. Give the meanings of words 304-404 in the word list (489).

494.

V

I. 1. Name *five* ways of expressing *purpose*. 2. What is a *substantive clause*? 3. a substantive clause of *purpose*? 4. How is *result* expressed? 5. Compare *purpose* and *result* clauses (614, a). 6. What verbs take a *substantive clause of result*? 7. Tell the *meanings* and the *uses* of the conjunction **cum**. 8. Name *three words* that introduce *Yes-and-No*-questions, and tell how they differ

in force. 9. Illustrate the indirect question in English, and tell the *three points* to be considered in the Latin form. 10. What words *introduce* indirect questions? what *mood* is used? what *tenses*? 11. State the law of *sequence of tenses*. 12. What is *indirect discourse*? 13. In further explanation of indirect discourse, tell what you can under the following heads: *predicate noun or adjective*; *pronoun subject*; *reflexive or other pronoun* as subject of the infinitive. 14. Give the rule for the *tenses* of the infinitive in indirect discourse (480).

II. Give the meanings of words 405–503 in the word list (489).

SUPPLEMENTARY SYNTAX

I. TEMPORAL CLAUSES

495. Study 617, *a*, 618, and 619, *a*. What does “temporal” mean? Name *five* conjunctions that may introduce *temporal clauses*. If *ut* or *ubi*, *when*, or *postquam*, *after*, refer to past time, what *mood* and *tense* commonly follow? How is this tense often *translated*? Give the Latin for, *After he (had) said this, he departed*. What common use has *dum*, *while*? How do we *translate* this tense? Say in Latin, *While these things were going on, a messenger arrived*.

(a) What *five* uses of **ut** have you now learned (617, a)?

(b) When **dum** means *until*, and implies *purpose*, what mood follows (619, a)?

496.

EXERCISE

eō, *adverb*, to that place, there **nōn iam**, *adv. phrase*, no longer
rīpa, -ae, F. (river) bank

advertō, -ere, advertī, adversum (ad + **vertō**, I turn), turn to; **animus advertō** (*also written animadvertō*), I turn my attention to, perceive (*with the accusative*)

arbitror, -ārī, arbitrātus sum, think, consider

poscō, -ere, poposcī, —, demand

praecipitō, -āre, etc., throw headlong

I. 1. Eō postquam Caesar pervēnit, obsidēs, arma, servōs¹ (*slaves*) poposcit. 2. Ubi ad ripam Rhēnī pervēnērunt, magnō² numerō interfectō² reliquī sē in flūmen praecipitāvērunt.

3. Dum haec geruntur, Caesarī nūtiātum est equitēs³ hostium tēla in nostrōs conicere.³ 4. Ariovistus,⁴ ut Gallōrum cōpiās proeliō vīcit, obsidēs⁵ nōbilissimī cuiusque⁶ liberōs poposcit. 5. Postquam id animum advertit, Caesar equitātum, quī⁷ sustinēret⁷ hostium impetum, misit. 6. Ubi sē ad profectiōnem parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt, oppida sua omnia incendunt. 7. Postquam dē eius adventū Helvētī certiorēs factī sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt. 8. Ubi ea diēs quam cōstituerat cum lēgātīs vēnit, et lēgātī ad eum revertērunt, negat sē posse iter ūllī per provinciā dare. 9. Exspectāvit,⁸ dum reliquae cōpiae convenirent. 10. Postquam Belgās⁹ nōn iam longē abesse⁹ cognōvit, flūmen exercitum trādūcere¹⁰ mātūrāvit.

II. 1. While these things were going on, the remaining legions arrived. 2. After he perceived that¹¹ the enemy were approaching, he hastened to lead his troops out of camp. 3. When (ubi) Caesar perceived that¹¹ the enemy kept (himself) in¹² camp, he decided to challenge¹³ him to¹⁴ battle. 4. When (ubi) the ambassadors arrived at the camp, he asked what they wanted¹⁵ (volō).

NOTES: 1. For trans. see 404, Note 7. 2. Abl. absolute. 3. Indirect discourse. 4. The name of a German king. 5. Trans. *as hostages*. 6. Gen. of *quisque*, *each* (297, a), but best trans. *all*. 7. Rel. clause of purpose. 8. *He waited*. 9. Indirect discourse. 10. *trādūcō* may (as here) have two objects, one (*exercitum*) with *dūcō*, the other (*flūmen*) with *trā-* (= *trāns*). 11. Remember 657, 1. 12. Omit in Latin. 13. *ēvocō*, *-āre*, etc. 14. *ad*. 15. Ind. question; what mood and tense?

II. CLAUSES OF FEAR

497. Study 616 with *a*, and repeat the rule. Give the Latin for, *I fear that he is coming*; *I feared that he was not coming*. Explain why the two conjunctions apparently interchange their usual meanings here.

498.

EXERCISE

<i>frūmentārius</i> , -a, -um, relating to grain; <i>rēs frūmentāria</i> , grain supply	<i>subsidiū</i> , <i>subsidi</i> , N., reserve, relief, aid; <i>often plural</i>
---	--

circumveniō,	-īre, -vēnī, -ventum (circum + veniō), surround
offendō	-ere, -fendī, -fēsum, hurt, offend
pācō,	-āre, etc., subdue, pacify
supportō,	-āre, etc., (sub + portō), carry up, bring up
timeō,	-ēre, -uī, —, fear, be afraid
trādō,	-ere, -didī, -ditum (trāns + dō), hand over, give up

I. 1. Timēmus nē sociōs offendāmus. 2. Verēbātur ut nostrōs rē frūmentāriā iuvārent (iuvāre, *to help*.) 3. Verēmur ut rēs frūmentāriā supportārī possit. 4. Nē amīcī animū¹ offenderet, verēbātur. 5. Timēbant nē armīs² trāditis³ supplicio afficerentur.⁴ 6. Veritī sunt ut subsidia ad tempus⁵ pervenirent. 7. Belgae, nē omnī Galliā⁶ pācātā⁷ ad eōs exercitus noster addūceretur, verēbantur. 8. Nōn timēbant nē ab hostibus circumvenirentur. 9. Nē hostēs nostrōs impeditōs⁸ adoriantur, timēmus. 10. Nostri, ut hostēs flūminis trānseundī⁹ initium facerent, verēbantur. 11. Veritus est ut oppidānī arma sua trāderent.

II. 1. I fear that we shall be surrounded by the enemy. 2. After we arrived in (= into) the enemy's territory, we were afraid that our men on account of weariness⁸ were not able to withstand an attack. 3. He was afraid that the allies would not bring up the grain supply. 4. The general feared that relief would not arrive on that day. 5. I fear that the horsemen will not spare⁹ our children. 6. We were afraid that the grain supply could not be brought up.

NOTES: 1. *feelings*. 2. Abl. abs., trans. by an *if*-clause. 3. Note the phrases supplicio afficior, *I am punished*, dolore afficior, *I am grieved*, etc. 4. *ad tempus*, *in time*. 5. Abl. abs., trans. *after all Gaul was*, etc. 6. (*when*) *encumbered*. 7. Gen. of gerundive, agreeing with flūminis (458, 459). 8. *lassitudō*, -dinis, F. 9. 539, II, and *a*.

III. CLAUSES OF CONDITION

499. **Conditional Sentences.** A sentence containing a clause introduced by *si*, *if*, or its negative *nisi*, *unless*, *if not*, is called a *conditional sentence* or simply a *condition*. The *if*-clause is

called the *prot'asis*; the principal clause, the *apod'osis*. Conditional clauses are of three kinds:

- I. *sī* (or *nisi*) with *indicative*, any tense.
- II. *sī* (or *nisi*) with *subjunctive*, *primary* tenses (606).
- III. *sī* (or *nisi*) with *subjunctive*, *secondary* tenses (606).

500. Kinds of Condition. Study 626, I, II, III, with examples, and 627.

I. *Name* the first kind of condition. What *mood* and *tenses* are used here? Describe the character of this condition. To what *time* does it refer? Say in Latin, *If he is working, he is happy.*

II. *Name* the second type of condition, and tell the *mood* and *tenses* employed in its expression. How is this type easily recognized in English? To what *time* does it refer? Say in Latin, *If he should work, he would be happy.*

III. *Name* the third type of condition, and tell the *moods* and *tenses* employed. How is this condition *distinguished* from the others? To what *time* does the *imperf.* subjv. refer? the *plup.* subjv.? Say in Latin, *If I were working, I should be happy*, and tell the *time* to which this example refers.

What does *sī quis* mean? *sī quid*? *nisi quis*? *nisi quid*?

501. Translation. The greatest care must be exercised in *translating* conditions. To translate the *indicative* after *sī* by the auxiliary *should* would betray ignorance of the meaning. The conditions are easily recognized *if you know the verb forms* and remember the following summary:

- I. *sī* + *indicative*, trans. by the ordinary *indicative*.
- II. *sī* + *subjv. present* (rarely *perfect*), trans. *should*.
- III. *sī* + *subjv. imperfect* or *pluperfect*, trans. in such a way as to show the *unreality* of the supposed case.

502.

EXERCISE

I. First, tell *mood* and *tense*, and *name* the condition; then *translate* according to the instructions in 501: 1. *Sī dicit.* 2. *Sī dīcat.* 3. *Sī dīxisset.* 4. *Sī hoc dicit, bene est* (*it is well*). 5. *Sī haec dīcat, bene sit.* 6. *Sī hoc dīxisset, bene fuisset.* 7. *Nisi hoc diceret, bene nōn esset.*

II. 1. Si arma tradāmus, vincāmur. 2. Helvētīi, si Caesar adoriātur, fugiant. 3. Si hostēs vim facere¹ cōnāti essent, Caesar prohibuisset. 4. Si quid nōbīs accidat, amīcī nostrī dolōre afficiantur.² 5. Nisi subsidia brevī pervēnerint,³ sustinēre nōn poterimus. 6. Nisi rēs frūmentāria hodiē (= hōc diē) supportāta erit,³ nōs⁴ dēdēmus. 7. Germānī, si nostrōs tum circumvēnissent, vīcissent. 8. "Si quid vultis,"⁵ inquit Caesar, "paucīs diēbus revertimini."⁶ 9. Si Germānī proeliō contendere velint, eis potestās nōn dēsīt.⁷

III. 1. If he is doing these-things, he is pleasing his friends.⁸ 2. If he had done these-things, he would have pleased his friends.⁸ 3. If he comes,³ I shall go. 4. If Gaul should be subdued (pacified), we should lead our army against (ad) the Belgians.

NOTES: For trans., see 467, Note 10. 2. For trans., see 498, Note 3. 3. In Latin, fut. perf., in English, present. 4. Reflexive object of dēdēmus. 5. From volō. 6. Imperative. 7. *would be lacking*; for the case of eis, see 447, II, sentence 4, Note 2. 8. For the case, see 280.

IV. COMPLEX SENTENCES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE

503. Complex Sentence Defined. A complex sentence is a sentence that contains one or more dependent clauses. Thus, *He came when I went*; *I will do this if you wish*; *Because I laughed, he got angry*.

504. Complex Sentences in Indirect Discourse. Study 665, 666. Say in Latin, *He has friends who are in Rome*. Which is the *principal clause* in this sentence? the *dependent clause*? If the sentence be changed to *indirect discourse*, what change of *mood* takes place in the *principal clause*? in the *dependent clause*? Does the *tense* change in either? State the two important laws derived from these changes (666, I and II).

505.

EXERCISE

I. The following sentences are arranged in groups of three, the first in each group (A) being *direct discourse*, the others

(B and C) *indirect discourse*. Apply the principles learned to all italicized words:

- (1) A — Rōmānī hostēs superant, quibuscum pugnant.
 B — Dicō Rōmānōs hostēs *superāre*, quibuscum *pugnent*.
 C — Dixī Rōmānōs hostēs *superāre*, quibuscum *pugnārent*.
- (2) A — Legiōnēs quās mēcum habēbam satis erant.
 B — Dicit *legiōnēs* quās sēcum *habuerit* satis *fuisse*.
 C — Dixit legiōnēs quās sēcum *habuisset* satis *fuisse*.
- (3) A — Equitēs quī praemissī sunt Gallī sunt.
 B — Certior fit *equitēs* quī praemissī *sint* Gallōs *esse*.
 C — Certior factus est equitēs quī praemissī *essent* Gallōs *esse*.
- (4) A — Legiōnēs, quibus dux cōfidit (pres.) erunt fortēs.
 B — Sciō *legiōnēs*, quibus dux *cōfidat*, *futūrōs* *esse* *fortēs*.
 C — Scīvī legiōnēs, quibus dux *cōfideret*, *futūrōs* *esse* *fortēs*.

II. Translate the following from Caesar's Gallic War, Book II, a description of the *Nervii*, a brave people of Belgic Gaul. It begins with the words *sic reperiēbat*, *He discovered the following facts* (literally, *He found out thus*), being equivalent to *He was told the following*:

Nūllum aditum¹ esse ad eōs mercātōribus;² nihil³ patī⁴ vīnī reliquārumque rērum⁵ ad lūxuriā⁶ pertinentium⁷ inferri, quod⁸ his rēbus relanguēscere⁹ animōs et remitti¹⁰ virtutem existimārent; esse hominēs ferōs¹¹ magnaēque virtūtis; increpitāre¹² atque incūsāre¹³ reliquās Belgās, qui sē populō Rōmānō dēdidissent patriamque¹⁴ virtutem prōiēcissent¹⁵; cōfirmāre¹⁶ sēsē neque lēgātōs missūrōs¹⁶ neque ūllam condiōnem¹⁷ pācis acceptūrōs.¹⁶

NOTES: 1. *aditus*, -ūs, M., *access, approach*. 2. Dat. of possessor (*that traders had*). 3. *nihil* with *vīnī* (part. genitive), *nothing of wine = no wine* (*vīnum*, -i, N.). 4. Supply *eōs*, subj. of *patī* (*that they allowed*). Caesar frequently omits the pron. subject of the inf. when the meaning is plain. 5. Same construction as *vīnī*. 6. *high living*. 7. Pres. Part. (*tending*), agreeing with *rērum*. 8. *because*. 9. *became enfeebled*, its subject being *animōs* (*character*). 10. *was impaired*, same construction as *relanguēscere*. 11. *savage*. 12. *reproached and blamed*. 13. *patriam* (here adj.), *ancestral*. 14. *had abandoned*. 15. *asserted*. 16. Supply *esse*. 17. *terms*.

SUPPLEMENTARY READING

506. Idioms. An expression peculiar to a language is called an *idiom* of that language. Glance over the following idioms, and refer to them as needed in the following reading :

1. **Haeduīs dē iniūriīs satisfacere**, (to do enough for the Haedians concerning their wrongs), *to make amends to the Haedians for the wrongs done them.*
2. **novissimum agmen** (newest line of march), *the rear.*
3. **diem ex diē** (day out of day), *from day to day.*
4. **magnā ex parte** (out of a great part), *in a great measure*
5. **magnum iter** (great march), *a forced march.*
6. **novae rēs** (new things), *a change of government, revolution.*
7. **primā lūce** (at the first light), *at daybreak.*
8. **equō admissō** (abl. abs., his horse having been let go), *at full gallop.*
9. **multō diē** (at much day), *late in the day.*
10. **postridiē eius diēi** (on the next day of that day), *on the next day.*
11. **pedem referre** (to bear back the foot), *to fall back, retreat.*
12. **conversa signa inferre** (to bear the turned standards on), *to face about and advance.*
13. **eā tōtā nocte** (in that whole night), *that whole night long.*
14. **quās in partēs** (into what parts), *in what direction.*

THE HELVETIANS TRY THE OTHER ROUTE *

507. Relinquēbātur ūna¹ per Sēquanōs via.¹ Hi² cum iter dare nōllent, Helvētīi lēgātōs ad Dumnorīgē Haeduum misērunt, ut dēprecātor³ esset.⁴ Dumnorix grātiā⁵ et largitiōne⁶ apud Sēquanōs plūrimū poterat, et Helvētīis erat amīcus. Praetereā cupiditāte rēgnī adductus novīs rēbus⁶ studēbat. Itaque rem suscepit, et ā Sēquanīs impetrat, ut⁷ per finēs suōs Helvētiōs ire patiantur.⁷

CAESAR PREPARES TO BLOCK THEM

508. Caesarī renūtiātur, Helvētiōs¹ velle¹ per agrum Sēquanōrum et Haeduōrum iter in Santonum² finēs facere. Hi³

* Notes on the Supplementary Reading begin on page 218.

nōn longē ā Tolōsātium⁴ finibus absunt, quae civitās est in prōvinciā. Intellegēbat, id⁵ magnō cum periculō prōvinciae futurum esse,⁵ cum⁶ Helvētīi bellicōsi et inimici populī Rōmāni essent. Ob eās causās ei mūnitiōnī⁷ quam fēcerat Labiēnum lēgātum praeficit. Ipse in Ītaliā magnīs itineribus⁸ contendit. Duās ibi legiōnēs cōscribit, et trēs legiōnēs, quae circum Aquilēiam hiemābant, ex hibernīs ēdūcit. Cum hīs quinque legiōnibus per Alpēs in ulteriōrem Galliā ire contendit.

COMPLAINTS OF THE HAEDUI AND OTHERS TO CAESAR

509. Helvētīi iam per finēs Sēquanōrum suās cōpiās trādūxerant. In Haeduōrum finēs pervēnerant, eōrumque agrōs populābantur. Haeduī, cum¹ sē suaue² ab iīs dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt rogātum³ auxilium. Aliae quoque gentēs fugā sē ad Caesarem recipiunt, quārum agrī ab Helvētiīs vāstābantur.

THE CROSSING OF THE ARAR

510. Flūmen est Arar, quod per finēs Haeduōrum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum influit. Id Helvētīi trānsibant,¹ nam incrēdibili lēnitātē² fluit. Per explōrātōrēs Caesar certior factus est, Helvētiōs trēs iam partēs³ cōpiārum trādūxisse, et quārtam partem citrā flūmen reliquam esse. Dē⁴ tertiā vigiliā ē castris profectus est. Ad eam partem pervēnit, quae flūmen trānsierat. Eōs impeditōs⁵ et inopināntēs aggressus⁶ magnam partem eōrum concidit. Reliqui sēsē fugae mandāunt.⁷

CAESAR CROSSES IN PURSUIT

511. Hōc proeliō factō,¹ Caesar pontem in² Ararī facit, ut reliquās cōpiās Helvētiōrum cōsequi possit³; ita exercitum trādūcit. Helvētīi repentinō eius adventū commōti lēgātōs ad eum mittunt. "Sī obsidēs," inquit Caesar, "ā vōbīs mihi dābuntur, ut intellegam³ vōs⁴ ea quae pollicēmini factūros esse,⁴

et si Haeduīs dē iniūriīs satisfaciētis,⁵ vōbiscum⁶ pācem faciam.” Lēgātī respondērunt Helvētiōs⁷ ā maiōribus suis ita institūtōs esse,⁷ ut obsidēs accipere, nōn dare cōnsuērint.⁸ Hōc⁹ respōnsō datō⁹ discessērunt.

THE ENEMY ENCOURAGED BY A SLIGHT SUCCESS

512. Posterō diē castra ex eō locō movent. Idem facit Caesar. Equitātum omnem praemittit, quī¹ videant¹ quās in partēs² hostēs iter faciant.³ Quī⁴ aliēnō locō⁵ cum equitātū Helvētiōrum proelium committunt. Paucī dē nostrīs cadunt. Quō proeliō sublātī⁶ sunt Helvētīi. Audācius subsistere et nōnumquam novissimō agmine⁷ proeliō nostrōs lacessere coepērunt.⁸ Caesar suōs ā proeliō continēbat. Satis⁹ habēbat⁹ in praesentiā hostem¹⁰ rapinīs prohibēre. Ita diēs circiter quindecim iter fēcērunt.

THE HAEDUI PROVE FALSE TO THEIR PROMISE

513. Interim cotidiē Caesar Haeduōs¹ frūmentum¹ flāgitābat, quod pollicitī essent.² Diem ex diē³ dūcēbant⁴ Haeduī. Ubi sē⁵ diūtius⁶ dūcī⁵ intellēxit, convocātīs⁷ eōrum principibus,⁷ quōrum magnam cōpiam in castrīs habēbat (in⁸ hīs Diviciācō), graviter eōs accūsāt, quod⁹ tam necessariō tempore ab iīs nōn sublevētur⁹; praesertim cum¹⁰ magnā ex parte¹¹ eōrum precibus adductus¹² bellum suscēperit.

THEIR CONDUCT EXPLAINED

514. Diviciācus amicus erat Rōmānōrum. Dumnorix autem frāter eius Caesarem et Rōmānōs ōderat,¹ quod² eōrum adventū potentia eius dēminūta est. Summā audāciā,³ magnā⁴ apud plēbem propter liberālītātē grātiā,⁵ cupidus⁵ rērum⁶ novārum erat. Itaque Haeduōs dēterrēbat, nē⁷ frūmentum cōfferrent.⁷ Quibus⁸ rēbus cognitis,⁸ Caesar Dumnorīgē ad sē vocat, et monet ut in reliquum tempus omnēs suspiciōnēs vitet.⁹

THE HELVETII HALT: CAESAR ADVANCES

515. Eōdem diē ab explōrātōribus certior factus est, hostēs sub¹ monte cōnsēdisse mīlia² passuum ab ipsius castris octō. Misit qui³ cognōscerent³ quālis esset⁴ nātūra montis, et quālis ascēsus. Renūntiātum est facilem esse.⁵ Dē¹ tertiā vigiliā Labiēnum lēgātum cum duābus legiōnibus summum iugum montis ascendere iubet. Ipse dē quārtā vigiliā eōdem itinere quō hostēs ierant ad eōs contendit. Equitātum omnem ante sē mittit. P. Cōnsidius, quī rei⁶ militāris peritissimus erat, cum explōrātōribus praemittitur.

CONSIDIUS MAKES A MISTAKE

516. Primā lūce,¹ cum summus mōns² ā Labiēnō tenērētur, et ipse ab hostium castris nōn longius mille et quīngentis passibus³ abesset, neque⁴ (ut postea ex captivīs comperit) aut⁴ ipsius adventus aut⁴ Labiēni cognitus esset, Cōnsidius equō admissō⁵ ad eum accurrit. Dīcit montem quem ā Labiēnō occupārī voluerit⁶ ab hostibus tenērī; id sē⁷ ā Gallicis armīs atque insīgnibus cognōvisse. Caesar suās cōpiās in proximum collem subdūcit; aciem instruit. Labiēnus (ut Caesar ei⁸ praecēperat) montē⁹ occupātō⁹ nostrōs exspectābat, proeliōque abstinēbat. Multō diē¹⁰ per explōrātōrēs Caesar cognōvit montem ā suis tenērī, et Helvētiōs castra mōvisse, et Cōnsidium timōre perterritum prō visō¹¹ renūntiāvisse quod¹² nōn vidisset. Eō diē hostēs sequitur, et mīlia¹³ passuum tria ab eōrum castris castra pōnit.

CAESAR MARCHES TO BIBRACTE: THE HELVETII FOLLOW

517. Postridiē eius diēi¹ frūmenti causā iter ab Helvētiīs avertit ac Bibracte² ire contendit. Ea rēs per fugitivōs hostibus nūntiātur. Helvētii Rōmānōs timōre perterritōs discēdere ā sē existimābant. Itaque itinere³ conversō³ nostrōs ā⁴ novissimō agmine insequi ac lacessere coepērunt. Postquam id

animum advertit, cōpiās suās Caesar in proximum collem subdūxit, et equitātum, quī⁶ sustinēret⁶ hostium impetum, mīsit.

THE BATTLE BEGUN IN EARNEST

518. Ipse interim in colle¹ mediō¹ triplicem aciem instrūxit. Sarcinās in ūnum locum cōferri, et eum² ab iis quī in superiōre aciē cōstitēbant mūniri iussit. Helvētīi impedimenta in ūnum locum contulērunt. Ipsī,³ phalange⁴ factā,⁴ sub⁵ primam nostram aciem successērunt.⁵ Caesar suōs cohortātus proelium commisit. Militēs, ē locō superiōre pilis missis, facile hostium phalangem perfrēgērunt. Eā⁶ disiectā,⁴ gladiis⁴ dēstrictis,⁴ in eōs impetum fēcērunt. Tandem hostes vulneribus dēfessī pedem referre⁷ coepērunt ad montem quī circiter mille passūs aberat. Captō⁸ monte et succēdentibus nostris,⁸ Boii et Tulingī, quī agmen hostium claudēbant, ex⁹ itinere nostrōs ab⁹ latere apertō¹⁰ aggressi sunt. Id cōspicātī sunt Helvētīi quī in montem sēsē recēperant. Itaque rūsus instāre et proelium redintegrāre coepērunt.

THE HELVETII DEFEATED

519. Rōmānī conversa¹ signa bipertitō² intulērunt¹: prima et secunda aciēs, ut victis³ resisteret; tertia, ut venientēs⁴ sustinēret. Ita ancipitī proeliō diū atque ācritē pugnātum est.⁵ Cum hostēs nostrōrum impetūs diūtius sustinēre nōn possent, alterī⁶ sē in montem recēperunt, alterī⁶ ad impedimenta sē contulērunt. Hōc tōtō proeliō,⁷ cum⁸ ab hōrā septimā ad vespērum pugnātum sit,⁵ āversum⁹ hostem⁹ vidēre nēmō potuit. Cum diū pugnātum esset,⁵ nostrī impedimentis¹⁰ castrisque¹⁰ potitū sunt. Ibi Orgetorigis filia atque ūnus ē filiis captus¹¹ est. Ex eō proeliō circiter hominum mīlia CXXX superfuērunt. Eā tōtā nocte iērunt. Diē quārtō in finēs Lingonum pervenērunt. Nostrī propter vulnera militum et propter sepultūrā occisōrum eōs sequi nōn potuērunt. Caesar ad Lingonēs litterās nuntiōsque mīsit, nē¹² eōs frūmentō nēve aliā rē iuvārent.¹²

THE SURVIVING HELVETII RETURN HOME

520. Helvētīi, omnium rērum inopiā adducti, lēgātōs dē dēditionē ad eum misērunt. Hi¹ sē ad pedēs² prōiēcērunt et pācem petiērunt. Cum Caesar eōs³ in eō locō quō⁴ tum essent suum adventum exspectāre iussisset, pārūērunt.⁵ Eō⁶ postquam pervēnit, obsidēs, arma, servōs quī ad eōs perfūgissent,⁷ poposcit. Helvētiōs in finēs suōs reverti iussit. Omnibus⁸ frūgibus āmissis,⁸ Allobrogibus imperāvit ut iis frūmentī cōpiam facerent.⁹ Ipsōs oppida vicōsque quōs incenderant restituere iussit. Nam nōluit eum locum unde Helvētīi discesserant vacāre, nē¹⁰ propter bonitātem agrōrum Germānī in Helvētiōrum finēs trānsirent.¹⁰

NOTES ON THE SUPPLEMENTARY READING (507-520)

(507) 1. *ūna via, only the route.* 2. *Hī*, referring to the Sequani, is trans. after *cum* (causal). 3. *their mediator.* 4. Subjv. of purpose. 5. Abl. of cause, *on account of his*, etc. 6. Idiom, 506, 6; for the case, see 280. 7. Subst. clause of result (469).

(508) 1. Indirect discourse after *renūtiātur*, *that the Helvetii wished.* 2. *of the San'tones*, a people in southwestern Gaul. 3. Refers to the Santones. 4. *of the Tolosa'tes*, to whom *quae civitas* in the next clause refers. 5. Ind. discourse. 6. Causal. 7. Dat. with the compound verb *praeſcit* (412). 8. Idiom, 506, 5.

(509) 1. Causal. 2. *sua, their property.* 3. Accusative supine (433).

(510) 1. Notice the tense, denoting incomplete action, *were —ing.* 2. Abl. of manner (263). 3. For the trans. of *partēs* here, see 481, I, sent. 9. 4. See the vocabulary at the end of the book. 5. For the trans. of *impeditōs*, see 498, I, sent. 9. 6. Perf. part. of *aggredior*. 7. Contracted form of the perfect *mandāverunt*, the *v* being dropped, and the two vowels (*ā* and *ē*) contracted.

(511) 1. *Hōc proeliō factō* (abl. abs.) = *post hoc proelium.* 2. *over.* 3. Subjv. of purpose. 4. Ind. discourse after *intellegam*; *vōs* is the subject and *ea* the object of *factūrōs esse*. 5. Idiom, 506, 1. 6. 592. 7. Ind. discourse after *respondērunt*. 8. Perf. subjv. of result, *cōnsuērunt* = *cōnsuēverint*; compare *mandārunt* above (510, Note 7). 9. Abl. absolute; remember 426, a.

(512) 1. Rel. clause of purpose (365). 2. Idioms, 506, 14. 3. Subjv. in ind. question (398). 4. For trans. of the relative, see 382, Note 3. 5. 569, b.

6. *elated*, from *tollō*. 7. Idiom, 506, 2. 8. From *coeipi*, a defective verb. 9. See the vocab. under *habeō*. 10. Sing. for the more usual plural.

(513) 1. For the two accusatives, see 547, Note. 2. Subjv. in a dependent clause in ind. discourse, being a part of what he said in making his demand (665). 3. Idiom, 506, 3. 4. Supply *eum* as object of *dūcēbant*, and note that *dūcō* here does not mean *lead*; see the vocabulary. 5. Ind. discourse, *that he was*, etc. 6. For the meanings of the comparative, see 574. 7. Abl. absolute; see Note on *hōc respōnsō datō* above (511, Note 9). 8. Here, *among*. 9. *quod*, *because*, regularly takes the indic., but compare Note 2 above on *essent*. 10. Causal. 11. Idiom, 506, 4. 12. The part. gives his *reason* for undertaking the war, *because-prompted*; see 422.

(514) 1. From *ōdī*, a defective verb. 2. Conjunction; compare above, 513, Note 9. 3. Abls. of quality (description); supply *homō*. 4. Modifies *grātiā*. 5. *et* omitted before *cupidus*; see 404, Note 7. 6. 536. 7. Trans. *from gathering*. 8. Abl. absolute; for the relative, see above, 512, Note 4. 9. Subst. clause of purpose.

(515) 1. See the vocabulary. 2. Why accusative (548)? 3. Rel. clause of purpose, *to find out* (literally, *(those) who should find out*). 4. Subjv. of ind. question (398). 5. Supply as subject *eum*, referring to *ascēnsus*. 6. Why genitive (536)?

(516) 1. Idiom, 506, 7. 2. For the meaning of *summus mōns*, see 573. 3. Why ablative (559)? 4. *neque . . . aut . . . aut = et . . . neque . . . neque*. 5. Idiom, 506, 8. 6. Perf. subjv., dependent clause in ind. discourse (665). 7. Subject of *cognōvisse*. 8. Why dative (539, III)? 9. Abl. absolute. 10. Idiom, 506, 9. 11. *prō visō*, *as seen* (literally, *for a seen-thing*), *visō* being the perf. pass. part. of *videō*. 12. Rel. pronoun, *what*. 13. 548.

(517) 1. Idiom, 506, 10. 2. Accusative of place to which; see 549, a. 3. Abl. absolute. 4. Here, Latin *from* = English *in* (sometimes *on*). 5. 613.

(518) 1. *half-way up the hill* (literally, *on the middle of*, etc.); compare *summus mōns*, 516, Note 2, above. 2. Refers to *locum*, and is the subject of *mūniri*, the two depending on *iussit* (265). 3. *They themselves*, in contrast as living beings with *impedimenta* preceding. 4. Abl. absolute. 5. *sub . . . successerunt*, *advanced up to*. 6. Refers to *phalangem*. 7. Idiom, 506, 11. 8. In trans. these abls. absolute, note the change of tense, *after they had reached* (perf. part.) *the mountain, and while our men were coming up* (pres. part.). 9. For the meaning, see above, 517, Note 4. 10. *exposed*, that is, the *right flank* because the left was protected by shields.

(519) 1. Idiom, 506, 12. 2. Only the *third line* (*aciēs tertia*) actually wheeled about to face the Boii and Tulingi, who were attacking the Romans on the flank, while the *first* and *second* lines still faced the Helvetii, who were returning to the fight when they saw the Boii and Tulingi engaging the Romans. 3. Trans. by a relative clause, *those-who-had-been-conquered* (the Helvetii).

4. *those-who-were-coming-up* (the Boii, etc.). 5. Remember 245, Note 6. *alteri . . . alteri, one division* (the Helvetii) . . . *the other* (the Boii, etc.); on *alter*, see 589. 7. 569, *b*. 8. 621, 3. 9. *an enemy turned away = an enemy's back*, Caesar's tribute to the bravery of both sides. 10. 562, *a*. 11. A pred. adjective (or participle, as *captus* here) sometimes agrees with the nearer of two subjects. 12. 612, the preceding verb with its objects being equivalent to a verb of *commanding*.

(520) 1. *Hi* refers to the *lĕgātī*. 2. *ad pedēs, at his feet*. 3. Not the *lĕgātī*, of course, but the main body of the Helvetii. 4. *quō = in quō*. 5. From *pārēō*. 6. Adverb, trans. after *pervēnit*. 7. *perfūgissent*: why subjunctive? See above, 513, Note 2. 8. Abl. absolute. 9. Here, *furnish*; why subjunctive? 10. *Nē* here may be translated *lest* (611, *a*).

MISCELLANEOUS MATTER

521. I. WORDS, PHRASES, MOTTOES, PROVERBS

1. *alias*. 2. *alibi*. 3. *affidavit*. 4. *bonus*. 5. *bona fide*. 6. *sub-poena*. 7. *verbatim*. 8. *caret*; *dele*; *stet*. 9. *exit*; *exeunt*. 10. *alma mater*. 11. *ipse dixit*. 12. *post mortem*. 13. *hic iacet*. 14. *sanctum*. 15. *pons asinorum*. 16. *pro bono publico*. 17. *pro tempore*; *ex tempore*. 18. *in nubibus*. 19. *in statu quo*. 20. *vice versa*. 21. *magnum opus*. 22. *facile princeps*. 23. *in memoriam*. 24. *Deo volente*. 25. *ad infinitum*.

26. *E pluribus unum*. 27. *Ad astra per aspera*. 28. *Sic semper tyrannis*. 29. *Multum in parvo*. 30. *Non multa, sed multum*. 31. *Festina lente*. 32. *Humanum est errare*. 33. *Dum vivimus, vivamus*. 34. *Carpe diem*. 35. *Nosce te ipsum*. 36. *Vox populi, vox dei*. 37. *Mens sana in corpore sano*. 38. *De mortuis nil nisi bonum*. 39. *Tempus fugit*. 40. *Si vis pacem, para bellum*. 41. *In pace leones, in proelio cervi*. 42. *Sic transit gloria mundi*. 43. *Labor omnia vincit*. 44. *Fortes fortuna adiuvat*. 45. *Experientia docet stultos*. 46. *Poeta nascitur, non fit*. 47. *Bis dat qui cito dat*. 48. *Possunt quia posse videntur*. 49. *Spectemur agendo*. 50. *Fortiter, fideliter, feliciter*.

EXPLANATIONS: 1. *at another time*. When a man is known by one name at one time, and by another at another time, his second name is called his *alias*. 2. *in another place*. When a person accused of a crime in a certain place proves that he was in another place at the time of the crime, he proves an *alibi*. 3. *He has pledged his faith* (*fidēs*), a sworn statement in writing. 4. *A premium or extra allowance* (should be *bonum*, a good thing). 5. *In good faith*. 6. *Under penalty*, a judicial writ requiring a person to appear at a certain place at a certain time, or else pay the penalty. 7. *Word for word* (from *verbum*, word). 8. Printers' terms: *caret*, *is wanting*; *dele* (imperative), *cancel* (from *dēleō*, destroy); *stet* (subjv.), *let it stand*. 9. Stage terms: *he goes out*; *they go out*. 10. *Fostering mother*, one's college. 11. *He himself said (it)*, a mere assertion without proof. 12. *After death*. 13. *Here lies* —, inscription on tombstones. 14. *A sacred (spot)*, a private room. 15. *Bridge of asses*, applied to a certain proposition in geometry with which beginners have trouble. 16. *For the public good*. 17. *For the time (being)*, temporary. For *ex tempore* see footnote 1 to 178, II. 18. *In the clouds*, uncertain, not clear. 19. *In the position in which (a matter stood before)*, in its former condition. 20. *The terms being reversed*, abl. absolute. 21. *A great work*, one's greatest achievement. 22. *Easily first*, far ahead of one's competitors. 23. *To the memory (of —)*. 24. *God willing* (abl. abs.), if God is willing. 25. *To an endless (extent)*.

26. *Out of many (states) one (nation)*, our national motto. 27. *To the stars through rough (experiences)*, "To the stars through bolts and bars," motto of Kansas. 28. *So always to tyrants*, motto of Virginia. 29. *Much (matter) in little (space)*. 30. *Not many things, but much*, said of one who knows or does a few things well. 31. *Make haste slowly*. 32. *It is human to make mistakes*. 33. *While we live, let us live*. 34. *Catch the day (as it flies)*, improve the present opportunity. 35. *Know thyself*. 36. *The voice of the people (is) the voice of God*. 37. *A healthy mind in a healthy body*. 38. *Concerning the dead (let us say) nothing but (what is) good*. 39. *Time flies*. 40. *If you wish peace, prepare for war*. 41. *In peace, lions; in battle, deer*. 42. *So passes away the glory of the world*. 43. *Work conquers all things*. 44. *Fortune helps the brave*. 45. *Experience teaches (even) fools*. 46. *The poet is born, not made* (by education). 47. *He gives twice who gives quickly*. 48. *They can because they think they can*. 49. *Let us be tried (or judged) by our action*. 50. *Bravely, faithfully, successfully*.

522. II. COMMON ABBREVIATIONS EXPLAINED

A.B. (or B.A.), *artium baccalaureus, Bachelor of Arts*. A.M. (or M.A.), *artium magister, Master of Arts*. LL.B., *legum baccalaureus, Bachelor of Laws*. LL.D., *legum doctor, Doctor of Laws*. M.D., *medicinae doctor, Doctor of Medicine*. Ph.D., *philosophiae doctor, Doctor of Philosophy*. B.S., *bacca-*

laureus scientiae, *Bachelor of Science*. D.D., divinitatis doctor, *Doctor of Divinity*.

A.M., ante meridiem, *before noon*. P.M., post meridiem, *after noon*. A.D., anno domini, *in the year of our Lord*. A.U.C., anno urbis conditae, *in the year (of the built city) since the city was built*. Coss., consulibus (with the consuls' names in ablative absolute), *in the consulship of* —. S.P.Q.R., senatus populusque Romanus, *the senate and Roman people*.

cf., confer (imperative), *compare*. e.g., exempli gratia (= causa), *for (the sake of) example*. i.e., id est, *that is*. etc., et cetera, *and the rest*. et al., et alii, *and others*. id., idem, *the same*. ibid., ibidem, *in the same place*. N.B., nota bene, *note well*. Q.E.D., quod erat demonstrandum, *which was to be proved*. q.v., quod vide, *which see*. ob., obiit, *he (or she) died*. per an., per annum, *by the year*. per ct., per centum, *by the hundred*. P.S., post scriptum, *written afterwards*. viz., videlicet, *namely*. vs., versus, *against*.

523.

III. NUMERALS

From One to Twenty

CARDINALS	ORDINALS
1. ūnus, -a, -um, <i>one</i>	prīmus, -a, -um, <i>first</i>
2. duo, duae, duo	secundus <i>or</i> alter
3. trēs, tria	tertius
4. quattuor	quārtus
5. quinque	quīntus
6. sex	sextus
7. septem	septimus
8. octō	octāvus
9. novem	nōnus
10. decem	decimus
11. ūndecim	ūndecimus
12. duodecim	duodecim
13. tredecim	tertius decimus
14. quattuordecim	quārtus decimus
15. quīndecim	quīntus decimus

CARDINALS

16. sēdecim
 17. septendecim
 18. duodēvigintī
 19. ūndēvigintī
 20. vigintī

ORDINALS

- sextus decimus
 septimus decimus
 duodēvicēsīmus
 ūndēvicēsīmus
 vicēsīmus

Multiples of Ten Above Twenty

- | | |
|------------------|----------------|
| 30. trīgintā | tricēsīmus |
| 40. quadrāgintā | quadrāgēsīmus |
| 50. quīnquāgintā | quīnquāgēsīmus |
| 60. sexāgintā | sexāgēsīmus |
| 70. septuāgintā | septuāgēsīmus |
| 80. octōgintā | octōgēsīmus |
| 90. nōnāgintā | nōnāgēsīmus |

One Hundred and Multiples of a Hundred

- | | |
|-----------------------|-------------------|
| 100. centum | centēsīmus |
| 200. ducentī, -ae, -a | ducentēsīmus |
| 300. trecentī | trecentēsīmus |
| 400. quadringentī | quadringentēsīmus |
| 500. quīngentī | quīngentēsīmus |
| 600. sescentī | sescentēsīmus |
| 700. septingentī | septingentēsīmus |
| 800. octingentī | octingentēsīmus |
| 900. nōngentī | nōngentēsīmus |
| 1000. mille | millēsīmus |
| 2000. duo milia | bis millēsīmus |

Compound Numerals

- | | |
|--|---|
| 21. vigintī ūnus, <i>or</i>
ūnus et vigintī | vicēsīmus prīmus, <i>or</i>
ūnus et vicēsīmus |
| 22. vigintī duo, <i>or</i>
duo et vigintī | vicēsīmus secundus, <i>or</i>
alter et vicēsīmus |
| 28. duodētrīgintā | duodētricēsīmus |
| 29. ūndētrīgintā | ūdētricēsīmus |
| 125. centum vigintī quīque | centēsīmus vicēsīmus quīntus |
| 1439. mille quadringentī ūndē-
quadragintā | millēsīmus quadringentēsīmus
ūdēquadragēsīmus |

PART III: SYNTAX

(FOR REFERENCE USE IN PART II)

AGREEMENT

524. There are four rules of *agreement*, all requiring that some part of speech shall agree in certain respects with either a *noun* or a *pronoun*. Thus :

- I. *Verb* with subject (525).
- II. *Adjective* with noun or pronoun (526).
- III. *Noun* with noun or pronoun (527).
- IV. *Pronoun* with antecedent (528).

I. VERB WITH SUBJECT

525. A finite verb agrees with its subject in number and person. *I was working, they were playing, Ego labōrābam, illudēbant.*

(a) Two or more *singular* subjects joined by *and, et*, usually require a *plural* verb.

II. ADJECTIVE WITH NOUN

526. An adjective (or participle) agrees in gender, number, and case with the noun (or pronoun) which it modifies. The adjective may be either a *predicate* or an *attributive* adjective. *The road was long, via erat longa* (pred. adj.) ; *of the long road, viae longae* (attrib. adj.).

III. NOUN WITH NOUN

527. A noun that explains another noun (or a pronoun), denoting the *same* person or thing, is in the same case with the noun (or pronoun) which it explains. The explaining noun

may be either a *predicate* noun or an *appositive*. *Labienus is a lieutenant*, *Labienus est lēgātus* (pred. noun); *with Labienus the lieutenant*, *cum Labiēnō lēgātō* (appositive). (Compare this rule with that of 526.)

IV. PRONOUN WITH ANTECEDENT

528. A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but its *case* depends upon its own construction in the relative clause. *The man who praises you is coming*, *vir quī tē laudat venit*; *the man whom you praise is coming*, *vir quem laudās venit*. Here both *quī* and *quem* are masculine and singular, because their antecedent *vir* is masculine singular; but in the second example *vir* (subj. of *venit*) is *nominative*, while *quem* (obj. of *laudās*) is *accusative*.

SYNTAX OF THE CASES

NOMINATIVE

529. Subject. The subject of a finite verb is in the nominative. *The Roman conquers*, *Rōmānus vincit*.

530. Predicate Nominative. A predicate noun is in the nominative if its subject is in the nominative (527). *Vergil was a poet*, *Vergilius erat poēta*.

(a) Since the subject of the infinitive must be in the accusative (550), its predicate noun must also be in the accusative. *I know Vergil to be a poet*, *sciō Vergilium poētam esse*.

GENITIVE

531. General Rule. A noun limiting another noun, denoting a *different* person or thing, is in the genitive. (Compare this rule with that of 527.)

532. Possessive Genitive. The genitive may denote possession. *The lieutenant's sword*, *lēgātī gladius*.

533. Partitive Genitive. The genitive may denote the whole of anything of which a part is mentioned. *A large number of prisoners, magnus captivōrum numerus.*

(a) Sometimes, instead of the partitive genitive, **ex** with the ablative is used, especially with cardinal numerals, *one, two, three, ūnus, duo, trēs*, etc. *One of the boys, ūnus ex pueris* (= ūnus puerōrum). **Dē** may also be so used. *A few of our men, pauci dē nostris.*

534. Genitive of Quality (or Descriptive Genitive). A noun in the genitive, if modified by an adjective, may express a quality of a person or thing. *A man of great wisdom, vir sapientiae magnae.*

(a) A noun alone in the genitive is never so used. Thus, *a man of wisdom* in Latin is simply **vir sapiēns**, *a wise man*.

(b) The ablative may also be used to express a quality (564).

535. Objective Genitive. The genitive may be used with nouns of *action* or *feeling* to denote the object of the action or feeling. *The desire for royal-power, rēgnī cupiditās.*

(a) That this genitive does denote the object of the noun, is clear from the sentence, *He has-a-desire-for royal power = He desires royal power*, in which *royal power* is the direct object of the verb *desires*.

536. The objective genitive is also used with adjectives meaning *desirous (of)*, *full (of)*, *skilled (in)*, *unskilled (in)*, and the like. *Desirous of royal-power, rēgnī cupidus.*

DATIVE

537. General Rule. The dative is the case of the person *interested* in an action, or *toward whom* the action is directed. It is usually translated *to* or *for*.

(a) When *to* implies motion, **ad** or **in** with the accusative must be used instead of the dative.

538. Indirect Object. The dative of the indirect object denotes the person or thing *to* or *for whom* something is done. *The man gave (to) the boy a sword, vir puerō gladium dedit.*

539. The indirect object is used with *transitive*, *intransitive*, and *compound verbs* as follows :

I. With *transitive* verbs. These verbs may have a direct as well as an indirect object, as in the example above (538). Such are the verbs meaning *give*, *owe*, *promise*, *show*, etc.

II. With *intransitive* verbs. These verbs require special attention, because their English meanings are often transitive verbs. The verb *please*, for example, is *transitive* in English, taking a direct object (accusative), but is *intransitive* in Latin, requiring an indirect object (dative). *This pleased the man*, *hoc virō placuit*.

(a) Of these intransitive verbs, the following are more or less frequent in Caesar, and should be memorized :

VERBS	MEANINGS	USUAL TRANSLATION
imperō	(give orders)	<i>command</i>
noceō	(be harmful)	<i>harm</i>
parcō	(be sparing)	<i>spare</i>
pāreō	(be obedient)	<i>obey</i>
persuādeō	(make sweet)	<i>persuade</i>
placeō	(be pleasing)	<i>please</i>
resistō	(make a stand)	<i>resist</i>
studeō	(show zeal)	<i>be eager</i>

III. With *compound* verbs. *Many* (not all) verbs compounded with certain prepositions take a dative of the indirect object. *They surpass all*, *omnibus praestant* (= *prae* + *stant*). These prepositions are :

ad, **ante**, **circum**, **con-**¹ **in**, **inter**,
ob, **post**, **prae**, **prō**, **sub**, and **super**.

540. When a *transitive* verb is compounded with one of the prepositions named above (III), the compound may have both a *direct* and an *indirect* object. *He put the lieutenant in charge of the camp*, *castris lēgātum praefecit*. Here *lēgātum* is the direct object of the simple verb *fēcit*, and *castris* the indirect object required by the prefix *prae*.

¹ **con-** is a form of the preposition **cum** found only in compounds.

541. Dative of the Possessor. The dative with forms of *sum* may denote possession. The thing possessed is the subject (nominative). *The boy has a sword, puerō est gladius* (to the boy is a sword). Practically, *dative + est = nominative + habet*.

(a) Nearly all compounds of *sum* (*adsum, dēsum*, etc.) may take a dative. Thus, *Puerō dēest gladius, the boy lacks a sword*, in which *dēest = nōn est* (541).

(b) *Absum, I am distant, away*, takes *ab* or *ā* with the ablative. *They were four miles distant from the camp, millia passuum quattuor ā castris aberant*.

542. Dative of the Agent. The dative is used with the gerundive (651) to denote the person *by whom* something must be done. *I must do this, hoc mihi faciendum est*.

543. Dative of Purpose. The dative is used to show the purpose of an action or the object which it serves. This dative is often combined with another dative of the person interested, the two being called the *double dative*. *They sent cavalry as-an-aid to Caesar, equitātum auxiliō Caesarī misērunt*. Here *auxiliō, for an aid*, is the dative of purpose, and *Caesarī, to Caesar*, is the dative of the person interested.

544. Dative with Adjectives. The dative is used with adjectives meaning *near, like, friendly, suitable*, and the like, with their opposites. *They are nearest to the Germans, proximi sunt Germānis*.

ACCUSATIVE

545. Direct Object. The direct object of a transitive verb is in the accusative. *The father loves his son, pater filium amat*.

(a) The *direct object* of a verb in the active voice becomes the *subject* of the same verb when changed to the passive. *The son is loved by his father, filius ā patre amātur*.

546. An intransitive verb, when compounded with a preposition, may become transitive. *He crossed the river, flumen trānsiit* (= trāns + iit).

547. Two Accusatives. Verbs meaning *make, call, choose*, and the like take two accusatives referring to the *same* person or thing. One accusative is the direct object, the other a predicate accusative. *They elect Caesar consul, Caesarem cōnsulem creant*, in which *Caesarem* is the direct object, and *cōnsulem* the predicate accusative.

(a) An adjective may be used instead of the noun as the second or predicate accusative. *This rendered (made) the camp safe, hoc castra tūta reddēbat.*

(b) When the verbs named above (547) become passive, the direct object of the active becomes subject (by 545, a), and the predicate accusative becomes a predicate nominative. *Caesar was elected consul, Caesar cōsul creātus est.*

NOTE. Some verbs meaning *ask* or *demand* take two accusatives, one of the person, the other of the thing. *He kept-demanding grain of the Haeduans, Haeduōs frūmentum flāgitābat.*

548. Accusative of Extent. The accusative is used to denote duration of time and extent of space. The former answers the question, *How long?* the latter the question, *How far?* *He remains a few days, paucōs diēs manet; the town was eight miles away, oppidum milia passuum octō aberat.*

549. Place to Which (or Place Whither). In or ad with the accusative is used to denote the place to which. *He led his troops into Gaul, in Galliam cōpiās dūxit.*

(a) With names of towns and small islands, and with *domum*, *home*, and *rūs*, *to the country*, the preposition must be omitted. *He returned to Rome (home, to the country), Rōmam (domum, rūs) rediit.*

550. Accusative-Subject. The subject of the infinitive is in the accusative. *That he should remain is well* (him-to-remain is well), *eum manēre bene est*, in which *eum* is the subject of *manēre*, the present inf. of *maneo*.

551. Accusative with Prepositions. Many prepositions take the accusative. *Into Gaul, in Galliam; to-the-foot-of the mountain, sub montem.*

VOCATIVE

552. The vocative is the case of address. It has no grammatical connection with the rest of the sentence. *Listen, my son, audī, mī fili.*

ABLATIVE

553. The ablative does the duty of *three cases*, originally having different forms: I. the *true ablative* (from *ablātus*, *taken from*, a name given to it by Julius Caesar), denoting *separation*, and expressed in English usually by *from*; II. an *instrumental* case, expressed by *with* or *by*; III. a *locative* case, expressed by *at* or *in*.

I

554. Ablative of Separation. The ablative of separation is used with verbs and adjectives of *separation, abstaining, removing*, and the like. A preposition is often used (*ab, dē, or ex*), and regularly used when the ablative denotes a *person* (80, c). *The Garonne separates the Gauls from the Aquitanians, Garumna Gallōs ab Aquitānīs dividit* (prep. used); *they keep them from their territory, suis finibus eōs prohibent* (no prep. used); *free (adj.) from care, liber cūrā* (no prep. used).

(a) With verbs and adjectives meaning *free* the preposition is regularly omitted (except with ablatives denoting *persons*). *He freed his country from danger, periculō patriam liberāvit.* See also the third example in 554.

555. Ablative of Place Whence. Motion from a place is expressed by *ab, dē, or ex* with the ablative. *The ship sails out of the harbor away-from the land, nāvis ex portū ā terrā nāvigat.*

(a) With names of *towns* and *small islands*, also with *domō, from home*, and *rūre, from the country*, the preposition must be omitted. *He is coming from Rome (from home, from the country), Rōmā (domō, rūre) venit.*

556. Ablative of the Agent. The personal agent with a passive verb is expressed by *ab* or *ā* with the ablative. *The son is loved by his father, filius ā patre amātur.*

557. Ablative of Cause. Cause is expressed by the ablative, usually without any preposition. *He did this from fear, timōre hoc fēcit.*

(a) This ablative is variously translated: *on account of, by reason of, from*, etc.

558. Ablative of Specification. The ablative is used to show in what respect something is true. *They surpass the rest in valor, reliquōs virtūte praecedunt.*

559. Ablative of Comparison. *Than* after a comparative is expressed by the ablative when *quam*, *than*, is omitted. (But see *a* below.) *The father is taller than the son, pater filiō altior est.* Here *filiō* = *quam filius* (nominative).

(a) This ablative may be used only when the two things compared would be in the *same case* if *quam* were used.

II

560. Ablative of Accompaniment. Accompaniment is expressed by the preposition *cum*, (*together*) *with*, and the ablative. *Marcus is in town with friends, Mārcus cum amicis in oppidō est.*

(a) In military expressions, the ablative of accompaniment is sometimes used without the preposition *cum*. *He pushes on with all his forces, omnibus cōpiis contendit.*

561. Ablative of Manner. The manner of an action is expressed by *cum*, *with*, and the ablative. If an adjective qualifies the ablative, *cum* may (or may not) be omitted. *He writes with care, cum cūrā scribit* (no adj.); *he writes with great care, magnā (cum) cūrā scribit* (adj. used).

(a) This ablative answers the question, *How?* and may often be translated by an English adverb. Thus, *with care* = *carefully*; *with great care* = *very carefully*.

562. Ablative of Means or Instrument. The means by which, or the instrument with which, one does something is expressed by the ablative without a preposition. *They were fighting with javelins, piliis pugnabant.*

(a) Five deponent verbs take this ablative (562) instead of a direct object. *He uses a sword, gladiō ūtitur.* This originally meant, *He employs-himself with a sword.* The five deponents thus used are *ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior, vēscor*, and some of their compounds.

563. Ablative of the Degree of Difference. When two objects are compared, the ablative is used to show *by how much* one exceeds the other in a certain quality. *The man is taller than the boy by one foot, vir ūnō pede altior est quam puer,* where *ūnō pede* shows the amount or degree of difference in the heights of the two.

564. Ablative of Quality (or Descriptive Ablative). A noun in the ablative, if modified by an adjective, is used to denote a quality of some person or thing. *A boy of great popularity, puer grātiā magnā.*

(a) An ablative without a qualifying adjective is never so used. (Compare 534, a.)

(b) The genitive may also be used to describe (534).

565. Ablative Absolute. A noun in the ablative and a participle agreeing with it are used to denote *time, cause, or some other circumstance* of an action. This is called the *ablative absolute*. Whether the phrase in a given example denotes *time* or *cause* or what not, must be decided from the meaning of the whole sentence in which it occurs.

(a) The equivalent English construction is the *nominative absolute*. Thus, when we say, *The game (being) finished, we went home*, the expression *the game finished* is a short way of saying *When the game was finished* (a time-clause) or *Because the game was finished* (a clause of cause), or the like. In Latin these words would be in the ablative. Thus:

Urbe incensā (abl. abs.), **militēs discesserunt**, *the city having been set on fire*, or *when the city was set on fire*, or *Because the city was set on fire, the soldiers departed*. Here the words **urbe** (noun) and **incensā** (participle) are in the ablative absolute.

566. Instead of a *noun* with a *participle* we may have a *pronoun* with an *adjective* or *noun*, or even *two nouns*, in the ablative absolute.

567. Read the following examples of the ablative absolute very carefully. The first English version in each sentence (enclosed in parentheses) is literal, word for word, and is called a *metaphrase* rather than a translation. Avoid the metaphrase, and translate by such a phrase or clause as will reproduce the meaning in good English.

NOUN AND

PARTICIPLE: **Duce interfectō, fugimus**,
(*The leader having been killed*),
When our leader was killed, or
Because our leader was killed, we fled.

PRONOUN AND

PARTICIPLE: **Hōc factō, gaudēbimus**,
(*This having been done*),
After this is done, or
If this is done, we shall rejoice.

NOUN AND

ADJECTIVE: **Rēge vivō, hoc factum est**,
(*The king living*),
While the king was living, or
In the king's lifetime, this happened.

TWO NOUNS:

Caesare duce, victi sumus,
(*Caesar leader*),
Although Caesar was our leader, or
Under Caesar's leadership, we were conquered.

Observe in the last two examples the pres. part. *being* is understood, the Latin verb **sum** having no present participle.

568. The ablative absolute is never used if its noun (or pronoun) refers to some *person or thing named elsewhere* in the

sentence. This is clear from its name, "absolute," which means "absolved" or free from such a connection. For example: "*When the city was captured, it was set afire.*" Here the italicized words must not be put in the abl. abs. form, because the noun *city* and the pronoun *it* refer to the same thing, the pronoun being the subject of the main verb, *was set afire*. In Latin this sentence would be *Urbs capta incēnsa est*, in which *urbs* as subject is in the nominative, and *capta* must be in the nominative to agree with it.

III

569. Ablative of Place Where. Place where (or at which) is expressed by *in* with the ablative. *The enemy were in the city, hostēs in urbe fuērunt.*

(a) With names of *towns* and *small islands*, also with *domi*, at *home*, and *ruri*, in the *country*, place where is expressed by the *locative*. The locative of singular nouns in the first and second declensions (as *Rōma* and *Corinthus*) is like the *genitive*; in the third declension and in all plural nouns the locative is like the *ablative*.

(b) A noun modified by *tōtus*, *whole*, is often used without the preposition *in* to denote place where. *In the whole (of) Italy, tōtā Italiā.* So also the noun *locus*, *place*, when modified by a pronoun or adjective, often omits the preposition. *In an unfavorable position, aliēnō locō; in some places, nōnnūllis locis.*

570. Time When or Within Which. The time when or within which an event occurs is expressed by the ablative without a preposition. *He came on the third day, diē tertiō vēnit; within a few years they will conquer, paucis annis vincent.*

SYNTAX OF THE ADJECTIVE

571. Agreement. See 526.

572. Adjectives Used as Nouns. Adjectives, especially in the *plural masculine* and *neuter*, are frequently used as nouns. The word *men* may be supplied with *masculine* and *things* with

neuter adjectives. *The mountain was held by his (men), mōns ā suis tenēbātūr ; all things change, omnia mūtantur.*

573. Partitive Adjectives. Certain adjectives denoting *place* or *time*, though they agree with their nouns, are translated *part of*. *The mountain top, the highest (part of the) mountain, summus mōns ; at daybreak, at the first (part of the) light, primā lūce.* These adjectives are *primus, first; medius, middle; extrēmus, last; imus or infimus, lowest; summus, highest; reliquus, remaining.*

574. Comparatives. The comparative of adjectives and adverbs is sometimes translated *rather, somewhat, too*, or the like. *The soldier was rather-bold, too-bold, etc., miles erat audācior (adj.) ; he himself was too-far away, ipse longius aberat.*

575. Superlatives are sometimes translated *very*. *A very-high mountain, altissimus mōns.*

576. Quam and a Superlative (with or without forms of *possum*) is translated *as . . . as possible*, the dotted line standing for the English positive. *As great a number as possible, quam maximus numerus ; they collect as many ships as possible, nāvēs quam plūrimās (possunt) cōgunt.*

SYNTAX OF THE PRONOUN

577. Agreement. See 528. Pronouns used as adjectives follow the rule for adjective agreement (526).

578. Personal Pronouns, when used as *subjects* of finite verbs (nominative), are omitted unless emphatic, used in contrasts, etc. *I was working, labōrābam* (pron. omitted) ; *I was working, they were playing, ego labōrābam, ii lūdēbant* (prons. used).

579. Latin has no personal pronoun of the third person (*he, she, it, they*). Its place is supplied chiefly by *is, ea, id* ; also, by *hic, haec, hoc* and *ille, illa, illud*.

580. **Is, ea, id** is especially common as the antecedent of the relative. *He who loves me is my friend, is quī mē amat amicus est.* Note **is quī**, *he who*; **ea quae**, *she who*; **id quod**, *that which*; plural, **ii quī** (M.), **eae quae** (F.), **ea quae** (N.), *they who*, etc.

581. **Reflexive Pronouns** are used in the predicate of a sentence to refer to the subject of the sentence. *Cicero praises himself, Cicerō sē laudat.*

582. In the first and second persons, the reflexives are the same as the corresponding personal pronouns, except that the reflexive has no nominative (581). The term "reflexive," however, is usually applied more especially to the third person forms, **sui, sibi, sē** (**sēsē**) and the possessive adjective **suus, sua, suum**, *his, her, its, or their (own)*.

583. When the possessive *his, her, its, or their* refers to the subject of a sentence, it is expressed (if at all) by the reflexive **suus, sua, suum** (581). When it refers to somebody else, it is expressed by **eius, his, her, its, or eorum, eorum, their**, the genitives of **is, ea, id**. The following are good illustrations from Caesar, who is here speaking of the Helvetians and the Germans: **Helvētīi suis finibus eos prohibent**, *the Helvetians keep them (the Germans) out of their (the Helvetians') territory*; **in eorum finibus bellum gerunt**, *they (the Helvetians) wage war in their (the Germans') territory*.

584. **Demonstrative Pronouns** are the following: **hic, haec, hoc**, *this (of mine or near me)*; **iste, ista, istud**, *that (of yours or near you)*; **ille, illa, illud**, *that (of his, hers, etc.) or yonder*. **Ille** with proper names is usually translated *the well-known, the famous*, etc. **Magnus ille Alexander**, *the well-known Alexander the Great*.

(a) In speaking of two persons or things, the *former* is regularly **ille** and the *latter* is **hic**.

585. The Intensive Pronoun is *ipse, ipsa, ipsum, -self* (*myself, yourself, etc.*). Its translation depends upon the person referred to. *Ipse dicō, I myself say, ipse dicis, you yourself say, ipse dicit, he himself, etc.*

(a) *Ipse* often *distinguishes* some person from inferiors. Thus, in Caesar it often refers to Caesar as *commander-in-chief* in contrast with his *officers*. *He put a lieutenant in charge of the fortification; he-himself (= Caesar) pushed on to Italy, mūitiōni lēgātum prae-fēcit; ipse (= Caesar) in Italiam contendit.*

586. Distinguish between the intensive (*ipse*) and the reflexive (*sē*). In English the two are alike in form (*himself*). The intensive *emphasizes* or *distinguishes*; the reflexive simply *refers back to the subject*, who is represented as acting on himself. *He-himself* (nobody else) *wounds the enemy, ipse hostem vulnerat*, but *He wounds himself* (reflexive), *sē vulnerat*.

(a) For emphasis both intensive and reflexive may be used in the same sentence. *He (himself) wounds himself, sē ipse vulnerat.*

587. Relative Pronouns are more common in Latin than in English. In Latin a sentence often begins with a relative, referring to some antecedent in a preceding sentence. Such a relative should be translated by an English *personal* or *demonstrative* pronoun. Thus, *quā dē causā, for this reason; quī cum vēnisset (who when, etc.), when he had come.*

588. Other Pronouns. The interrogative and indefinite pronouns, which are alike in form (*quis, quid*), are easily distinguished in actual use. The interrogative asks a *question*; the indefinite is rarely found except after *sī, nisi, nē*, and *num*. Both are used in the following sentence: *Sī quis hostium mē vidēbit, quis mē servābit, if any one of the enemy sees (shall see) me, who will save me?*

589. The pronominal adjectives *alter, the other*, and *alius, another*, deserve special attention. *Alter* is used in speaking of *two* persons, and *alius* of *more* than two. *Alter . . . alter*

means *one . . . the other*; *alii . . . alii*, *some . . . others*. *Alter laudat*, *alter nōn laudat*, *one praises, the other does not*; *alii pugnant*, *alii fugiunt*, *some fight, others flee*.

(a) Notice that the repetition of *alius* in one sentence requires *two sentences* for the English translation. *Alius aliud facit* (another does another-thing), *one does one thing, another another thing*.

590. *Inter sē* is a common phrase that should never be translated literally, but rather *each other, one another*, with or without an appropriate preposition (*from, with, at*, etc.). *Inter sē differunt*, *they differ from one another*.

(a) Instead of *sē* in the phrase *inter sē* other reflexives may be used. *Inter nōs amāmus*, *we love each other*; *inter vōs pugnatīs*, *you fight with one another*.

SYNTAX OF THE PREPOSITION

591. Most Latin prepositions take the *accusative*; about one third as many take the *ablative*. *In* and *sub* take either case according to the meaning: the *accusative* of the *place to which* something moves, and the *ablative* of the *place at which* something is or occurs. Thus:

ACCUSATIVE: <i>in, into, to</i> ;	<i>sub, up to, to the foot of</i>
ABLATIVE: <i>in, in, on</i> ;	<i>sub, under, at the foot of</i>

592. *Cum*, (*together*) *with*, is often appended as an enclitic (29) to certain pronouns. Notice the effect on the accent in the last three forms below:

<i>mēcum</i> , <i>with me</i>	<i>nōbīs'cum</i> , <i>with us</i>
<i>tēcum</i> , <i>with you</i>	<i>vōbīs'cum</i> , <i>with you</i>
<i>sēcum</i> , <i>with himself, with themselves</i>	<i>quibūs'cum</i> , <i>with whom</i>

SYNTAX OF THE VERB

SIMPLE SENTENCES

593. Definitions. A *simple* sentence has but one subject and one predicate, as, *The clock struck one.* A *compound* sentence consists of two or more simple sentences joined by such conjunctions as *and, or, nor, but*, etc., as, *The clock struck one and my friend went home.* A *complex* sentence contains one or more dependent (or subordinate) clauses, as, *When the clock struck one, my friend went home.* In the last sentence, *when the clock struck one* is the dependent or subordinate clause, and the main statement, *my friend went home*, the principal clause.

Simple sentences are treated below under the following heads:

- I. Interrogative Sentences.¹
- II. Imperative Sentences.
- III. The Subjunctive used Independently.

I. INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES

594. Direct Questions in English are of two kinds: (1) those introduced by interrogative words, as *who? what? where?* (2) those not introduced by interrogative words, but recognized as questions merely by their *word order* or by the inflection of the voice. Questions of the second kind are called *Yes-* and *No-*questions, because they are answered with *Yes* or *No*.

595. In Latin, questions of the first sort (594) are introduced, as in English, by such words as *quis, who? quid, what? ubi, where?* But, unlike English, Latin has a set of words to introduce *Yes-* and *No-*questions: *-ne, nōne, and num.*

596. -Ne is attached to the emphatic word of a question (usually the *verb*), which usually then stands first in the sentence.

¹ Declarative sentences (that is, *statements*) do not call for separate treatment here.

A question with *-ne* merely asks for information, and does not suggest either *Yes* or *No* for answer. *Is he your friend, estne amicus tuus?* (He may or he may not be.)

597. *Nōne* is made up of *nōn*, *not*, and *-ne*. It suggests the answer *Yes*, and generally stands first. Notice the word *not* in the English. *Is he NOT your friend, nōne amicus tuus est?* (He surely must be.)

598. *Num* suggests *No*, and usually stands first. *Was Caesar a Greek, num Caesar erat Graecus?* (He was not, was he?)

II. IMPERATIVE SENTENCES¹

599. Commands are expressed by the imperative. *Come, my friend, veni, mi amice.*

600. Prohibitions are negative commands (English, *don't*), and are expressed by *nōli* (pl. *nōlite*) with the infinitive. *Nōli* (*nōlite*) is itself the imperative of *nōlō*, *I am unwilling, I won't. Don't do that, nōli* (pl. *nōlite*) *id facere.*

(a) A prohibition may be expressed also by *nē* with the perfect subjunctive. *Don't say that, nē hoc dixeris.*

III. THE SUBJUNCTIVE USED INDEPENDENTLY¹

601. "Subjunctive" means *subjoined*, that is, joined-at-the-end (of a sentence). We should naturally expect it therefore to be most commonly used in dependent clauses, subjoined to a principal clause. It is, however, also used *independently* as follows:

(1) to represent something as *commanded* or *willed*, hence called the *volitive subjunctive* (from *volō*, *I will*);

(2) to represent something as *wished*, hence called the *optative subjunctive* (from *optō*, *I wish*).

602. The *Volitive Subjunctive* expresses an exhortation or a command (English, *let*). The negative is *nē*. *Let us praise,*

¹ These sections may be omitted.

laudēmus ; *let us not advise*, *nē moneāmus* ; *let him rule*, *regat* ; *let them not hear*, *nē audiant*.

603. The Optative Subjunctive, preceded by *utinam*, expresses a wish (English, *O may, would that*, etc.). The negative is *nē*. *Three tenses* are so used with the following differences in meaning :

(1) *Present* subjunctive, a wish for something *hereafter*. *O may he come* (to-morrow), *utinam veniat!* *Utinam* may be omitted here, but not in (2) and (3).

(2) *Imperfect* subjunctive, a wish for something *now*. *I wish he were coming* (now), *utinam veniret!*

(3) *Pluperfect* subjunctive, a wish for something *in the past*. *Would that he had not come* (yesterday), *utinam nē vēnisset*.

COMPLEX SENTENCES

604. Subordinate or dependent clauses are treated below under the following heads :

- | | |
|------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| I. Clauses of <i>Purpose</i> | V. <i>Cum</i> -Clauses |
| II. Clauses of <i>Result</i> | VI. Clauses of <i>Condition</i> |
| III. Clauses of <i>Fear</i> | VII. <i>Indirect Questions</i> |
| IV. Clauses of <i>Time</i> | |

605. Tenses of the Indicative. Any tense that refers to present or future time is called *primary* ; any that refers to past time, *secondary*. The tenses of the *indicative* are divided as follows :

PRIMARY	SECONDARY
Present	Imperfect
Future	Perfect
Future Perfect	Pluperfect

606. Tenses of the Subjunctive. The tenses of the *subjunctive* are divided as follows :

PRIMARY	SECONDARY
Present (<i>incomplete action</i>)	Imperfect (<i>incomplete action</i>)
Perfect (<i>completed action</i>)	Pluperfect (<i>completed action</i>)

607. "Sequence." The word "sequence" is derived from the Latin *sequor, I follow*. The law, called *sequence of tenses*, tells us what tense in a dependent clause must *follow* certain tenses in the principal clause. To illustrate in English: the sentence, *He RUNS that he MAY be in time*, consists of a principal clause, *he runs*, and a dependent clause, *that he may be in time*. Now, if we change *runs* (present) to *ran* (past) in the principal clause, then we must also change *may* (present) to *might* (past) in the dependent clause: *He RAN that he MIGHT be in time*.

608. The Law of Sequence of Tenses. In Latin, if the verb of the principal clause is in a *primary* tense, then the subjunctive in the dependent clause must also be in a *primary* tense; if the tense of the principal verb be *secondary*, then the tense of the dependent subjunctive must also be *secondary*. From the division of the tenses given in 605 and 606, we see that the principles of sequence may be represented as in the following table:

(a) Memorize:

TABLE				
INDICATIVE			SUBJUNCTIVE	
1. PRIMARY:	Present, or Future, or Fut. Perfect	} followed by	{	Present (<i>same time</i>) or Perfect (<i>prior time</i>)
2. SECONDARY:	Imperfect, or Perfect, or Pluperfect			Imperfect (<i>same time</i>) or Pluperfect (<i>prior time</i>)

The expression "same time" means that the subjunctive tense named denotes an action going on at the *same time* as that of the indicative; "prior time," one that occurred *before* the action of the indicative.

(b) The following examples illustrate the law of sequence. The dependent clauses are indirect questions, requiring the subjunctive (629).

INDICATIVE

SUBJUNCTIVE

1. PRIMARY: *He asks (now) what they are doing (now),*
Rogat quid faciant (pres. subjv.).
He asks (now) what they did (before now),
Rogat quid fēcerint (perf. subjv.).
2. SECONDARY: *He asked (then) what they were doing (then),*
Rogāvit quid facerent (impf. subjv.).
He asked (then) what they had done (before then),
Rogāvit quid fēcissent (plup. subjv.).

609.¹ If the action of the dependent subjunctive occurs *after* that of the indicative, since the subjunctive has no future, the future active participle with the subjunctive of *sum* is used. PRIMARY: *He asks (now) what they are going-to-do (after now), rogat quid factūri sint.* SECONDARY: *He asked (then) what they were going to do (after then), rogāvit quid factūri essent.*

I. CLAUSES OF PURPOSE²

610. **Caution.** In the sentence, *They are coming to see the town*, the English infinitive *to see* expresses the *purpose* of their coming. In Latin, purpose is NOT expressed by the infinitive (except occasionally in poetry).

611. **Pure Purpose Clauses.** Purpose is expressed by *ut*, in order that, or (if negative) by *nē*, in order that not, with the subjunctive. The *present* subjunctive is used if the principal verb is *primary* (present or future); the *imperfect* subjunctive, if the principal verb is *secondary* (past). PRIMARY: *They are coming to see the town (in order that they may see)*, etc., *veniunt ut oppidum videant* (pres. subjv.). SECONDARY: *They fought bravely that the enemy might not take the town, fortiter pugnāverunt nē hostēs castra caperent* (impf. subjv.).

(a) Notice the variety of translations of a purpose clause, *ut*, in order that, in order to, that, to, for the purpose of, etc., and *nē*, in order that not, in order not to, lest, that not, not to, etc.

¹ This section may be omitted. ² The subjv. of purpose is volitive (601, 1).

612. Substantive Clauses of Purpose.¹ A purpose clause, introduced by *ut* or *nē*, may be used as a substantive clause with verbs meaning *ask, demand, advise, persuade, urge*, etc. The tenses used are the same as in 611. *He demanded that I should do this, postulāvit ut hoc facerem.*

(a) The two verbs *iubeō*, *I order*, and *imperō*, *I command*, have different constructions. *iubeō*, like the English *order*, takes the accusative and infinitive, but *imperō* takes the *dative* of the person commanded and an *ut*-clause (612). *He orders or commands the lieutenant to hasten, lēgātum properāre iubet*; but *lēgātō imperat ut properet.*

613. Relative Clauses of Purpose. Purpose may be expressed by a relative with the subjunctive, present or imperfect as in 611. *He sent ambassadors to say (= who should say), etc., lēgātōs misit quī dicerent, etc.*

(a) The relative may be so used only when it has an *antecedent*, expressed or understood, in the principal clause. In the above sentence *lēgātōs* is the antecedent of *quī*.

II. CLAUSES OF RESULT

614. Pure Result Clauses. Result is expressed by *ut, so that*, or (if negative) by *ut nōn, so that not*, with the subjunctive. This subjunctive is translated by the English indicative. The principal clause often contains a word meaning *so, so great, such*, etc., naturally leading us to expect a consequence or result to follow. *He is so good that all praise him, tam bonus est ut omnēs eum laudent* (pres. subjv.); *they were so demoralized that they did not fight, ita perterriti sunt ut nōn pugnarent* (impf. subjv.).

(a) Do not confuse *purpose* and *result*. Both, when affirmative, are introduced by *ut*; but, when negative, purpose is introduced by *nē*, and result by *ut nōn*. In meaning, too, purpose clauses express the *aim* or *intention* of the subject of the principal verb; not so

¹ Or volitive substantive clauses.

result clauses. Again, in translating English into Latin, we may be guided by the fact that result is expressed in English by the *indicative*, but purpose is often expressed by the auxiliaries *may* and *might*. Finally, in purpose clauses, only the *present* or *imperfect* subjunctive is used, while in result clauses the *perfect* or the *pluperfect* may also be used. These differences may be summed up as follows:

PURPOSE	RESULT
negative, <i>nē</i>	negative, <i>ut nōn</i>
intention	no intention
trans. <i>may</i> or <i>might</i>	trans. by indicative
pres. or impf. subjv.	four tenses permissible

615. Substantive Clauses of Result. A clause of result, introduced by *ut* or *ut nōn*, may be used as a substantive clause with verbs meaning to *accomplish* or *bring about* a certain result, and with *impersonal* verbs, such as, *it happens*, *it follows*, etc. *He manages so that they exchange hostages*, *perficit ut obsidēs inter sē dent* (pres. subjv.); *it happened that there was not sufficient grain*, *accidit ut satis frūmentī nōn esset*.

III. CLAUSES OF FEAR

616. Clauses of Fear. After verbs of *fear*, the conjunction *that* is expressed by *nē*, and *that not* by *ut*. The dependent clause is a substantive clause. *I fear that he is coming* (or *will come*), *timeō nē veniat* (pres. subjv.); *I feared that he was not coming* (or *would not come*), *timui ut veniret* (impf. subjv.).

(a) Here *nē* and *ut* apparently interchange their usual meanings as seen in expressing purpose (611). But *nē* here, which is translated in English as an affirmative (*that*), was to the Romans still a negative (*that not*), because to *fear that something is true* meant to them to *wish it were not true*.

IV. CLAUSES OF TIME (TEMPORAL CLAUSES)

617. Temporal Clauses express time (from *tempus*, *time*). Important temporal conjunctions are *ut* and *ubi*, *when*; *dum*, *while*, *as long as*, *until*; *postquam*, *after*; and *cum*, *when*. *Cum* is treated separately (620-624).

(a) We have now seen *five uses* of *ut*, two with the indicative, three with the subjunctive. In Part II it was used with the indicative meaning *as* in the expression *ut demonstratum est*, and another use with the indicative appears above (617) with the meaning *when*. It is used with the subjunctive to denote purpose (*in order that*), result (*so that*), and after verbs of fear (*that not*).

618. *Ut, Ubi, Postquam*, referring to *past* time, generally take the perfect indicative. In English we often translate by the pluperfect, as in the following example. *After he (had) said this, he departed, postquam hoc dixit, discessit.*

619. *Dum* with Present Indicative. With *dum*, *while*, the present indicative is often used even of *past* events. We translate by the English imperfect. *While these things were going on, a messenger arrived, dum haec geruntur, nuntius pervenit.*

(a) Temporal conjunctions sometimes denote *more than mere time*. They then show that the circumstances mentioned in the temporal clause influence in one way or another the action of the principal clause. Thus, *He waited until his friend should arrive*, plainly means that he waited with an object in view, a *purpose*, and the verb expressing that purpose (*should arrive*) is in the subjunctive: *expectavit dum amicus perveniret* (impf. subjv.).

V. CUM-CLAUSES

620. *Cum* usually takes the *subjunctive*, less often the *indicative*. Of about 200 occurrences in Caesar's Gallic War only about a dozen show the indicative.

621. *Cum* with the Subjunctive (translated by the indicative) has the three meanings, *when*, *since*, and *although*. Thus:

(1) ***Cum***, *when*, called ***cum circumstantial*** (or *temporal*¹), referring to *past* time, takes the past tenses of the subjunctive (606). The *imperfect* subjunctive denotes the circumstances *during which* the action of the principal verb occurred; the *pluperfect*, the circumstances *after which* the principal action occurred. *When I was in*

¹ The name "temporal" is better reserved for the use of ***cum*** with the indicative (623).

Italy, I often saw Rome, cum in Italiā essem (impf. subjv.), Rōmam saepe vidēbam; when they had procured grain, they marched, cum frumentum comparāvissent (plup. subjv.), iter fecerunt.

(2) **Cum, since**, called **cum causal** because it denotes cause, may refer to any time, and thus may take *any tense* of the subjunctive. *Since they are fighting bravely, they will conquer, cum fortiter pugnent (pres. subjv.), vincent.*

(3) **Cum, although**, called **cum concessive**, because it denotes concession (that is, something conceded or granted to be true), may refer to any time, and hence may take *any tense* of the subjunctive. *Although they are fighting bravely, yet they will not conquer, cum fortiter pugnent (pres. subjv.), tamen nōn vincent.*

622. Whether **cum** means *when, since, or although* in a particular case will depend upon the meaning of the whole sentence. Sometimes, as in the example under 3 above, the word **tamen, nevertheless, yet**, used in the main clause, shows that the meaning of **cum** is concessive, *although*.

623. **Cum with the Indicative** is called **cum temporal**. If **cum, when**, refers to *past* time, and denotes *nothing more than time*, simply dating the time when the principal action occurred, it takes the indicative. *When I was in Italy, he was in Greece, cum in Italiā eram, in Graeciā erat.*

(a) Compare the two sentences: *When I was in Italy, I saw Rome* (621, 1), and *When I was in Italy, he was in Greece* (623). In the former, my being in Italy enabled me to see Rome: if I had not been in that country, I could not have seen the city. Here therefore **cum** denotes something more than mere time, and hence the *subjunctive* is used. In the second sentence, the two clauses have no other relation than that of time: the *when*-clause simply dates the time when he was in Greece,—no more,—and hence the *indicative* is used. Still the Romans were very fond of using the subjunctive with **cum, when**, even though the indicative might seem to be the natural mood to use.

624. **Cum, when**, referring to *present or future* time, takes the *indicative*.

VI. CLAUSES OF CONDITION

625. Conditional Clauses. In the sentence, *If this is true, I am glad*, the clause *If this is true* denotes a supposition or *condition*, and the principal clause *I am glad* is a *conclusion* drawn from the supposition. The *if*-clause is called the *protasis*; the conclusion is called the *apod'osis*. The protasis is introduced by *sī*, *if*, or *nisi*, *unless*, *if not*.

626. Kinds of Condition. Conditions are of three types or kinds as follows :

I. *Simple Condition*, expressed by *sī* or *nisi* with *indicative*, *any tense*.

(a) In this type of condition the thought is stated in the simplest way in the indicative: *If this is so, that is so* (present time); *if this was so, that was so* (past time); *if this shall be so, that will be so* (future time). The time may be present, past, or future; hence *any appropriate tense* of the indicative may be used.

PRESENT TIME: *If he is working, he is happy,*
Sī labōrat, contentus est.

PAST TIME: *If he was working, he was happy,*
Sī labōrābat, contentus erat.

FUTURE TIME: *If he works (= shall be working), he will be happy,*
Sī labōrābit, contentus erit.

II. *Ideal (or Less Vivid) Condition*, expressed by *sī* or *nisi*, with *subjunctive present*.¹

(a) This type of condition is easily recognized in English by the use of *should* in the protasis (*if he should*). It refers only to *future* time. The present subjunctive usually occurs in both clauses.

If he should work, he would be happy,
Sī labōret (pres. subjv.), contentus sit (pres. subjv.).

III. *Unreal (or Contrary to Fact) Condition*, expressed by *sī* or *nisi* with *subjunctive imperfect* or *pluperfect*.

¹ The *perfect* subjunctive is less commonly used — of an action supposed to be completed at some future time: *If he should (prove to) have worked, sī labōrāverit.*

(a) Here the thought always shows that the supposed case is *not* or *was not true*. Thus, *If wishes were horses, beggars would ride*, where the unreality or falsity of the supposition is seen at once. The *imperfect* subjunctive refers to a *present* unreality; the *pluperfect*, to a *past* unreality. The subjunctive is used in both clauses, and often the same tenses, but not always (see the third example below).

IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE: *If I were working (now), I should be happy (now),*
Sī labōrārem, contentus essem.

PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE: *If I had worked (then), I should have been happy (then),*
Sī labōrāvīsem, contentus fuīsem.

BOTH TENSES USED: *If I had worked (then), I should be happy (now),*
Sī labōrāvīsem, contentus essem.

627. The indefinite pronoun is frequently found after *sī* or *nisi* (588). Note the following phrases: *sī quis, if anybody, sī quid, if anything, nisi quis, unless any one, nisi quid, unless anything.*

VII. INDIRECT QUESTIONS

628. **Indirect Questions** are substantive clauses introduced by an interrogative word. In other words, when a *direct question* (594) becomes dependent upon a verb of *asking, telling, knowing, etc.*, it becomes an *indirect question*.

DIRECT QUESTION: *What are they doing?*
Quid faciunt (pres. indic.)?

INDIRECT QUESTIONS: *He asks what they are doing,*
Rogat quid faciant (pres. subjv.).
He asked what they were doing,
Rogāvit quid facerent (impf. subjv.).

629. In indirect questions *three points* must be considered: the *introducing word*, the *mood* employed, and the *tense* of that mood:

(1) The *introducing* words are interrogative words, such as *quis*, *who?* *quid*, *what?* *ubi*, *where?* or the interrogative particles *num* and *ne*, both meaning *whether*. Here *num* does not suggest the answer *No*, as in the direct question (598).

(2) The *mood* is the subjunctive (translated by the English indicative).

(3) The *tenses* obey the law of sequence (608).

For illustrations, see the examples above (628) and especially those under 608, *b*.

THE INFINITIVE

630. The infinitive is a part of the *verb* that may be used as a *noun*; it is therefore called a *verbal noun*. As a *noun*, it is neuter, with two cases, nominative and accusative, alike in form. Its other cases are supplied by the gerund (640). As a *verb*, it may have a subject, and this is in the accusative (550). The infinitive, with or without a subject-accusative, has two uses: (1) as *subject* of another verb, and (2) as *object* of another verb.

I. THE INFINITIVE AS SUBJECT

631. Infinitive as Subject. The infinitive, with or without a subject-accusative, may be used as a *subject*. A predicate adjective must be *neuter* to agree with the infinitive as a neuter noun (630).

WITHOUT SUBJECT-ACCUSATIVE: **Potiri est facile** (neuter),
To-get-possession is easy, or
It is easy to get possession.

WITH SUBJECT-ACCUSATIVE: **Rōmānōs potiri est facile**,
(The Romans-to-get-possession is
easy),
It is easy for the Romans to get
possession.

(a) The verbs with which the infinitive is most frequently used as subject are *est*, and certain *impersonal* verbs, namely:

<i>est</i> , it is	<i>oportet</i> , it is fitting, (one) ought
<i>licet</i> , it is permitted, (one) may	<i>praestat</i> , it is better

II. THE INFINITIVE AS OBJECT

632. The Infinitive as Object. The infinitive as *object* has two uses, — one *without* a subject-accusative, the other *with* a subject-accusative.

(1) The infinitive *without* a subject-accusative may be the object of certain verbs to *complete* their meaning, and is called the *complementary* (= completing) infinitive. **Hoc facere cōstituit, He decides to do this.** The following verbs are frequently used by Caesar with a complementary infinitive (given in the order of their frequency of occurrence¹):

possum, <i>I am able, can</i>	volō, <i>I wish</i>
coepti, <i>I began</i>	audeō, <i>I dare</i>
cōsueſcō, <i>I become accustomed</i>	cōstituō, <i>I decide</i>
cōnor, <i>I attempt</i>	dēbeō, <i>I ought</i>

(2) The infinitive, *with* a subject-accusative, may be the object of *iubeō, I order*, and especially of verbs meaning *say* or *think* in a construction known as *indirect discourse*, which is explained later (656–666).

THE PARTICIPLE

633. The participle is a part of the *verb* which may be used as an *adjective*; it is therefore called a *verbal adjective*. As an *adjective*, it agrees with a noun or pronoun. As a *verb*, it has voice and tense, may have an object, etc. *The participle in its most common uses represents a condensed clause.* Thus *vir laudatus* (*the praised man*), *the man who is* (or *was*) *praised* (relative clause), *when he is* (or *was*) *praised* (temporal clause), *because he is* (or *was*) *praised* (causal clause), etc. Remembering this, the pupil will have mastered the chief difficulty in understanding the use of the participle in Latin.

634. Tenses of the Participle. Participles have only *four tenses*:

¹ As given in Byrne's *Syntax of High School Latin*.

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
Pres. parāns (<i>while</i>) <i>preparing</i>	—
Fut. parātūrus , <i>going to pre-</i> <i>pare</i>	parandus , <i>to be prepared</i> parātus , (<i>having been</i>) <i>pre-</i> <i>pared</i>
Perf. —	

(a) The fut. pass. part. **parandus** is the same in form as the gerundive.

635. The *time* denoted by the tense of a participle is not independent time, but time *as compared with that of the main verb*. Thus:

(1) The *present* participle represents an action as *going on at the same time* as that of the principal verb. **Miles fortiter pugnāns occisus est**, *the soldier was slain (while) fighting bravely*.

(2) The *perfect passive* participle represents an action as *already completed before* the action of the principal verb begins. **Oppidum captum incēsum est**, *the town, (after it was) taken, was set afire*.

(3) The *future active* participle represents an action as *going to occur after* that of the principal verb. Its most common use is explained in 648.

(4) The *future passive* participle is most common in the form explained in 650.

636. Perfect Active Participle. This participle (as *having prepared*) is common in English, but is wanting in Latin, except in deponent verbs (passive in form, but active in meaning). To translate the English perf. act. part., we may treat the Latin verb (excepting deponents) in one of the following ways:

(1) Change the English from the *active* to the *passive* form, then use the *abl. absolute* construction: *Having hurled their spears, they attacked with their swords*, **pilis missis (abl. abs.), gladiis impetum fēcērunt**.

(2) By using **cum** with the subjunctive in a tense of completed action. *Having arrived in Gaul, they fortified a camp*, **cum in Galliam pervēnissent, castra munivērunt**.

637. Translation of Participles. The participle is usually best translated by a *clause* or *phrase* of time, cause, condition, etc. (633).

638. The perf. pass. part. is sometimes translated as a *finite* verb followed by *and*, *Gallōs fūsōs persequēbātur* (*he pursued the routed Gauls*), *he routed and pursued the Gauls*.

639. In prepositional phrases the perf. pass. part. is often translated as a *verbal noun* followed by *of*. *Post expulsōs rēgēs*, *after the expulsion of the kings*; *ante urbem conditam*, *before the building of the city*.

THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE

640. The Gerund is a *verbal noun* of the neuter gender (English, *-ing*). As a *noun*, it may be declined, but has no plural, and its nom. sing. is supplied by the pres. infinitive. As a *verb*, it may have an object. Thus, *epistulās scribendō*, *by writing letters*. The gerund is of the *active* voice.

641. The Gerundive is a *verbal adjective*, declined like other adjectives in *-us*, *-a*, *-um*. It has three genders, both numbers, and all the cases. It is *passive*. Thus, *epistula scribenda*, *a letter to be written*.

642. Summary. The gerund and the gerundive may be compared as follows :

GERUND (<i>parandi</i>)	GERUNDIVE (<i>parandus</i>)
active	passive
noun	adjective
neuter	all genders
singular	both numbers
no nominative	all cases

643. From Gerund to Gerundive. When the verb has a *direct object* expressed (as in 640), Latin prefers the *gerundive* to the gerund. The change from the gerund to the gerundive form is

made as follows : Change the English *by writing letters* to the form *by letters to-be-written*, *litteris scribendis*. In doing this, we change the object (*letters*) to the *case* of the gerund, then make the *gerundive* agree with the object.

(a) The following paradigms show the changes from the gerund to the gerundive for all the cases of the gerund :

GERUND	GERUNDIVE
Sing. Gen. <i>urbem capiendi</i>	<i>urbis capiendae</i>
Dat. <i>urbem capiendō</i>	<i>urbī capiendae</i>
Acc. <i>urbem capiendum</i> ¹	<i>urbem capiendam</i> ¹
Abl. <i>urbem capiendō</i>	<i>urbe capiendā</i>
Plur. Gen. <i>urbes capiendi</i>	<i>urbium capiendarum</i>
Dat. <i>urbes capiendō</i>	<i>urbibus capiendis</i>
etc.	etc.

644. When to use the Gerundive. Not only is the gerundive the preferable form when the object is expressed (643), but it *must* be used after prepositions.

645. When to use the Gerund. The gerund must be used not only when there is no object expressed, but also (1) with *intransitive verbs*, and (2) to avoid *ambiguity*. Thus, (1) *ad parcendum amicis* (dat.), *for the purpose of sparing friends*; (2) *videndī hoc*, *of seeing this*, where *hoc* is neuter; if *huius* were used, it would cause ambiguity, since *huius* may be either masculine or neuter.

646. Chief Uses of the Gerundive. The gerundive has the following important uses :

(1) The *nominative* of the gerundive (or fut. pass. participle) with forms of *sum* is explained in 650.

(2) The *genitive* of the gerundive, followed by *causā*, expresses *purpose*. *Urbis videndae causā vēnerunt*, *they came for-the-purpose-of seeing the city*.

¹ The accusative is used after prepositions, especially *ad* (646, 3), but only in the *gerundive* form : *ad urbem capiendam*, *for-the-purpose-of taking the city*.

(3) *Ad* with the *accusative* of the gerundive also expresses *purpose*. *Ad urbem videndam vēnērunt*, they came for-the-purpose-of seeing the city.

Without an object, the *gerund* is used for the gerundive in (2) and (3).

PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS

647. "Periphrastic" applies to a form of conjugation made up of phrases instead of single words. There are two such conjugations: the *active* and the *passive* periphrastic conjugations (648, 650).

648. Active Periphrastic Conjugation. This is a combination of the *future active participle* and forms of *sum*. *Parātūrus sum*, I am going to prepare, I intend to prepare, etc. It expresses *futurity*, *intention*, or *likelihood*.

649. The act. periphr. conjugation has three moods; indicative, subjunctive, and infinitive. It supplies a future tense, otherwise lacking, for the subjunctive (609) and also the fut. act. infinitive. See 437.

650. Passive Periphrastic Conjugation. This is a combination of the *future passive participle* (or gerundive) with forms of *sum*. *Laudandus sum*, I am to be praised. It expresses *duty* or *necessity*, and is translated *must*, *am to*, *have to*, *ought to*, etc. Like the active form (649), it has indicative, subjunctive, and infinitive. See 440.

651. English and Latin Compared. In expressions of *duty* and *necessity* with *must*, etc., which in Latin are passive (650), the *active* form is preferred in English. The English *you must do this* = the Latin *this must be done by you*. *I must write a letter* (English form) = *a letter must be written by me* (Latin form), *epistula mihi scribenda est*. Notice that the English subject (*I*) is translated as a Latin agent (*by me*, *mihi*), and that this agent is in the dative (542).

652. The supine is a *verbal noun* of the fourth declension, but with only two cases, — accusative in **-um** and ablative in **-ū**.

654. Ablative Supine. This supine is used with certain adjectives (*easy, difficult, strange*, etc.) as an ablative of specification (558). *This is very easy to do, hoc perfacile factū est.*

655. Direct Discourse. The words of another may be quoted exactly as they were written or spoken. Thus, "Caesar is my friend." This kind of quotation is called *direct discourse*.

656. Indirect Discourse. If the above quotation (655) be made the subject or the object of a verb meaning *say, think, believe, know, hear, perceive*, etc. (generally followed by the conjunction *that*), it is then called *indirect discourse*. Thus, *He said that Caesar was his friend*, in which the words *that Caesar was his friend* are in indirect discourse.

657. Statements in Indirect Discourse. When a statement becomes the subject or the object of a verb meaning *say* or *think* (656), it undergoes the changes shown below :

INDIRECT DISCOURSE: **Dicit Mārcum amīcōs habēre,**
He says that Marcus has friends.

Notice above that:

- (1) the word *that* is not expressed in the Latin;
- (2) the present indicative **habet**, *has*, becomes the present infinitive **habere**, *to have*;
- (3) **Marcus**, the subject of the finite verb **habet**, becomes the accusative **Mārcum** as subject of the infinitive **habere** (550).

658. Predicate Accusative. Since a predicate noun or adjective must agree in case with its subject (526, 527), it must be in the *accusative* when the subject is in the accusative. *They say that Marcus is good (or a leader), dicunt Mārcum esse bonum (or ducem).*

659. Pronoun Subject Expressed. In the sentence *I am the leader, dux sum*, the subject of **sum**, being contained in the ending **-m**, need not be expressed by a separate word. If, however, we change the sentence to indirect discourse, the indicative **sum** becomes the infinitive **esse**, which has no personal ending to indicate its subject. We must, therefore, express the pronoun subject **mē**, the accusative of **ego**, *I*. *They say that I am the leader, dicunt mē esse ducem.*

660. Reflexive Subject. When *he* (*she* or *it*) or *they* is the subject of the infinitive, and refers to the *same person* as the subject of the verb *say*, etc., it is expressed by the reflexive **sē**, *himself* (*herself* or *itself*) or *themselves*. *He says that he is the leader, dicit sē esse ducem*, in which **sē** refers to the subject of **dicit**.

661. When the pronoun subject of the infinitive refers to a *different person* from the subject of the verb *say*, etc., then the accusative of **is**, **ea**, **id** is used. *He says that he is the leader, dicit eum esse ducem*, in which the two *he's* refer to different persons.

662. Tenses of the Infinitive. When the indicative of direct discourse becomes the infinitive of indirect discourse (657, 2), the *tense* remains unchanged. Thus:

I. The *present* indicative becomes the *present* infinitive.

DIRECT DISCOURSE

parō. *I am preparing*

INDIRECT DISCOURSE

Dicit eē parāre,
He says that he is preparing.
Dixit eē parāre,
He said that he was preparing.

(a) Notice that after **dixit**, *he said*, the *present* infinitive is translated **was preparing**.

II. Any *past* tense of the indicative becomes the *perfect* infinitive.

parābam. *I was preparing,*
 or any other past tense

Dicit eē parāvisse,
He says that he was preparing.
Dixit eē parāvisse,
He said that he had been preparing.

(a) Notice that after **dixit**, *he said*, the *perfect* infinitive is translated **HAD been preparing** (or **HAD prepared**).

III. The *future* indicative becomes the *future* infinitive.**parābō.** *I shall prepare*

Dicit eē parātūrum esse,
He says that he will prepare.
Dixit eē parātūrum esse,
He said that he would prepare.

(a) Notice that after **dixit**, *he said*, the future infinitive is translated **WOULD prepare**.

663. Commands in Indirect Discourse. *Commands* (imperative) of the direct discourse become the *subjunctive* in indirect discourse. The *tense* is present or imperfect according as the principal verb is *primary* or *secondary*. The translation in English is with *should*.

DIRECT DISCOURSE

Pugnāte fortiter,
Fight bravely

INDIRECT DISCOURSE

Respondet, fortiter pugnent,
He answers, they should fight bravely.
Respondit, fortiter pugnārent,
He answered, they should fight bravely.

The negative is **nē**. **Nē fugiant** (*fugerent*), *they should not run.*

664. Questions in Indirect Discourse. *Direct questions* in direct discourse usually become *indirect questions* in indirect discourse, and follow the rules of 629.

II. THE COMPLEX SENTENCE IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE

665. Complex Sentences in Indirect Discourse. Examine the following *complex* sentence (593):

PRINCIPAL CLAUSE	DEPENDENT CLAUSE
<i>He has friends</i> Amicōs habet	<i>who are in Rome,</i> quī Rōmae sunt.

To change this complex sentence to indirect discourse, the *principal* clause (*he has friends*) follows the rules given in 657 and 659, that is, its verb becomes the infinitive (**habēre**) and its pronoun subject is expressed (**eum**). The verb of the *dependent* clause (**sunt**) is changed to the subjunctive. Thus:

INTRODUCTORY VERB	PRINCIPAL CLAUSE	DEPENDENT CLAUSE
1. <i>They say (that) he has friends</i> Dicunt	eum amicōs habēre	<i>who are in Rome,</i> quī Rōmae sint.
2. Dixerunt <i>They said (that) he had friends</i>	eum amicōs habēre	<i>quī Rōmae essent,</i> <i>who were in Rome.</i>

Observe that the infinitive **habēre** remains the same whether the introductory verb is *primary* (**dīcit**) or *secondary* (**dīxit**), according to the principle explained in 662. The *subjunctive*, however, follows the law of sequence of tenses, being *present* (**sint**) after a primary tense (**dīcit**) and *imperfect* (**essent**) after a secondary tense (**dīxit**).

666. From the foregoing examples we derive two important laws concerning the change from direct to indirect discourse as follows:

- I. An *indicative* statement in the principal clause (**habet**)

becomes the *infinitive* with subject-accusative (**eum habere**). The *tense* is the same as in direct discourse.

II. The verb of the *dependent* clause (**sunt**) becomes *subjunctive* (**sint** or **essent**). The *tense* of the subjunctive follows the law of sequence as follows :

(a) If the verb *say* is primary (*pres.*, *fut.*, or *fut. pf.*), then the tense of the subjunctive is *present* (the same time) or *perfect* (prior time) ;

(b) If the verb *say* is secondary (*imperf.*, *perf.*, or *plupf.*), then the tense of the subjunctive is *imperfect* (the same time) or *pluperfect* (prior time).

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

A

ā, *ab*, *prep. w. abl.*, from, by
abēō, -ire, -iī, -itum, go away, depart
abstineō, -ēre, -tinui, -tentum, abstain
absum, -esse, āfui, āfutūrus, be away,
 be absent, be distant
ac, *see* **atque**
accidō, -ere, -cidi, —, happen
accipio, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptum, receive,
 accept
accurrō, -ere, -cucurri or -curri, -cur-
 sum, run to, ride up
accūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, accuse
ācer, ācris, ācre, sharp, keen, eager
aciēs, aciēi, F., line of battle
ācrit, sharply, fiercely
ad, *prep. w. acc.*, towards, to; near;
 for (*of purpose*); about (*with*
numerals)
addūcō, -ere, -dūxi, -ductum, lead to,
 lead on, induce, impel
adimō, -ere, adēmi, -ēptum, take
 away
adiungō, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūnctum, annex
admittō, -ere, -misi, -missum, send
 to, let go, admit; equō **admissō**, at
 full speed, in a gallop
adorior, -iri, -ortus sum, attack
adsum, -esse, adfui, adfutūrus, be
 present
adventus, -ūs, M., arrival
advertō, -ere, -verti, -versum, turn to;
 id **animus** **advertere**, to notice this
adversus, -a, -um, turned to, facing,
 opposite; unsuccessful
aedificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, build
aeger, -gra, -grum, sick, ill
aestās, -tātis, F., summer
aetās, -tātis, F., age
afferō, -ferre, attuli, allātum, bear to,
 bring
afficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, do to,

treat, affect; **supplicio** **afficere**, to
 punish
ager, **agri**, M., land, country, field
aggredior, -gredi, -gressus sum,
 attack
agmen, -minis, N., army (*on the*
march), column; **novissimum**
agmen, the rear
agō, -ere, ēgi, āctum, drive; do, act;
 pass (*time*)
alacer, -cris, -cre, eager
Albanus, -a, -um, Alban; *as noun*,
Albāni, -ōrum, M. *pl.*, the Albans
aliēnus, -a, -um, another's; **aliēnō**
locō, in an unfavorable position
alius, -a, -ud, another; *pl.*, others
aliquis, **aliquid**, some one, something
Allobrogēs, -um, M. *pl.*, the Allobroges
Alpēs, -ium, F. *pl.*, the Alps
alter, -era, -erum, the other (*of two*);
 alter . . . alter, one . . . the
 other; *pl.*, **alteri** . . . **alteri**, one
 party . . . the other
altus, -a, -um, high, tall, deep
amicitia, -ae, F., friendship
amicus, -a, -um, friendly; *as noun*,
amicus, -i, M., friend
āmittō, -ere, āmisi, āmissum, lose
amō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, love
amor, -ōris, M., love
Amūlius, **Amūli**, M., Amulius
anceps, **ancipitis**, twofold, doubtful
Ancus, -i, M., Ancus; *see* **Mārcius**
angustus, -a, -um, narrow
animal, -mālis, N., animal
animus, -i, M., mind, disposition,
 feeling; spirit, courage
annus, -i, M., year
ante, *prep. w. acc.*, before; *as adverb*,
multis ante annis, many years
 before
apertus, -a, -um, open, exposed; **ab**
latere apertō, on the exposed flank

appello -āre, -āvi, -ātum, call, name
 appropinquo -āre, -āvi, -ātum, draw
 near, approach with datives
 apud -prepos. z. acc. near, at, with,
 among
 aqua -ae, F., water
 aquila -ae, F., eagle; standard, of the
 -gen.
 Aquila -ae, F., a town in the north
 of Italy
 Aquilini -orum, M. pl., the Aquila-
 nians
 Aquitania -ae, F., Aquitania, the
 southwestern part of Gaul
 Arar -Araris, M., the Arar, a river,
 near the Seine
 arbitror -āri, arbitratus sum, judge,
 consider, think
 arbor -oris, F., tree
 Ardea -ae, F., Ardea, a town eighteen
 miles east of Rome
 arma -arum, N. pl., arms
 ascendo -ere, ascendī, ascēsum,
 climb, ascend
 ascensus -ūs, M., ascent
 Aethiaca -arum, F. pl., Athens
 atque et ac, and, and also, and even
 auctoritas -tātis, F., influence,
 weight, authority
 audacia -ae, F., daring, boldness
 audacter, boldly
 audax -avis, audācis, daring, bold
 audi -ire, -īvi, -itum, hear
 augeo -ere, auxi, auctum, increase
 aut or: aut . . . aut, either . . . or
 autem, however, but; moreover
 auxilio -āri, auxiliatus sum, aid,
 help
 auxilium, auxilii, N., aid, help
 averto -ere, averti, aversum, turn
 from, turn aside or away
 avis -avis, F., bird
 avus -i, M., grandfather

B

M. pl., the Belgians, a
 northeast of Gaul
 um, warlike, fond of

bello -āre, -āvi, -ātum, wage war, fight
 bellum, -i, N., war
 bene, adv., well
 Bibracte -tis, N., Bibracte, a town of
 the Haeduan
 biennium, biennii, N., two years
 bipertitō, adv., in two parts or divi-
 sions
 Boii, Boiorum, M. pl., the Boii, a
 people of Gaul
 bonitas, -tātis, F., goodness, fertility
 bonus, -a, -um, good
 brevis, breve, short, brief; brevi, in a
 short time
 breviter, briefly, in a few words
 Britannia, -ae, F., Britain

C

cadō -ere, cecidi, cāsum, fall, be killed
 caedēs, caedis, F., slaughter, blood-
 shed
 Caesar, -is, M., Caesar
 capio -ere, cēpi, captum, take, cap-
 ture
 Capitōlium, Capitōli, N., the Capitol
 or Capitoline Hill, on which stood
 the temple of Jupiter
 captivus, -i, M., prisoner, captive
 caput, capitis, N., head
 cārus, -a, -um, dear
 castra, -ōrum, N. pl., camp
 cāsus, -ūs, M., chance, accident, mis-
 fortune
 causa, -ae, F., cause, reason; abl.
 causā, following a genitive, for the
 sake or purpose of; quā de causā,
 for this reason
 celer, celeris, celere, swift
 celeritās, -tātis, F., speed, swiftness
 celeriter, swiftly, quickly
 cēlo -āre, -āvi, -ātum, conceal
 Celtae, -arum, M. pl., the Celts, the
 name by which the Gauls called
 themselves
 centēsimus, -a, -um, hundredth
 centum, indecl. num. adj., hundred
 centuriō, -ōnis, M., centurion, origi-
 nally the captain of a hundred men
 certāmen, -minis, N., contest

certō, certainly, at least
certior, -ius (*comp. of certus*, -a, -um), more certain; **certiorem facere**, to inform; **certior fieri**, to be informed

cēterus, -a, -um, all the other
circiter, *adv.*, about
circum, *prep. w. acc.*, around
circumdō, -dare, -dedi, -datum, put around, surround

circumsistō, -ere, -steti, —, take one's stand around, surround

circumveniō, -ire, -veni, -ventum, come around, surround

circus, -i, M., circle; **Circus Maximus**, the Circus Maximus

citrā, *prep. w. acc.*, on this side of

civis, **civis**, M., citizen

civitas, -tatis, F., state

clārus, -a, -um, clear; famous

classis, **classis**, F., fleet

claudō, -ere, **clausi**, **clausum**, shut, close; **agmen claudere**, to bring up the rear

coepi, **coepisse**, *defective verb, having only a perf. system*, began, have begun

coerceō, -ēre, **coercui**, **coercitum**, restrain

cognōscō, -ere, **cognōvi**, **cognitum**, find out, learn; *pf.* **cognōvi**, I know

cōgō, -ere, **coēgi**, **coactum**, compel; collect

cohors, **cohortis**, F., cohort, *tenth part of a legion*

cohortor, -ārī, **cohortātus sum**, urge, cheer, address, exhort

collis, **collis**, M., hill

combūrō, -ere, **combussi**, **combustum**, burn up

commeātus, -ūs, M., supplies

commeō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, go back and forth; *with ad*, visit

committō, -ere, -misi, -missum, intrust; *with proelium*, join or begin

commoveō, -ēre, -mōvi, -mōtum, move, alarm, disturb

commūtatiō, -ōnis, F., change

comparō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, get ready, procure, obtain

comperiō, -ire, -peri, -pertum, find out

complūrēs, -a or -ia, several, many

1. **concidō**, -ere, -cidi, -cisum, cut down

2. **concidō**, -ere, -cidi, —, fall, be slain

concursum, -ūs, M., charge, onset

condō, -ere, -didi, -ditum, found, build

confectus, *see cōficiō*

cōnferō, -ferre, -tulī, **collātum**, collect; *sē cōnferre*, to betake oneself

cōnficiō, -ere, -fēci, -fectum, do entirely, finish, accomplish; *pf. pass. part. cōnfectus* ("done up"), exhausted

cōnfidō, -ere, **cōnfisus sum**, *semi-deponent*, trust, rely on (*with dative of the person trusted*)

cōnfirmō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, establish, strengthen

coniciō, -ere, **coniēcī**, **coniectum**, hurl, cast, throw

coniungō, -ere, -iūnxī, **iūctum**, join together, unite

coniūratiō, -ōnis, F., conspiracy

coniūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, conspire

cōnor, -ārī, **cōnātus sum**, attempt

cōnscribō, -ere, -scripsi, -scriptum, levy, enlist

cōnsēdisse, *from cōnsidō*

cōnsequor, -sequi, -secūtus sum, follow up, pursue, obtain

Cōnsidius, **Cōnsidi**, M., **Considius**, a soldier in Caesar's army

cōnsidō, -ere, -sēdī, -sessum, sit down; encamp, halt

cōnsilium, **cōnsili**, N., plan; advice; prudence

cōnsistō, -ere, **cōnstiti**, —, make a stand, stand one's ground, halt; consist

cōnspectus, -ūs, M., sight

cōnspicor, -ārī, -spicātus sum, catch sight of, observe, see

cōnstiterant, *from cōnsistō*

cōnstituō, -ere, -stitui, -stitūtum, arrange; decide

cōnsuēscō, -ere, -suēvi, -suētum, become accustomed; *pf.* **cōnsuēvi**, I am accustomed

cōsul, -ulī, M., consul, the chief executive of the Roman government
cōsulō, -ere, -sului, -sultum, consult; look out for (*with dative*)
contendō, -ere, -tendi, -tentum, strain, strive, hasten, push on, march, contend
contentus, -a, -um, contented, happy
contineō, -ēre, -tinui, -tentum, hold together, hem in, bound, keep, restrain
contrā, *prep. w. acc.*, against
conveniō, -īre, -vēni, -ventum, come together, come
convertō, -ere, -verti, -versum, turn about, change; *conversa signa inferre*, to face about and advance
convocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, call together
cōpla, -ae, F., abundance, supply, number; *pl.*, forces, troops
cornū, -ūs, N., horn; wing (*of an army*)
corpus, corporis, N., body
cotidiē, *adv.*, daily
crēber, -bra, -brum, thick, frequent
crēdō, -ere, -crēdidi, -crēditum, believe
creō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, appoint, elect, create
cuidam, *see quidam*
cultus, -ūs, M., civilization, culture
 1. *cum*, *prep. w. abl.*, with
 2. *cum*, *conj.*, when, since, although;
cum primum, as soon as
cupiditās, -tātis, F., desire
cupiō, -ere, -ivi, -itum, desire
cupidus, -a, -um, desirous (of), eager (for) (*with genitive*)
cūr, why?
cūra, -ae, F., care
cūria, -ae, F., senate-house
Cūriatius, Cūriāti, M., Curiatius, one of the three Alban brothers conquered by the Horatii
cūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, care for, take care of
cursor, -ūs, M., running; course (*of ships*)

D

dē, *prep. w. abl.*, down from, from; concerning; **dē tertiā** (quartā) **vigiliā**, in the third (fourth) watch;
pauci dē, *with abl.*, a few of
dēbeō, -ēre, -debui, -debitum, owe; ought
decem, *indecl. num. adj.*, ten
decimus, -a, -um, tenth
deditiō, -ōnis, F., surrender
dēdō, -ere, -dēdidi, -dēditum, give up;
sē dēdere, to surrender
dēducō, -ere, -dūxi, -ductum, lead away, conduct
decerant, *from dēsum*
dēfendō, -ere, -dēfendi, -fēnsū, defend
dēfēnsor, -ōris, M., defender
dēfessus, -a, -um, tired, worn out
dēficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, fail
dēiciō, -ere, -dēici, -dēiectum, throw down
deinde, *adv.*, then, next
dēlēō, -ēre, -ēvi, -ētum, destroy
dēliberō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, think over, consider, deliberate
dēligō, -ere, -lēgi, -lēctum, choose
dēminuō, -ere, -minui, -minūtum, lessen
dēmōnstrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, point out, show
dēnique, finally, at last
dēnsus, -a, -um, thick, dense
dēponō, -ere, -posui, -positum, put down, lay aside, abandon
dēspērō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, be hopeless, despair
dēstrictus, -a, -um, drawn, unsheathed
dēsūm, -esse, -fui, -futūrus, be wanting
dēterreō, -ēre, -terrui, -territum, frighten off, hinder, prevent, deter
deus, -ī, M., god
dicō, -ere, dixi, dictum, say; **causam dicere**, to plead a case; **diem dicere**, to appoint a day
diēs, diēi, M. (*sometimes in sing. F.*), day; time; **diem ex diē**, from day to day; **multō diē**, late in the day

differō, -ferre, distulī, dilātum, differ
difficilis, -e, difficult
dignitās, -tātis, F., worth, dignity,
high rank
dignus, -a, -um, worthy
diligentia, -ae, F., care, industry, dili-
gence
discēdō, -ere, -cessi, -cessum, depart,
withdraw
discessus, -ūs, M., departure
disiectus, -a, -um (*pf. pass. part. of*
disiciō, I scatter), having been
scattered, routed
dissimilis, -e, unlike, dissimilar
diū, *adv.*, long, for a long time
diūtius, *comp. of diū*
Diviciācus, -i, M., Diviciacus, a chief
of the Haeduan, brother of Dum-
norix, and friend of the Romans
dividō, -ere, divisi, divisum, separate,
divide
dō, dare, dedi, datum, give; in fugam
dare, to put to flight
doceō, -ere, -ui, doctum, teach
domus, -ūs, F., house; domi, at home;
domum (*pl. domōs*), home; domo,
from home
dōnō -āre, -āvi, -ātum, present, give
dormiō, -ire, -ivi (-ii), -itum, sleep
ducenti, -ae, -a, two hundred
dūcō, -ere, dūxi, ductum, lead; put
off, delay; build (a trench)
dum, *conj.*, while, as long as, until
Dumnorix, -rigis, M., Dumnorix,
younger brother of Diviciacus
duo, duae, duo, two
dux, ducis, M., leader, general

E

ē, *see ex*

ēdūcō, -ere, -dūxi, -ductum, lead out
effeminō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, enervate,
weaken, make effeminate
ego, mei, I
ēgredior, ēgredi, ēgressus sum, go out
eius, *see is, ea, id*
ēnūntio, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, reveal, dis-
close
1. eō, *adv.*, to that place, thither, there
2. eō, ire, -ii (ivi), itum, go

eōrum, *see is, ea, id*
epistula, -ae, F., letter, epistle
eques, equitis, M., horseman
equester, -tris, -tre, equestrian, of
cavalry, cavalry- (*adj.*)
equitātus, -ūs, M., cavalry
equus, equi, M., horse
ēripiō, -ere, ēripui, ēreptum, snatch
away, take away; sē ēripere, to
escape
errō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, wander, err
ērupō, -ere, -ērūpi, ēruptum, burst
forth, rush out
ēruptiō, -ōnis, F., sally
et, and; et . . . et, both . . . and
etiam, also, even
Etrūria, -ae, F., Etruria
ēvocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, call out,
summon; challenge
ex or ē, *prep. w. abl.*, out of, from;
ūnus ē militibus, one of the soldiers
excidō, -ere, -cidi, -cisum, cut out,
destroy
exeō, -ire, -ii, -itum, go out
exercitus, -ūs, M., army
existimō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, think,
consider
expellō, -ere, -puli, -pulsum, drive
out, banish
experior, -iri, expertus sum, try
explōrator, -ōris, M., scout
expōnō, -ere, -posui, -positum, set
forth, explain, relate
expugnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, take by
storm, capture
exspectō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, await, wait
for
extrā, *prep. w. acc.*, beyond, outside
of
extrēmus, -a, -um (*superl. of exterus*),
extreme, outermost, most distant

F

facile, *adv.*, easily
facilis, -e, easy
faciō, -ere, fēci, factum, do, make;
pass. fiō, fieri, factus sum
facultās, -tātis, F., opportunity,
chance; supply

Faustus, -i, M., Faustus
fēmina, -ae, F., woman
ferē, *adv.*, almost, about
ferō, *ferre*, tuli, lātum, bear, bring
fides, -ei, F., faith, fidelity; protection
filia, -ae, F., daughter
filius, fili, M., son
finis, -is, M., end, boundary, limit;
pl., borders, territory
finitimus, -a, -um, bordering on,
 neighboring; *as noun*, finitimus, -i,
 M., neighbor
fiō, fieri, factus sum, become, be
 made, be done, happen; *pass. of*
faciō
flagitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, keep de-
 manding, dun
flamma, -ae, F., flame, fire
flūmen, -inis, N., river
fluō, -ere, flūxi, fluxum, flow
fore = futūrus esse
forte, *adv.*, by chance
fortis, -e, brave
fortiter, bravely
fortūna, -ae, F., fortune, chance; *pl.*,
 property, possessions
Forum, -i, N., the Forum
fossa, -ae, F., trench, ditch
frāter, -tris, M., brother
fructus, -ūs, M., profit, fruit, proceeds
frūgēs, -um, F. *pl.*, produce, crops
frūmentārius, -a, -um, relating to
 grain; **rēs frūmentāria**, grain sup-
 ply
frūmentum, -i, N., grain
fruo, -i, fructus sum, enjoy (*with*
ablative)
frustrā, *adv.*, in vain
fuga, -ae, F., flight
fugio, -ere, fugi, fugitum, flee
fugitivus, -i, M., deserter, fugitive
fugo, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, put to flight,
 rout
fatūrus esse, *fut. inf. of sum*

G

-ae, M., Galba, a man's name
 -ae, F., Gaul
 -a, -um, Gallic

Gallus, -i, M., a Gaul, an inhabitant
 of the country called Gallia, Gaul
Garumna, -ae, M. or F., the Garonne,
 a river in S.W. Gaul
Genava, -ae, F., Geneva, a town of the
 Allobroges
gēns, gentis, F., race, nation, tribe
Germani, -ōrum, M. *pl.*, the Germans
gerō, -ere, gessi, gestum, wage, carry
 on, manage
gladius, gladi, M., sword
glōria, -ae, F., fame, renown, glory
glōrior, -āri, glōriātus sum, boast
gradus, -ūs, M., step; **dē gradibus**,
 down the steps
Graecia, -ae, F., Greece
Graecus, -a, -um, Greek; *as noun*,
 Graecus, -i, M., a Greek
grātia, -ae, F., favor, popularity, in-
 fluence
grātulor, -āri, grātulātus sum, con-
 gratulate
grātus, -a, -um, pleasing, welcome
gravis, -e, heavy; **grave vulnus**, a
 severe wound
graviter, heavily, severely; **graviter**
accūsāre, to blame bitterly

H

habēō, -ēre, -ui, habitum, have, hold;
satis habēre, to consider (it)
 enough, to be satisfied
habitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, dwell, live
Haeduus, -a, -um, Haeduan; *as noun*,
 Haeduus, -i, M., a Haeduan
Helvētia, -ae, F., Helvetia, a part of
 modern Switzerland
Helvētiī, -ōrum, M. *pl.*, the Helvetians
hiberna, -ōrum, N. *pl.*, winter-quarters
 1. hic, haec, hoc, *dem. pron.*, this;
 latter; *as per. pron.*, he, she, it
 2. hic, *adv.*, here
hiemō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, pass the
 winter, winter
hiems, hiemis, F., winter
homō, -inis, M. or F., human being,
 man, person
honor, -ōris, M., honor, high office
hōra, -ae, F., hour

Horātius, Horāti, M., Horatius, *one of the Horatii, three Roman brothers who fought with the Curiatii*

horror, -ōris, M., shuddering, horror
hortor, -ārī, hortātus sum, urge, exhort

Hostilius, Hostili, M., Tullus Hostilius, *third king of Rome*

hostis, -is, M., enemy; *usually plural*
hūmānitās, -tātis, F., refinement
humilis, -e, low, short; humble

I

iaciō, -ere, iēcī, iactum, throw

iaculum, -ī, N., javelin

iam, adv., already, now; **nōn iam,** no longer

Iāniculum, -ī, N., the Janiculum, *a hill on the other side of the Tiber from Rome*

ibi, adv., there

idem, eadem, idem, same

idōneus, -a, -um, suitable

ierant, from eō, I go

ignāvia, -ae, F., cowardice

ignāvus, -a, -um, cowardly

ignis, ignis, M., fire

ille, illa, illud, that; former; as per. pron., he, she, it

impedimentum, -ī, N., hindrance, obstacle; *pl.,* baggage

impediō, -īre, -ivī, -itum, hinder, impede; *pf. pass. part. impeditus, -a, -um,* (when) embarrassed or at a disadvantage

impendeō, -ēre, —, —, overhang, jut out

imperātor, -ōris, M., commander, general

imperitus, -a, -um, unskilled (in) (*with genitive*)

imperium, imperī, N., command, rule, chief power, control; reign; government

imperō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, command, rule; demand, levy

impetrō, āre, -āvi, -ātum, gain one's request, gain, accomplish, bring to pass

impetus, -ūs, M., attack, onset; vigor
importō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, carry in, import

imprōvisō, adv., unexpectedly

in, prep. w. acc., into, to, upon, against; *w. abl.,* in, on

incendō, -ere, -cendi, -censum, set fire to

incipiō, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptum, begin

incitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, urge on, incite, spur, rouse

incola, -ae, M., inhabitant

incolō, -ere, -ui, —, inhabit, dwell

incrēdibilis, -e, incredible

indūcō, -ere, -dūxi, -ductum, lead into, lead on, induce, prompt

inferior, -ius (comp. of inferus, below), lower; inferior

inferō, -ferre, intuli, illātum, bring in or on; **bellum inferre,** to bring war on (somebody, *dative*)

inflūō, -ere, inflūxi, inflūxum, empty, flow into

ingenium, ingenī, N., temper, disposition; talent

ingēns, gen. ingentis, vast, immense, huge

inimicus, -a, -um, unfriendly; *as noun, inimicus, -ī, M.,* enemy (*private or personal*)

initium, initi, N., beginning

iniūria, -ae, F., wrong, injustice, injury

inopia, -ae, F., want, scarcity

inopināns, gen. inopinantis, not expecting, off one's guard

inquam, defective verb, I say; inquit, says or said he; **inquiunt,** say they

insequor, -sequi, -secūtus sum, follow on, pursue

insignis, -e, distinguished, conspicuous; *as noun, insigne, -is, N.,* decoration, device; *pl.,* uniform, decorations

instituō, -ere, -ui, -ūtum, set up, establish, form; *ita institūtōs esse,* had been trained in such a manner

institūtum, -ī, N., custom, institution
instō, -āre, -stiti, -stāturus, press on or forward

instruō, -ere, -strūxi, -strūctum, draw up

insula, -ae, F., island

intellegō, -ere, -lēxi, lēctum, be aware, know, perceive

inter, *prep. w. acc.*, between, among; inter sē, from, with, *etc.*, each other or one another

intereā, *adv.*, meanwhile

interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, kill

interim, *adv.*, meanwhile

inveniō, -ire, -vēnī, -ventum, come upon, find

invidia, -ae, F., envy, jealousy

ipse, -a, -um, -self; ipsōrum linguā, in their own language; ab ipsius castris, from his own camp

irātus, -a, -um, angry, in a rage

irrupō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptum, break or burst or rush into

is, ea, id, that, this; *as per. pron.*, he, she, it; eius, his, hers, its; eōrum, their or theirs; is quī, he who, ea quae, she who; id quod, that which

iste, -a, -ud, that; that (of yours)

ita, *adv.*, thus, in this way, so, in such a manner

Italia, -ae, F., Italy

itaque, and so, therefore

item, *adv.*, in like manner

iter, itineris, N., journey, march, route; ex itinere, on the march; iter facere, to march; iter dare, to give a passage or right of way; magnum iter, a forced march

iterum, *adv.*, again

iubeō, -ēre, iussi, iussum, order (*with inf. and subj. acc.*)

iucundus, -a, -um, pleasing

iudicium, iudici, N., judgment, decision, trial; ante iudicium, before the trial

iugum, -ī, N., yoke; ridge (of a hill)

Iulius, Iūli, M., Julius, a Roman middle (or gentile) name, as in Gaius Julius Caesar

iungō, -ere, iūnxī, iunctum, join

Iura, -ae, M., the Jura, a mountain in Helvetia

iussū, M., defective noun, used only in the *abl.*, by order

iuvenis, -is, M., young man, youth
iuvō, -āre, -iūvi, iūtum, aid, help (*with acc.*)

L

L. = Lūcius

Labienus, -ī, M., Titus Labienus, a prominent officer in Caesar's army

Lacedaemonius, -a, -um, Lacedaemonian, Spartan; M. *pl.*, as noun, the Spartans

laccēsō, -ere, -ivi (ii), -itum, provoke, attack, harass

lacus, -ūs, M., lake

laetus, -a, -um, glad; sometimes *trans. as adv.*, gladly

largior, -iri, -itus sum, bribe

largitiō, -ōnis, F., bribery, lavish giving

Latinus, -a, -um, Latin; M. *pl.*, as noun, the Latins

latrō, -ōnis, M., robber, brigand

lātus, -a, -um, broad, wide

latus, -eris, N., side, flank; ab latere apertō, on the exposed flank

laudō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, praise

laus, laudis, F., praise

lēgatiō, -ōnis, F., embassy, mission

lēgātus, -ī, M., lieutenant; ambassador, envoy

legiō, -ōnis, F., legion, a division of the Roman army, varying in number from 3500 to 6000 infantry, with 300 cavalry

Lemannus, -ī, M., Leman; lacus Lemannus, Lake Leman or Geneva

lēnitās, -tātis, F., gentleness

lēx, legis, F., law

liber, -era, -erum, free; M. *pl.*, as noun (the free ones of a household), children

liberālītās, -tātis, F., generosity, liberality

liberō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, set free, free licet, licēre, licuit, *imper. vb.*, it is permitted; (one) may

Lingonēs, -um, M. *pl.*, the Lingones,

a people of Gaul, neighbors of the Haeduanus

lingua, -ae, F., tongue; language
littera, -ae, F., letter (*of the alphabet*);

pl., epistle, dispatch, letter

litus, -oris, N., shore

locus, -i, M., place, position; *pl.*, loca, -orum, N.

longē, *adv.*, far, by far

longius, *comp. of longē*

longus, -a, -um, long

loquor, -i, locūtus sum, speak

Lūcius, Lūci, M., Lucius, *a man's name*

lūna, -ae, F., moon

lupa, -ae, F., she-wolf

lūx, lūcis, F., flight; primā lūce, at dawn

M

magister, -tri, M., master, teacher

magnitūdō, -dinis, F., greatness, size, magnitude

magnopere, *adv.*, greatly

magnus, -a, -um, great, large; magnū iter, *see iter*

maior, maius, *comp. of magnus*; *as noun*, maiōres, -um, M. *pl.*, ancestors

malefīcium, malefīci, N., evil deed, harm, damage

mālō, mälle, mälui, *irreg. vb.*, prefer

malus, -a, -um, bad, wicked

mandō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, give over, intrust; sē mandāre, to give oneself up to

manēō, -ēre, mānsi, mānsūm, remain

manus, -ūs, F., hand; band, force

Mārcius, Mārci, M., Ancus Marcius, *fourth king of Rome*

Mārcus, -i, M., Marcus, *a man's name*

mare, maris, N., sea; mare medium, the Mediterranean Sea

Mārs, Mārtis, M., Mars, *the god of war*

māter, -tris, F., mother

mātrimōnium, mātrimōni, N., matrimony

Matrona, -ae, M., the Marne, *a river of Gaul*

mātūrē, *adv.*, early

mātūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, hasten

maximē (*superl. of magnopere*), very greatly, especially

maximus, *superl. of magnus*

mēcum = cum mē, with me

medius, -a, -um, middle

melior, -ius (*comp. of bonus*), better

memoria, -ae, F., memory; memoriā

tenēre, to remember

mēns, mentis, F., mind

mēnsis, -is, M., month

mercātor, -ōris, M., trader, merchant

meus, -a, -um, my, mine

miles, -itis, M., soldier

militāris, -e, military; rēs militāris,

the science of war, warfare

mille, *indecl. num. adj.*, thousand;

mille passūs, a mile; *pl.*, milia,

-ium, N.; milia passuum, miles

mirus, -a, -um, wonderful

mittō, -ere, misi, missum, send, hurl

moneō, -ēre, -ui, -itum, advise

mōns, montis, M., mountain

morior, mori, mortuus sum, die; *pf.*

part., mortuus, -a, -um, dead

moror, -āri, -ātus sum, linger, delay

mors, mortis, F., death

mortuus, -a, -um, *from morior*

mōs, mōris, M., custom; *pl.*, character

moveō, -ēre, mōvi, mōtum, move

multitūdō, -dinis, F., number, multitude

multus, -a, -um, much; *acc. multum*, *as adv.*, much, greatly; *abl. multō*,

by much, by far. *Pl.*, many

mūniō, -ire, -ivi, -itum, fortify

mūnitio, -ōnis, F., defence, fortification

mūrus, -i, M., wall

N

nam, *conj.*, for

nātūra, -ae, F., character, nature

nauta, -ae, M., sailor

nāvis, -is, F., ship

nē, *conj.*, not, that not, lest; *after verbs of fear*, that

-ne, *enclitic, question-word*

necessarius, -a, -um, needful, necessary; **tam necessariō tempore**, at a time of such need

negō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, say . . . not, deny

nēmō, —, M., no one (447, Note 1)

neque or **nec**, *conj.*, and not, nor;

neque . . . **neque**, neither . . . nor

neuter, -tra, -trum, neither (*of two*)

neve, *conj.*, and not, nor

nihil, *indecl. noun*, N., nothing

nisi, *conj.*, unless

nōbilis, -e, well-known, noble

nōbilitās, -tātis, F., nobility

noceō, -ēre, -ui, -itum, harm, injure (*with dative*)

nōlō, nolle, nōlui, *irreg. vb.*, be unwilling

nōmen, -minis, N., name

nōminō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, name, call

nōn, *adv.*, not

nōnāgintā, *indecl. num. adj.*, ninety

nōngenti, -ae, -a, nine hundred

nōnne, *interrog. adv.*, used in negative questions

nōnnūllus, -a, -um, some

nōnunquam, *adv.*, sometimes

nōnus, -a, -um, ninth

noster, -tra, -trum, our, ours; *as*

noun, **nostrī**, -ōrum, M. *pl.*, our men

novem, *indecl. num. adj.*, nine

novus, -a, -um, new; **novae rēs**, revolution; *superl.* **novissimus**, -a, -um, last, rear; **novissimum agmen**, the rear

nox, noctis, F., night; **ad multam noctem**, till late at night; **eā tōtā nocte**, that whole night long

nūbēs, -is, F., cloud

nūllus, -a, -um, not any, no, none

num, *interrog. adv.*, and *conj.*, suggesting the answer No, except in *ind. questions*, in which it means whether

Numa, -ae, M., Numa. See **Pompi-
lius**

numerus, -ī, M., number

Numitor, -ōris, M., Numitor, king of Alba Longa

numquam, never

nunc, now

nūntiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, report, announce

nūntius, nūnti, M., messenger; message

O

ob, *prep. w. acc.*, on account of

obses, -sidis, M., hostage

obtineō, -ēre, -ui, -tentum, hold, occupy, possess, gain

occidō, -ere, -cidi, -cisum, slay, kill

occisus, -a, -um, *pf. pass. part.* of **occidō**

occupō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, seize

occurrō, -ere, -curri, -cursum, run to meet, meet, encounter (*with the dative*)

Ōceanus, -ī, M., the (Atlantic) Ocean

octāvus, -a, -um, eighth

octō, *indecl. num. adj.*, eight

ōdī, **ōdisse**, *defective verb*, having only a perfect system, and with *pres. meaning*, hate

offendō, -ere, -i, **fēnsus**, hurt, offend

ōmen, -minis, N., sign, omen

ōlim, once, formerly

omninō, altogether; *with negatives*, at all

omnis, -e, all, every; N. *pl.*, **omnia**, everything

oportet, -ēre, -uit, *imper. vb.*, it is fitting or proper; (one) ought

oppidānus, -ī, M., townsman

oppidum, -ī, N., town

opprimō, -ere, -pressi, -pressum, overwhelm

oppugnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, besiege, attack

optimē (*superl. of bene*, well), best, very well, excellently

optimus, -a, -um (*superl. of bonus*), best, excellent

opus, operis, N., work

orbis, -is, M., circle; **orbis terrārum**, the whole world

Orgetorix, -rigis, M., Orgetorix, an ambitious Helvetian leader

orior, oriri, ortus sum, arise, spring

P

P. = Pūblius

parcō, -ere, peperci, parsum, spare
(with the dative)

pāreō, -ēre, -ui, —, obey (with the dative)

parō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, prepare

pars, partis, F., part, side, direction;
quās in partēs, in what direction;

magnā ex parte, in a great measure

parvus, -a, -um, small, little

passus, -ūs, M., pace (a double step);
mille passūs, a mile; milia passuum, miles

pāstor, -ōris, M., shepherd

pater, -tris, M., father

paternus, -a, -um, father's, paternal

patior, pati, passus sum, suffer, allow

patria, -ae, F., (one's) country, fatherland

pauci, -ae, -a, pl., few

paulum, adv., a little, somewhat

pāx, pācis, F., peace

pecūnia, -ae, F., money

pedes, peditis, M., foot-soldier

per, prep. w. acc., through, by means of; during (of time); over (mountains)

perdō, -ere, -didi, -ditum, lose

perducō, -ere, -dūxi, -ductum, lead through; run (a ditch or wall)

perfringō, -ere, -frēgi, -fractum, break through

perfugio, -ere, -fūgi, -fugitum, flee for refuge

periculōsus, -a, -um, dangerous

periculum, -i, N., danger

peritus, -a, -um, skilled (in) (with the genitive)

persuādēō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsum, persuade (with the dative)

perterreō, -ēre, -ui, -itum, frighten thoroughly, demoralize

pertineō, -ēre, ui, —, reach, extend; pertain, belong

perturbō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, throw into disorder, disturb

perveniō, -ire, -vēni, -ventum, arrive, come

pēs, pedis, M., foot

petō, -ere, -ivi (-iī), -itum, seek, beg, ask

phalanx, -angis, F., phalanx, a body of troops in solid formation

pilum, -i, N., javelin, spear

placeō, -ēre, -ui, -itum, please (with the dative)

plēbs, plēbis, F., populace, common people

plēnus, -a, -um, full

plūrimus, -a, -um, superl. of multus

plūs, gen. plūris, comp. of multus

Poeni, -ōrum, M. pl., the Carthaginians

poēta, -ae, M., poet

polliceor, -ēri, pollicitus sum, promise

Pompilius, Pompili, M., Numa Pompilius, second king of Rome

pōnō, -ere, posui, positum, place; castra pōnere, to pitch camp

pōns, pontis, M., bridge

populor, -āri, -ātus sum, devastate, lay waste

populus, -i, M., people

porta, -ae, F., gate

portō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, carry

poscō, -ere, poposci, —, demand

possum, posse, potui, irreg. vb., be able, can; plūrimus posse, to have very great power, be the most powerful

post, prep. w. acc., after; post expulsōs rēgēs, after the expulsion of the kings

postea, adv., afterwards

posterus, -a, -um, adj., following, next

postquam, conj., after

postulō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, demand

potēns, gen. potentis, powerful

potentia, -ae, F., power, influence

potestās, -tātis, F., power, authority

postridiē, adv., the next day; post-ridiē eius diēi, on the next day

potior, -iri, -itus sum, gain control, get possession of, obtain (with ablative)

prae, *prep. w. abl.*, before; in comparison with; on account of, for
praecēdō, -ere, -cessi, -cessum, surpass, excel
praecipio, -ere, -cāpi, -ceptum, instruct, direct (*with dative*)
praecipitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, throw headlong
praeda, -ae, F., booty, plunder
praedor, -āri, -ātus sum, plunder
praeficiō, -ere, -fēci, -fectum, put at the head or in charge of (*with accusative and dative*)
praemittō, -ere, -misi, -missum, send forward
praesentia, -ae, F., the present (time); in **praesentiā**, for the present
praesertim, especially; **praesertim cum**, especially as
praesidium, **praesidi**, N., guard, garrison, defence
praestō, -āre, -stiti, -stitum, stand ahead of, excel (*with dative*); perform (*a duty*); *imper. vō.*, **praestat**, it is better
praesum, -esse, -fui, be at the head or in charge of (*with dative*)
praeter, *prep. w. acc.*, besides, except, beyond
praeterea, *adv.*, besides, moreover
prex, **precis**, F. (*usually pl., no nom. sing., other cases in sing. rare*), prayer; **eōrum precibus adductus**, (because) prompted by their requests
primō, at first
primus, -a, -um, first; **primā lūce**, at daybreak
princeps, -cipis, M., chief, leader, leading man
Priscus, -i, M., Priscus or the Elder; *see Tarquinius*
pristinus, -a, -um, former, old-time
privō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, deprive
prō, *prep. w. abl.*, in front of, in defence of, for
prōcēdō, -ere, -cessi, -cessum, advance, proceed
proelium, **proeli**, N., battle
profectiō, -ōnis, F., departure

profisciscor, -i, **profectus sum**, set out, start
prohibeō, -ēre, -ui, -itum, keep away, keep out, prevent
prōiciō, -ere, **prōieci**, **prōiectum**, throw forward; **sē ad pedēs prōicere**, to throw oneself at (another's) feet
proinde, therefore
prope, *adv.*, nearly; *prep. w. acc.*, near
properō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, hasten
propinquus, -a, -um, near
propter, *prep. w. acc.*, on account of
prōspiciō, -ere, -spexi, -spectrum, look forward, look out or provide for (*with dative*)
prōsum, **prōdesse**, **prōfui**, **prōfuturus**, help (*with dative*)
prōvincia, -ae, F., province
proximus, -a, -um, nearest, next
prūdēns, *gen. prūdēntis*, foreseeing, prudent
puella, -ae, F., girl
puer, -i, M., boy
pueritia, -ae, F., boyhood
pugna, -ae, F., fight, battle
pugnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, fight
pulcher, -chra, -chrum, beautiful
Pūnicus, -a, -um, Punic, Carthaginian
putō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, think
Pyrēnaeus, -a, -um, Pyrenean;
Pyrēnaei montēs, the Pyrenees Mountains

Q

quā dē causā, *see qui*
quadrāgēsimus, -a, -um, fortieth
quadrāgintā, *indecl. num. adj.*, forty
quālis, -e, of what sort? what?
quam, *conj.*, than
quantus, -a, -um, how great, how large
quā rē (*or quārē*), wherefore, therefore
quārtus, -a, -um, fourth
quattuor, *indecl. num. adj.*, four
-que, *enclitic conj.*, and
queror, -i, **questus sum**, complain

quī, quae, quod, who, which, what;
 quā dē causā, for this reason
 quia, *conj.*, because
 quibuscum = cum quibus
 quidam, quaedam, quiddam or quod-
 dam, *indef. pron. and adj., gen.*
 cuiusdam, *dat.* cuidam, a certain
 person or thing, a certain
 quidem, *adv.*, indeed, at least
 quindecim, *indecl. num. adj.*, fifteen
 quingentesimus, -a, -um, five hun-
 dredth
 quingenti, -ae, -a, five hundred
 quinquagesimus -a, -um, fiftieth
 quinquaginta, *indecl. num. adj.*, fifty
 quinque, *indecl. num. adj.*, five
 quintus, -a, -um, fifth
 1. quis, quid, *interrog. pron.*, who?
 which? what?
 2. quis, quid, *indef. pron.*, any one,
 anything; si quis, if any one
 quisquam, quicquam (quidquam),
indef. pron., any one (at all), any-
 thing (at all)
 quisque, quidque, *indef. pron.*, each,
 each one
 quō, *adv. and conj.*, whither, where
 quod, *conj.*, because
 quoniam, *conj.*, since
 quoque, *adv.*, also, follows the word it
 emphasizes
 quot, *indecl. adj.*, how many?

R

rapina, -ae, F., plundering, robbery
 recens, *gen. recentis*, fresh, recent
 recipiō, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptum, take
 back, receive; sē recipere, to re-
 treat, recover
 reddō, -ere, reddidi, redditum, give
 back; render, make
 redeō, -ire, -ii, -itum, go back, return
 redintegrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, renew
 reditiō, -ōnis, F., return
 redūcō, -ere, -dūxi, -ductum, lead
 back
 referō, -ferre, rettuli, relātum, bear
 back, report; pedem referre, to fall
 back, retreat

refugiō, -ere, refūgi, —, flee back, es-
 cape, flee for safety
 regina, -ae, F., queen
 rēgnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, reign
 rēgnum, -i, N., royal power, sway,
 rule, kingdom
 regō, -ere, rēxi, rēctum, rule
 relinquo, -ere, reliqui, relictum,
 leave; *pass.* be left, remain
 reliquus, -a, -um, remaining, the rest
 of; in reliquum tempus, for the
 future
 remaneō, -ēre, -mānsi, -māsum, re-
 main behind
 removeō, -ēre, -mōvi, -mōtum, remove
 Remus, -i, M., Remus, brother of Rom-
 ulus
 renovō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, renew
 renūtiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, report,
 bring back word
 repentinus, -a, -um, sudden, unex-
 pected
 reperiō, -ire, repperi, repertum, find
 out, find
 repetō, -ere, -petivi (-ii), -petitum,
 demand, try to get back
 repōnō, -ere, -posui, -positum, replace
 res, rei, F., thing, affair, matter, cir-
 cumstance
 resistō, -ere, restiti, —, withstand,
 resist (*with the dative*)
 respondeō, -ēre, respondi, respōn-
 sum, reply, answer, respond
 respōnsum, -i, N., answer, reply
 restitūō, -ere, -ui, -tūtum, rebuild,
 restore
 revertō, -ere, reverti, reversum, turn
 back, return; generally *depon.* in
pres. system, revertor, reverti
 revocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, recall
 rēx, regis, M., king
 Rhēa Silvia, -ae, -ae, F., Rhea Silvia,
 mother of Romulus and Remus
 Rhēnus, -i, M., the Rhine
 Rhodanus, -i, M., the Rhone
 ripa, -ae, F., (river-) bank
 rogō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, ask
 Rōma, -ae, F., Rome
 Rōmānus, -a, -um, Roman; as noun,
 Rōmānus, -i, M., a Roman

Rōmulus, -i, M., Romulus, *founder and first king of Rome*
rūrsus, *adv.*, again
rūs, rūris, N., country, *as opposed to the city*

S

Sabinus, -a, -um, Sabine; *as noun*,
Sabini, -ōrum, M. *pl.*, the Sabines,
neighbors of Rome

saepe, often
salūs, -ūtis, F., safety
salūtō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, greet, salute
sanguis, -guinis, M., blood
sapientia, -ae, F., wisdom
sarcinae, -ārum, F. *pl.*, packs, luggage
satis, *adv.*, enough; *also used as noun*; **satis habeo**, *see habeo*
satisfaciō, -ere, -fēci, -factum, do enough, satisfy, make amends
saucius, -a, -um, wounded
scelus, sceleris, N., crime
sciō, -ire, -ivi, -itum, know
scribō, -ere, scripsi, scriptum, write
scūtum, -i, N., shield
sē, *see sui*
sēcum = cum sē
secundus, -a, -um, second; favorable
sed, but
semper, always
senātor, -ōris, M., senator
senātus, -ūs, M., senate
senex, senis, M., old man; *as adj.*, old
septem, *indecl. num. adj.*, seven
septendecim, *indecl. num. adj.*, seventeen
septimus, -a, -um, seventh
septingentesimus, -a, -um, seven hundredth
septingenti, -ae, -a, seven hundred
septuāgintā, *indecl. num. adj.*, seventy
sepultūra, -ae, F., burial
Sēquana, -ae, M., the Seine
Sēquani, -ōrum, M. *pl.*, the Sequani, *a people of Gaul, west of Helvetia*
sequor, sequi, secūtus sum, follow
Servius Tullius, Servi Tulli, M., Servius Tullius, *sixth king of Rome*
servō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, save, guard, keep

servus, -i, M., slave
sēsē, *see sui*
sex, *indecl. num. adj.*, six
sexāgintā, *indecl. num. adj.*, sixty
sextus, -a, -um, sixth
si, *conj.*, if
sic, *adv.*, so, thus
signum, -i, N., standard; signal
silva, -ae, F., forest
similis, -e, like
simul, *adv.*, at the same time
simulō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, pretend, feign
sine, *prep. w. abl.*, without
socius, soci, M., ally
sōl, sōlis, M., sun
sōlus, -a, -um, alone, only
speciēs, -ēi, F., sight, appearance, semblance
spatium, spati, N., distance, space, period
spērō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, hope, hope for
spēs, spei, F., hope
spoliō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, strip, despoil
statim, immediately, at once
statuō, -ere, -ui, -ūtum, establish; decide
statūra, -ae, F., stature, height
stō, stāre, steti, statum, stand
strēnuus, -a, -um, active, energetic
studeō, -ēre, -ui, —, be eager for (*with dative*); **novis rēbus studēre**, to be eager for a revolution
studium, studi, N., eagerness, zeal, enthusiasm
stultus, -a, -um, foolish
sub, *prep. w. acc.*, under, up to (*implying motion*); *w. abl.*, under (*implying position*); **sub monte**, at the foot of a mountain
subducō, -ere, -dūxi, -ductum, withdraw, lead up
subeō, -ire, -ii, -itum, undergo
subigō, -ere, -ēgi, -āctum, subdue
subitō, *adv.*, suddenly
sublevō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, support, relieve
subsidiū, subsidī, N., relief, aid; *pl.*, reinforcements

subsistō, -ere, -stiti, —, stand firm, hold (one's) ground
subveniō, -ire, -vēni, -ventum, come to the aid of (*with dative*)
succedō, -ere, -cessi, -cessum, come up, advance
suī, sibi, sē or sēsē, refl. pron., himself, herself, itself, themselves
sum, esse, fui, futūrus, irreg. vb., be
summoveō, -ere, -mōvi, -mōtum, drive back
summus, -a, -um (superl. of superus), highest, greatest, very great; **summus mōns**, the highest part of the mountain, mountain top
sūmō, -ere, sūmpsi, sūmptum, take, assume
super, prep. w. acc. or abl., over, above; **super ipsum corpus**, over (his) very body
superbus, -a, -um, proud, haughty; as a name, see **Tarquinius**
superior, -ius (comp. of superus), higher, upper
superō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, overcome, conquer; surpass
supersum, -esse, -fui, -futūrus, be over, be left, remain, survive
suppliciter, adv., humbly, as a suppliant
supplicium, supplicii, N., punishment
supportō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, carry or bring up
suscipio, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptum, undertake, take up, assume
suspiciō, -ōnis, F., suspicion
sustineō, -ere, -ui, -tentum, withstand, check; hold out
suus, -a, -um, his, her, its, or their (own); as noun, **suī, -ōrum, M. pl.**, his own men; **sua, -ōrum, N. pl.**, their possessions

T

tam, adv., so (*with adjs. and advs.*)
tamen, nevertheless, yet, still
Tanaquil, -quiliis, F., Tanaquil, wife of **Tarquinius Priscus**
tandem, at length

tantus, -a, -um, so great, so large, such
Tarquinius, Tarquini, M., Tarquin, name of the fifth and seventh kings of Rome, **Tarquinius Priscus** and **Tarquinius Superbus**
tēlum, -i, N., missile, dart, javelin
temperō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, refrain
tempestās, -tātis, F., storm, tempest
templum, -i, N., temple
tempus, -oris, N., time
teneō, -ere, -ui, tentum, hold, keep; **memoriā tenere**, to remember
terra, -ae, F., land, country, earth
terreo, -ere, -ui, territum, frighten, terrify
tertius, -a, -um, third
Tiberis, -is, M., the Tiber, the river on which Rome is situated
timeō, -ere, -ui, —, fear
timor, -oris, M., fear
tollō, -ere, sustuli, sublātum, raise; encourage, elate; take away, remove
tōtus, -a, -um, the whole of, entire
trādō, -ere, trādidi, trāditum, hand over, give up
trādūcō, -ere, -dūxi, -ductum, lead across, lead over
trāns, prep. w. acc., across, over
trānseō, -ire, -ii, -itum, cross, go over
trecenti, -ae, -a, three hundred
trēs, tria, three
triduum, -i, N., three days
trigintā, indecl. num. adj., thirty
triplex, -plicis, adj., triple; **aciēs triplex**, triple line of battle, the regular formation of the Roman army in making an attack. The ten cohorts composing each legion were arranged as follows: four cohorts in the first line, each at a cohort's length from its neighbor; behind the open spaces, a second line of three cohorts; then a third line of three cohorts, forming a reserve
tū, tuī, thou, you
tuba, -ae, F., trumpet
Tulingi, -ōrum, M. pl., the Tulingi, a German people, allies of the Helvetians

Tullia, -ae, F., Tullia, *daughter of Servius Tullius*

Tullius, *see Servius Tullius*

Tullus, Tulli, M., Tullus; *see Hostilius*

tum, then, at that time

turpitūdō, -dinis, F., disgrace

turris, -is, F., tower

tūtus, -a, -um, safe

tuus, -a, -um, thy, your

U

ubi, where, when

ūllus, -a, -um, any

ulterior, -ius, farther; **Gallia Ulterior**, farther Gaul, *beyond the Alps*

ūnā, *adv.*, together or along (with)

unde, whence, from which place

undeviginti, *indecl. num. adj.*, nineteen

undique, from or on all sides

ūnus, -a, -um, one

urbs, **urbis**, F., city

ut or **uti**, *conj.* (with *indic.*), as, when;

(with *subjv.*), that, in order that

(*purpose*), that, so that (*result*);

(*after verbs of fear*) that not

uter, **utra**, **utrum**, which (*of two*)?

uterque, **utroque**, **utrumque**, each (*of two*); *pl.*, both sides or parties

ūtor, **ūti**, **ūsus sum**, use, employ (*with ablative*)

utrimque, *adv.*, on both sides

uxor, -ōris, F., wife

V

vacō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, be unoccupied

vacuus, -a, -um, empty, destitute of, without

vadum, -i, N., ford, shallows

valeō, -ēre, -ui, **valitūrus**, be strong, prevail

vallum, -i, N., wall, earthworks, rampart

vāstō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, lay waste

vel, *conj.*, or

vēlōx, *gen. vēlōcis*, swift

venīō, -ire, **vēni**, **ventum**, come

vereor, -ēri, **veritus sum**, fear

vesper, -i, M., evening

vester, -tra, -trum, your

vetus, *gen. veteris*, old

vexō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, plunder, ravage

via, -ae, F., way, road, street, route

victor, -ōris, M., conqueror, victor

victōria, -ae, F., victory

victus, -a, -um, *from vincō*

vīcus, -i, M., village; street

videō, -ēre, **vidi**, **visum**, see; *pass.*, be seen, or as *deponent*, seem

vigilia, -ae, F., watch, *a fourth part of the night*; **dē tertiā (quartā) vigiliā**, in the third (fourth) watch

viginti, *indecl. num. adj.*, twenty

vincō, -ere, **vici**, **victum**, conquer

vinculum, -i, N., chain; *pl.*, prison

vir, -i, M., man

virēs, *see vis*

virtūs, -tūtis, F., manliness, valor, courage

vis, (**vis**), F., violence, force; *pl.* **virēs**, **virium**, strength

vīta, -ae, F., life

vītō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, shun, avoid

vivus, -a, -um, living, alive

vōbiscum = **cum vōbis**

vocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, call

volō, **velle**, **volui**, *irreg. vō.*, wish, be willing

vulnerō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, wound

vulnus, -neris, N., wound

vult, from **volō**

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

A

ae, possum, posse, potui
dē w. abl.
unce, cōpia, -ae, F.
plish, cōficiō, -ere, -fēcī,
um
ce, prōcēdō, -ere, -cessī, -ces-
, moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itum
rēs, reī, F.
(prep.), post *w. acc.*; *(conj.)*,
quam; *often implied by pf. pass.*

ards, postea
iterum; *rūrsus*
t, contrā *w. acc.*
xilium, auxiliī, N.
inis, omne
ocius, soci, M.
ē, ferē
y, iam
gh, cum *w. subjv.*
sador, lēgātus, -ī, M.
;, apud *or* inter *w. acc.*
us, Amūlius, Amūli, M.
;, -que; atque
irātus, -a, -um
nce, nūntiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum
ir, alius, -a, -ud
ie, anything, quis, quid
ch, appropinquō, -āre, -āvi,
n, w. dat.
anians, Aquitānī, -ōrum, M. *pl.*
arma, -ōrum, N. *pl.*
exercitus, -ūs, M.
l, adventus, -ūs, M.
,, perveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum
d or in and acc.
gō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum
(place), in *w. abl.*, *or locative*
, a; *(of time)*, *abl. alone*

attack (*noun*), impetus, -ūs, M.;
(verb), oppugnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum;
make an attack, impetum faciō,
-ere, fēcī, factum
attempt, cōnor, -ārī, cōnātus sum
avoid, vitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum
aware (be), intellegō, -ere, -lēxī,
-lēctum
away (be), absum, -esse, āfui,
āfutūrus; **away from**, ab *or* ā *w.*
abl.

B

bad, malus, -a, -um
baggage, impedimenta, -ōrum, N. *pl.*
band, manus, -ūs, F.
bank (river-), ripa, -ae, F.
battle, proelium, proelī, N.; **join**
battle, proelium committō, -ere,
-misi, -misum
be, sum, esse, fui, futūrus
bear, ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum
become, fiō, fieri, factus sum
before, ante *w. acc.*
beg, petō, -ere, petivī (-iī), -itum
begin, incipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum;
begin battle, *see battle* (join)
behalf of (in), prō *w. abl.*
best, superlative of good
betake oneself, cōnferō, -ferre, con-
tuli, collātum, w. reflex. pron.
between, inter *w. acc.*
better, compar. of good; **it is better**,
praestat (praestō, -āre, -stiti, -stitum)
bold, audāx, -ācis
boldness, audācia, -ae, F.
boldly, audācter
both . . . and, et . . . et
boundary, finis, finis, M.
boy, puer, -ī, M.
boyhood, pueritia, -ae, F.

brave, fortis, forte
bravely, fortiter
bravery, virtūs, -tūtis, F.
break (*camp*), moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtum
bridge, pōns, pontis, M.
bring, ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum; **bring up**, supportō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum; **bring war on**, bellum inferō *w. dat.*
Britain, Britannia, -ae, F.
broad, lātus, -a, -um
brother, frāter, -tris, M.
build, aedificō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum
but, sed
by (*agent*), ab or ā *w. abl.*, or (*w. pass. periphr. conj.*), *dat.*; (*means or instrument*), *abl. alone*; (*degree of difference*), *abl. alone*

C

Caesar, Caesar, -is, M.
call, vocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum; (*name*), appellō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum
camp, castra, -ōrum, N. *pl.*
can, *see able* (be)
capture, capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum; (*take by storm*), expugnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum
care, cūra, -ae, F.
carry, portō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum; **carry on**, gerō, gerere, gessi, gestum
cast, coniciō, -ere, conieci, coniectum
cause, causa, -ae, F.
cavalry (*noun*), equitātus, -ūs, M., or *pl. of eques, equitis, M.*; (*adjective*), equester, -tris, -tre
change, commutātiō, -ōnis, F.
check, sustineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum
chief, princeps, -cipis, M.
children, liberī, -ōrum, M. *pl.*
choose, delīgō, -ere, delēgi, -lēctum
citizen, cīvīs, cīvīs, M.
city, urbs, urbis, F.
cloud, nūbēs, nūbis, F.
collect, comparō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum
come, veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventum
command, imperō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *w. dat. and ut w. subjv.*; iubeō, -ēre, iussi, iussum, *w. acc. and inf.*

commander, imperātor, -ōris, M.
conceal, cēlō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum
concerning, *dē w. abl.*
confusion (*throw into*), perturbō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum
congratulate, grātulor, -ārī, grātulātus sum
conquer, vincō, -ere, vici, victum; superō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum
conspire, coniūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum
construct (*a wall or ditch*), perducō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum
consul, cōsul, -is, M.
contest, certāmen, -minis, N.
could, *see can*
country, terra, -ae, F.; (*native*), patria, -ae, F.; (*territory*), fines, -ium, M. *pl. or ager, agri, M.*; (*opposed to town*), rūs, rūris, N.
courage, virtūs, -tūtis, F.
cross, trānseō, -īre, -īi, -itum

D

danger, periculum, -ī, N.
dangerous, periculōsus, -a, -um
daring (*noun*), audācia, -ae, F.; (*adjective*), audāx, -ācis
daughter, filia, -ae, F.
day, diēs, diēi, M. (*rarely fem.*)
dear, cārus, -a, -um
death, mors, mortis, F.
decide, cōstituō, -ere, -stitui, -stitūtum
deep, altus, -a, -um
defend, dēfendō, -ere, -fendī, -fēnsus
defender, dēfēnsor, -ōris, M.
demand, postulō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum
demoralize, perterreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum
depart, discēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum
departure, discessus, -ūs, M.
deprive, privō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum
desire (*noun*), cupiditās, -tātis, F.; (*verb*), cupiō, -ere, -ivī, -itum
desirous, cupidus, -a, -um
destroy, dēlēō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum
die, morior, morī, mortuus sum
direction, pars, partis, F.
disadvantage, impedimentum, -ī, N.
discharge, mittō, -ere, misi, missum

disgrace, turpitūdō, -dinis, F.
disorder (throw into), *see* confusion
disposition, animus, -i, M.
ditch, fossa, -ae, F.
divide, dividō, -ere, -visi, -visum
do, faciō, -ere, feci, factum; *as auxiliary, sign of pres. tense*
down from, dē w. *abl.*
draw up, instruō, -ere, -struxi, -structum

E

each one, each, quisque, quaeque, quidque
each other, inter nōs or vōs or sē
eager, ācer, ācris, ācre; (*desirous*), cupidus, -a, -um; **be eager for**, studeō, -ēre, -uī, —, w. *dat.*
early, mātūrē
earth, terra, -ae, F.
easily, facile
easy, facilis, facile
eight, octō, *indeclinable*
either . . . or, aut . . . aut
elect, creō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum
end, finis, finis, M.
enemy, hostis, hostis, M., *usually pl.*; (*personal enemy*), inimicus, -i, M.
enervate, effeminō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum
enjoy, fruor, frui, fructus sum, w. *abl.*
envoy, lēgātus, -i, M.
especially, maximē
establish, cōfirmō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum
even, etiam
everything, omnia, omnium, N. *pl.*
excel, praestō, -āre, -stiti, -stitum w. *dat.*
exhausted, cōfectus, -a, -um
extend, pertineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum

F

face to face, adversus, -a, -um
famous, clārus, -a, -um
far (*by far*), multō; (*far away*), longē
father, pater, patris, M.
fatherland, patria, -ae, F.
fear (*noun*), timor, -ōris, M.; (*verb*), timeō, -ēre, uī, —; vereor, -ēri, veritus sum

few, pauci, -ae, -a
field, ager, agri, M.
fiercely, ācriter
fight (*noun*), pugna, -ae, F.; (*verb*), pugnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum
find, inveniō, -ire, -vēni, -ventum
fire, ignis, ignis, M.
first, primus, -a, -um; **at first**, primō
fitting (it is), oportet, -ēre, oportuit
five, quinque, *indeclinable*
flee, fugiō, -ere, -fūgi, -fugitum
fleet, classis, classis, F.
flight, fuga, -ae, F.; **put to flight**, in fugam dō, dare, dedi, datum; fugō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum
follow, sequor, sequi, secutus sum
foot, pēs, pedis, M.
for (*indirect obj.*), *dative*; (*of time*), *acc. of duration*; (*in defence of*), prō w. *abl.*
force (*band*), manus, -ūs, F.; **forces**, cōpiae, -ārum, F. *pl.*
forced march, magnum iter, magni itineris, N.
forest, silva, -ae, F.
former (*adjective*), pristinus, -a, -um; (*pronoun*), ille, -a, -ud
fortification, munitiō, -ōnis, F.
fortify, mūniō, -ire, -ivī, -itum
fortune, fortūna, -ae, F.
four, quattuor, *indeclinable*
fourth, quārtus, -a, -um
free (*adjective*), liber, -era, -erum; (*verb*), liberō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum
frequent, creber, -bra, -brum
friend, amicus, -i, M.
friendly, amicus, -a, -um
friendship, amicitia, -ae, F.
frighten, terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum; **thoroughly frighten**, perterreō
from, ab or ā w. *abl.*; (*out of*), ex or ē w. *abl.*; (*down from*), dē w. *abl.*

G

gain control, potior, -iri, potitus sum, w. *abl.*
Garonne, Garumna, -ae, M. or F.
garrison, praesidium, praesidi, N.
gate, porta, -ae, F.

Gaul (*country*), Gallia, -ae, F.; (*inhabitant*), Gallus, -i, M.

general, dux, ducis, M.; imperator, -ōris, M.

Germans, Germani, -ōrum, M. *pl.*

get possession, *see* gain control

girl, puella, -ae, F.

give, dō, dare, dedi, datum; **give up**, trādō, -ere, trādidī, trāditum; **give oneself up**, mandō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *w. reflex. pron.*

go, eō, ire, ii (ivī), itum; **go on** (*be carried on*), *pass. of* gerō, -ere, gessi, gestum; **going to**, *sign of fut. act. part.*; **go out**, exēō

god, deus, -i, M.

good, bonus, -a, -um

grain, frumentum, -i, N.; **grain supply**, rēs frumentaria, rei frumentariae, F.

great, magnus, -a, -um

greatest, *superl. of* great; summus, -a, -um

greatly, magnopere; multum

greatness, magnitūdō, -dinis, F.

Greece, Graecia, -ae, F.

guard, praesidium, praesidi, N.

H

Haedui, Haeduī, -ōrum, M. *pl.*

hand, manus, -ūs, F.

happen, fiō, fieri, factus sum; **it happens**, fit or accidit (accidō, -ere, accidit, —) *w. ut and subjv.*

harbor, portus, -ūs, M.

harm, noceō, -ēre, -ui, nocitum

hasten, contendō, -ere, -tendi, -tentum; **proper**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum

have, habeo, -ēre, -ui, -itum; **sum**, esse, fui, futurus *w. dat. of possessor*; *as auxiliary, sign of perf. tense*

he, *as subj. of verb, usually omitted*; is; hic; ille

head, caput, capitis, N.; **be at the head of**, praesum, -esse, -fui, -futurus *w. dat.*; **put at the head of**, praeficiō, -ere, -feci, -fectum, *w. acc. and dat.*

hear, audio, -ire, -ivi, -itum

help, auxilium, auxili, N.

Helvetians, Helvētī, -ōrum, M. *pl.*

high, altus, -a, -um

highest, *superl. of* high; (*greatest*), summus, -a, -um

hill, collis, collis, M.

himself (*reflex.*), sui; (*intens.*), ipse, -a, -um

hinder, impediō, -ire, -ivi, -itum

hindrance, impedimentum, -i, N.

his, eius (*gen. of is*) or suus, -a, -um (*reflex.*)

hither (*nearer*), citerior, citerius

hold, teneō, -ēre, -ui, tentum

home (*homeward*), domum (*pl. domos*); **at home**, domi; **from home**, domō

honor, honor, -ōris, M.

hope (*noun*), spēs, spei, F.; (*verb*), sperō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum

horse, equus, -i, M.

horseman, eques, equitis, M.

hostage, obses, obsidis, M.

hour, hōra, -ae, F.

house, domus, -ūs, F.

how great, quantus, -a, -um

hundred, centum, *indeclinable*

I

I, *as subj. of verb, usually omitted*; ego, *gen. mei*

if, si; **if not**, nisi

immediately, statim

impede, *see* hinder

import, importō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum

in (*of place*), in *w. abl., or locative* (569, a); (*of time*), *abl. alone*

infantry, peditatus, -ūs, M.

influence (*noun*), grātia, -ae, F.; auctoritās, -tātis, F.; (*verb*), adducō, -ere, -dūxi, -ductum; **have influence with**, valeō, -ēre, -ui, — *w. apud and acc.*

inform, certiōrem (*pl. certiōrēs*) faciō, -ere, feci, factum; *be informed*, certior (*pl. certiōrēs*) fiō, fieri, factus sum

injure, noceō, -ēre, -ui, nocitum, *w. dat.*

institution, institūtum, i, N.

into, in *w. acc.*
 island, insula, -ae, F.
 it, as *subj. of verb, usually omitted*;
 is, ea, id
 Italy, Italia, -ae, F.

J

javelin, pīlum, -ī, N.
 join, iungō, -ere, iūnxī, iūnctum; join
 battle, see under battle

K

keen, ācer, ācris, ācre
 keep (*from*), prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum;
 (*hold in*), contineō, -ēre, -uī, -ten-
 tum
 kill, interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum; oc-
 cidō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsum
 king, rēx, rēgis, M.
 kingdom, rēgnum, -ī, N.
 know, sciō, -īre, -īvī, -itum; *perf.*
system of cognōscō, -ere, cognōvī,
 cognitum; intellegō, -ere, -lēxī,
 -lēctum

L

Labiēnus, Labiēnus, -ī, M.
 lack, inopia, -ae, F.
 land, terra, -ae, F.; ager, agrī, M.;
 (*native*), patria, -ae, F.
 language, lingua, -ae, F.
 large, magnus, -a, -um
 latter, hic, haec, hoc
 law, lēx, lēgis, F.
 lay waste, vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
 lead, dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum; lead
 away, dēdūcō; lead back, redūcō;
 lead out, ēdūcō
 leader, dux, ducis, M.; princeps,
 -cipis, M.
 leave, relinquō, -ere, reliquī, -lictum;
 be left (*remaining*), supersum,
 -esse, -fui, -futurus
 legion, legiō, -ōnis, F.
 letter, epistula, -ae, F.
 lieutenant, lēgātus, -ī, M.
 life, vīta, -ae, F.
 light, lūx, lūcis, F.
 like, similis, simile

line of battle, aciēs, aciēī, F.
 linger, moror, -ārī, -ātus sum
 little, parvus, -a, -um; (*by a little*),
 paulō
 long, longus, -a, -um; for a long
 time, diū
 lose, perdō, -ere, perdidī, perditum
 love (*noun*), amor, -ōris, M.; (*verb*),
 amō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
 low, humilis, humile

M

make, faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum; make
 an attack, impetum faciō; (*render*),
 reddō, -ere, reddidī, redditum
 man (*opposed to woman*), vir, virī, M.;
 (*human being*), homō, -inis, M.;
 our men, nostrī, -ōrum, M. *pl.*
 many, *pl. of multus*, -a, -um; how
 many, quot, *indeclinable*
 march (*noun*), iter, itineris, N.; (*verb*),
 iter faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum
 Marcus, Mārcus, -ī, M.
 Mars, Mārs, Mārtis, M.
 may (*it is permitted*), licet, -ēre,
 licuit; as *auxiliary, sign of pres.*
subj. in purpose clauses
 meanwhile, interim; intereā
 meet, occurrō, -ere, occurri, occursum
w. dat.
 merchant, mercātor, -ōris, M.
 messenger, nūntius, nūntī, M.
 might, as *auxiliary, sign of impf. subj.*
in purpose clauses
 mile, mille passūs; miles, milia pas-
 sum
 military, militāris, militāre
 mind (*disposition*), animus, -ī, M.
 misfortune, cāsus, -ūs, M.
 missile, tēlum, -ī, N.
 money, pecūnia, -ae, F.
 mountain, mōns, montis, M.
 move, moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtum
 much, multus, -a, -um; (*adverb*),
 multum
 multitude, multitūdō, -dinis, F.
 must, as *auxiliary, sign of the pass.*
periphr. conj.
 my, meus (*voc. sing. mī*), mea, meum

N

name, nōmen, -minis, N.
narrow, angustus, -a, -um
native-land, *see* land
nature, nātūra, -ae, F.
near, propinquus, -a, -um, *w. dat.*
nearest, proximus, -a, -um, *w. dat.*
neighboring, finitimus, -a, -um
neither . . . nor, neque (nec) . . .
 neque (nec)
nevertheless, tamen
new, novus, -a, -um
next (*following*), posterus, -a, -um;
 (*nearest*), proximus, -a, -um
night, nox, noctis, F.
nine, novem, *indeclinable*
ninth, nōnus, -a, -um
no (*not any*), nullus, -a, -um; **no one**,
 nobody, nēmō, —, M. (*447, Note 1*)
nor, neque or nec; *see* **neither**
not, nōn; *negative of purpose*, nē; *in*
questions, nōnne
nothing, nihil, *indeclinable*
now, nunc; (*already*), iam
number, numerus, -i, M.
Numitor, Numitor, -ōris, M.

O

obey, pāreō, -ēre, -uī, —, *w. dat.*
off (*be, be distant*), absum, -esse,
 āfui, āfutūrus
often, saepe
old, vetus, *gen. veteris*
on (*of place*), in *w. abl.*; (*of time*),
abl. alone
one, ūnus, -a, -um; **one another**, *see*
each other; **one** . . . **another**,
 alius . . . alius; **the one** . . . **the**
other, alter . . . alter
open, apertus, -a, -um
opportunity, facultās, -tātis, F.
or, aut; *see* **either**
order, iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussum *w. acc.*
and inf.; *in order that*, ut *w. subjv.*;
in order that not, nē *w. subjv.*
other (*the*), alter, -era, -erum; *see* **one**
ought, dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum; oportet,
 ēre, oportuit

our, noster, -tra, -trum; **our men**,
 nostri, -ōrum, M. *pl.*
out of, ex or ē *w. abl.*
overcome, superō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum
owe, dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum
own (*his, her, etc.*), suus, -a, -um

P

part, pars, partis, F.
pass (*time*), agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum;
pass the winter, hiemō, -āre, -āvi,
 -ātum
peace, pāx, pācis, F.
people, populus, -i, M.
perceive, animum advertō, -ere,
 -verti, -versum or animadvertō,
 etc.
permitted (*it is*), licet, -ēre, licuit
persuade, persuādeō, -ēre, -suāsī,
 -suāsum *w. dat.*, or *w. dat. and ut*
w. subjv.
pitch (*camp*), pōnō, -ere, posuī, posi-
 tum
place, locus, -i, M., *but pl. loca*, -ōrum,
 N.
plan, cōsiliū, cōsiliī, N.
please, placeō, -ēre, -uī, placitum, *w.*
dat.
pleasing, grātus, -a, -um; *be pleas-*
ing, see please
poet, poēta, -ae, M.
popularity, grātia, -ae, F.
position, *see* **place**
power (*royal*), rēgnum, -i, N.
powerful, potēns, *gen. potentis*
praise (*noun*), laus, laudis, F.; (*verb*),
 laudō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum
prefer, mālō, mālle, mālui
prepare, parare for, parō, -āre, -āvi,
 -ātum
prevent, prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum
prison, vincula, -ōrum, N. *pl.*
prisoner, captivus, -i, M.
procure, comparō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum
protection, fidēs, fideī, F.
province, prōvincia, -ae, F.
purpose of (*for the*), ut or *rel. w. pres.*
or impf. subjv.; ad *w. acc. of gerund*
or gerundive; gen. of gerund or

gerundive w. causā; acc. supine (after verbs of motion)
push on, contendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentum
put in charge or at the head of, praeficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *w. acc. and dat.*
put to death, see kill
put to flight, see flight

Q

queen, regīna, -ae, F.
quickly, celeriter
quickness, celeritās, -tātis, F.

R

race, gēns, gentis, F.
rampart, vallum, -ī, N.
rear, novissimum agmen, novissimī agminis, N.
recall, revocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
receive, accipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum
recent, recēns, *gen. recentis*
refrain, temperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
relief, subsidium, subsidī, N., *often plural*
remain, maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsūm
remaining (rest of), reliquus, -a, -um
remember, memoriā teneō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum
Remus, Remus, -ī, M.
render, reddō, -ere, reddidī, redditum
renew, redintegrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum;
 renovō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
reply, respondeō, -ēre, -spondī, -spōnsum
report, nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
resist, resistō, -ere, restitī, —, *w. dat.*
result (the result is), fit; **(the result was)**, factum est *w. ut and subj.*
retreat, recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum
w. reflex. pron.; pedem referō, -ferre, rettuli, relātum
return (noun), reditiō, -ōnis, F.; **(verb)**, redeō, -īre, rediī, reditum;
 revertor, -ī, reversus sum *(in perf. system preferably revertī, reversum)*
revolution, novae rēs, novārum rērum, F. *pl.*

Rhea Silvia, Rhēa Silvīa, -ae -ae, F.
Rhine, Rhēnus, -ī, M.
river, flūmen, -minis, N.
road, via, viae, F.
robber, latrō, -ōnis, M.
Roman (adjective), Rōmānus, -a, -um;
(noun), Rōmānus, -ī, M.
Rome, Rōma, -ae, F.
Romulus, Rōmulus, -ī, M.
rout, fugō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
route, iter, itineris, N.
royal power, rēgnum, -ī, N.
rule, regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctum

S

safe, tūtus, -a, -um
safety, salūs, -ūtis, F.
sailor, nauta, -ae, M.
sake of (for the), causā *after gen.*
same, idem, eadem, idem
save, servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
say, dicō, -ere, dixī, dictum
scout, explorātor, -ōris, M.
sea, mare, maris, N.
see, videō, -ēre, vidī, visum
seek, petō, -ere, petivī (-ī), petitum
seize, occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
senate, senātus, -ūs, M.
senator, senātor, -ōris, M.
send, mittō, -ere, misī, missum; **send forward**, praemittō
separate, dividō, -ere, divisī, divisum
Sequani, Sēquani, -ōrum, M. *pl.*
set fire to, incendō, -ere, -cendi, -cēnsūm
set out, proficiscor, proficiscī, profectus sum
seven, septem, *indeclinable*
seventh, septimus, -a, -um
severe, gravis, grave
sharp, ācer, āeris, ācre
sharply, ācriter
she, as subj. of verb, usually not expressed; ea; haec; illa
shepherd, pāstor, -ōris, M.
shield, scūtum, -ī, N.
ship, nāvis, nāvis, F.
short, brevis, breve; **in a short time**, brevī
show, dēmōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum

sack *aggr.* gra-grum
 sight *aspectus*, -ūs, M.
 signal *signum*, -i, N.
 slave *sum w. subj.*
 six *sex indeclinable*
 size *magnitudo*, -dinis, F.
 skilled *peritus*, -a, -um, *w. gen.*
 slaughter *caedes*, *caedis*, F.
 slave *servus*, -i, M.
 small *parvus*, -a, -um
 so *before adjectives and adverbs*,
 -um; *before verbs*, ita or sic; so
 great *tantus*, -a, -um; so that *(of*
verbs), ut and so that not *(of*
verbs), ut nōn *w. subj.*
 soldier *miles*, *militis*, M.
 some *nōnnullus*, -a, -um; some
 others *alii* . . . *alii*
 son *filius*, *filii*, M.
 spare *parco*, -ere, *peperci*, *parsum*,
w. lat.
 speak *loquor*, *loqui*, *locutus sum*
 speed *celeritas*, -tātis, F.
 speedily *celeriter*
 state *civitas*, -tātis, F.
 storm *tempestas*, -tātis, F.; take by
 storm *expugno*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum
 strength *virēs*, *virium*, F. *pl.*
 strengthen *cōfirmō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum
 strong (be) *valeō*, -ēre, -uī, —; pos-
 sum, *posse*, *potuī*, —
 suddenly *subitō*
 suitable *idōneus*, -a, -um
 summer *aestas*, -tātis, F.
 sun *sōl*, *sōlis*, M.
 supply *cōpia*, -ae, F.; supplies,
commēatus, -ūs, M.; grain supply,
see grain
 surpass, *see excel*
 surrender (*verb*) *dēdō*, -ere, *dēdidi*,
dēditum, *w. reflex. pron.*; (*noun*),
dēditio, -ōnis, F.
 surround *circumveniō*, -ire, -vēni,
 -ventum
 survive *supersum*, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus
 suspicion *suspiciō*, -ōnis, F.
 sustain *sustineō*, -ēre, -uī, -tentum
 swift *celer*, *celeris*, *celere*
 swift *celeriter*
 sword *gladius*, *gladii*, M.

T

take *capiō*, -ere, *cēpi*, *captum*; take
 by storm *expugno*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum
 tall *altus*, -a, -um
 tell *dicō*, -ere, *dixi*, *dictum*
 ten *decem*, *indeclinable*
 tenth *decimus*, -a, -um
 terrify *perterreō*, -ēre, -uī, -itum
 territory *finēs*, -ium, M. *pl.*
 than *quam* or *abl. of comparison*
 that (*demon. pron.*), *ille*, -a, -ud; is,
 ea, id; (*of purpose or result*), ut;
 (*after verbs of fear*), *nē*; (*after*
verbs of saying), *omitted*; that not
 (*of purpose*), *nē*; (*of result*), ut *nōn*;
 (*after verbs of fear*), ut
 their *eōrum*, *cārum*, *eōrum*, or *suus*,
 -a, -um
 them, *see they*
 themselves, *see himself*
 then, *tum*
 there (*in that place*), *ibi*; (*to that*
place), *eō*; in there is, there was,
 etc., *omitted*
 therefore, *itaque*
 they, *as subj. of verb, usually omitted*;
pl. of is, ea, id; *see he*
 thing, *rēs*, *rei*, F.; *often expressed by*
neut. of adjectives and pronouns (64)
 think *putō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum; *exis-*
timō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum
 third, *tertius*, -a, -um
 this, *hic*, *haec*, *hoc*; is, ea, id
 thousand, *mille*, *indeclinable*, but *pl.*
milia, *miliū*, N.
 three, *trēs*, *tria*
 through, *per w. acc.*
 throw *iaciō*, -ere, *iēcī*, *iactum*; *coni-*
ciō, -ere, *coniēcī*, *coniectum*; throw
 into disorder, *perturbō*, -āre, -āvi,
 -ātum
 time, *tempus*, -poris, N.
 tired, *dēfessus*, -a, -um
 to (*indirect obj.*), *dat.*; (*of motion*),
 ad or in *w. acc.*; (*of purpose*), ut *w.*
subj. etc. (*see purpose of*)
 towards, ad *w. acc.*
 tower, *turris*, *turris*, F.
 town, *oppidum*, -i, N.

townsman, oppidānus, -ī, M.
tree, arbor, -oris, F.
troops, cōpiae, -ārum, F. *pl.*
trumpet, tuba, -ae, F.
trust, cōfidō, -ere, cōfīsus sum
 (page 166, footnote 2), *w. dat.*
try, expior, -īri, expertus sum
two, duo, duae, duo
two hundred, ducentī, -ae, -a

U

under, sub *w. acc. or abl.*
undergo, subeō, -ire, -īi, -itum
understand, intellegō, -ere, -lēxi, -lēc-
 tum
unexpectedly, subitō; imprōvisō
unless, nisi
unlike, dissimilis, dissimile
unwilling (be), nōlō, nōlle, nōlui
urge, hortor, -āri, hortātus sum; co-
 hortor; **urge on**, incitō, -āre, -āvi,
 -ātum
use, ūtor, ūti, ūsus sum, *w. abl.*

V

valor, virtūs, -tūtis, F.
very (before adjectives and adverbs),
 expressed by superlative
victory, victōria, -ae, F.
village, vicus, -ī, M.
voice, vōx, vōcis, F.

W

wage, gerō, -ere, gessi, gestum
wall, mŭrus, -ī, M.
wander, errō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum
want, inopia, -ae, F.
war (noun), bellum, -ī, N.; (*verb*),
 bellō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum
waste (lay), vāstō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum
watch, vigilia, -ae, F.
water, aqua, -ae, F.
we, as *subj. of verb, usually omitted*;
 nōs, *gen. nostrum or nostri*
weapon, telum, -ī, N.
well, bene
what (interrog. pron.), quid? (*rel.*
pron.) = that which, id quod

when, cum *usually w. subjv.*; ut or
 ubi *w. indic.*; often implied in *par-*
ticiples
where, ubi
whether, num or -ne
while, dum; often implied in *pres.*
part.
whither, quō
who (interrog. pron.), quis? (*rel.*
pron.), quī, quae
whole, tōtus, -a, -um
why, cūr
wide, lātus, -a, -um
wife, uxor, -ōris, F.
will, as auxiliary, sign of fut. tense
willing (be), volō, velle, volui
wing (of an army), cornū, -ūs, N.
winter (noun), hiems, hiemis, F.;
 (*verb*), hiemō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum;
winter-quarters, hiberna, -ōrum
 N. *pl.*
wisdom, sapientia, -ae, F.
wish, see willing (be); not wish,
 see unwilling (be)
with (of means or instrument), *abl.*
alone; (*of accompaniment or man-*
ner), cum *w. abl.*
withdraw, pedem referō, -ferre, ret-
 tuli, relātum; discēdō, -ere, -cessi,
 -cessum
within (of time), *abl. alone*
without, sine *w. abl.*
withstand, sustineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum
work (noun), opus, operis, N.; (*verb*),
 labōrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum
worn out, dēfessus, -a, -um
wound (noun), vulnus, -neris, N.;
 (*verb*), vulnerō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum
wrong, iniūria, -ae, F.

Y

year, annus, -ī, M.
yet (nevertheless), tamen
you, as subj. of verb, usually omitted;
 tū, *gen. tuī, pl. vōs, gen. vestrum or*
vestri

Z

zeal, studium, studi, N.

INDEX

The references are to sections. Figures in parentheses refer to Part III. Topics not introduced in Part II are indicated by asterisks.

Ablative case :

- absolute, 424-426, (565-568)
- of accompaniment, 113, (560)
- of agent, 127, (556)
- of cause, 233, (557)
- of comparison, 251, (559)
- of degree of difference, 252, (563)
- of description, 231, (564)
- of manner, 263, (561)
- of means or instrument, 98, (562)
- of names of persons, 80, c
- of place whence, 110, (555)
- of place where, 81(3), (569)
- of quality, 231, (564)
- of separation, 327, (554)
- of specification, 253, (558)
- of time, 204, (570)
- with *ex* or *dē* instead of the part.
gen., 229, (533, a)
- with *ūtor*, etc., 432, (562, a)

accent, 19, a, 24-29, 155

accusative and ablative compared, 110

accusative case :

- of direct object, 6, c, 50 (Rule 4),
(545)
- of extent, 203, (548)
- of place to which, 110, (549)
- predicate, 189, (547)
- subj. of infinitive, 186, 187, (550)
- supine, 433, (653)

ad and *in* compared, 110, a

adjectives :

- agreement, 61, 62 (Rule 6), (526)
- comparison, 237-239, 242, 243
- declension, 212-226
- possessive, 284
- predicate, 62, 189, (526, 547, a)
- trans. of com. and sup., 240, (574-576)

used as nouns, 64, (572)

with dative, 205, (544)

with genitive, 261, (536)

adverbs :

- comparison, 257, 258
- formation, 255, 256
- agent and instrument distinguished,
127
- analysis, 37
- apposition, 121(2), (527)
- augury, Note preceding 275

Base, 48

Clauses, 303-305

- participles stand for, 422, (633, 637)
- principal and subordinate, 305,
(593)

substantive, defined, 303, 352

word order in subordinate, 306

* commands, (599, 602)

complex sentence, 503, 593

in ind. discourse, 504, (665, 666)

compound sentence, 593

conditions, 499-501, (625-627)

conjugation, 8

conjugations distinguished, 42, *see*
verbs

consonantal i, 22, Note

consonant sounds, 22

consonant stems, 164

cum, conj., 377, (620-624)

cum, prep., as enclitic, 283, (b, 592),
see abl. of accompaniment and of
manner

Dative case :

- general force, (537)
- of agent, 442, (542, 651)

- Dative case — *Continued*
 of ind. object, 81(1), 280, 412, (538-540)
 of possessor, 325, (541)
 of purpose, 366, (543)
 with adjectives, 205, (544)
 with compound verbs, 412, (539, III, 540)
 with intrans. verbs, 280, (539, II)
 declension, 5
 declensions:
 first, 49, 152, 153
 second, 54, 154-158
 third, 136, 162-183
 fourth, 192-194
 fifth, 196-198
 diphthongs, 21
 direct questions, 392, (594-598)
- Emphasis, 71
 enclitics, 29
 English derivatives, 18(5), *passim*
 * exhortations, (602)
- Fear*, verbs of, 497, (616)
 finite verb, 14
 fut. pass. participle, 438, (650)
 formation, 408, B
- Gender, 7
 first declension, 55, I, 153
 second declension, 55, II, 155
 third declension, 181, I, II, III
 fourth declension, 194
 fifth declension, 198
- genitive case:
 objective, 261, (535, 536)
 of description, 231, (534)
 of possession, 50 (Rule 5), (532)
 of quality, 231, (534)
 partitive, 229, (533)
- gerund and gerundive, 458-461, (640-646)
 formation of gerund, 361, C
 formation of gerundive, 408, B
- Historical present, 11, a, 77
- Identity, principle of, 121(1 and 2)
 idioms, 506
imperō, construction of, 353, (612, a)
- imperfect and perfect compared, 15,
 footnote, 106
 impersonal verbs, 245, Note
 in with acc. and abl. distinguished,
 111
 increasing and not-increasing nouns,
 172
 indirect discourse:
 * commands, (663)
 complex sentences, 504, (665)
 summary, (666)
 questions, *see indirect questions*
 simple statements, 472-480, (657-662)
 indirect questions, 397-399, (628, 629)
 infinitive, 13, (630)
 as subject, 390, (631)
 complementary, 187, (632, 1)
 in ind. discourse, tenses, 480, (662)
 subject-accusative, 186, 187, (550)
 with subj.-accusative as obj., 186,
 265, (632, 2)
 inflection, 3, 18, 4
inter sē, translation of, 403, a, (590)
-iō verbs of third conj., 97
*i-*stems verbs of third declension, 168,
 175
iubeō, construction of, 265, (612, a,
 632, 2)
- Locative case, 153, Note 1, 155, Note
 1, (569, a)
 Lord's prayer in Latin, 30
- Mille passūs milia passuum**, 201,
 202
 miscellaneous matter, 521-523
 mixed stems, 175
 mood, 10
 myths, 208, Note
- Nē**:
 after verbs of *fear*, 497, (616)
 in purpose clauses, 341, 353, (611,
 612)
 * with subjv. in independent uses,
 (602, 603)
 -ne, enclitic, 29
 in direct questions, 44, 392, (596)
 in indirect questions, 398(1), (629, 1)

nēmō, defective noun, 447, footnote 1
neuters in *-e*, *-al*, and *-ar*, 171, 172, *a*
neuter words, nom. and acc. of, 56
nominative case:

forms in third decl., 183
of per. prons., usually omitted, 302,
footnote, (578)
pred. adjective, 62 (Rule 6), (526,
547, *b*)
pred. noun, 6, *a*, 50 (Rule 2), 121(1),
(527, 530, 547, *b*)
subject, 6, *a*, 50 (Rule 1), (529)

nōnne, in questions, 392, (597)

num:

in direct questions, 392, (598)
in indirect questions, 398(1), (629,
1)

numerals, 267-271

table of, 523

Object:

direct, *see accusative case*
indirect, *see dative case*

omens, 208, Note, Note preceding 275

Paradigm, 5, *a*

paradigms, use of, 73

participles:

ablative absolute, 424-426, (565-568)
agreement, 132, (526)
declension, 132, 226, 362
equivalent to clauses, 422, (633)
formation: pres. and fut. act., 361, B,
perf. and fut. pass., 408, B
perf. act. missing, 426, (636)
tenses, 418, (634)
translation, 422, (637)

parts of speech, 1, 18, 2

penult, important syllable in accent, 28
perf. and imperf. tenses compared, 15,
footnote, 106

perfect stem, how found, 103
perf. system, indic. act., 102; pass.,
131

periphrastic conjugations, 437-440,
(647-651)

personal endings, 33, 299, 301, 385

prepositions, cases with, 109, (591)

present stem, how found, 43

present system, indicative, 92

principal parts, 93

prohibitions, (600, 600, *a*)

pronouns:

classified, 282

declension: **aliquis**, etc., 297, *b*;

ego, **tū**, 283; **hic**, **ille**, **ipse**, 288;

is, **idem**, 290; **mei**, **tui**, **sui**, 285;

qui, 294; **quis**, 295, 297

summary, 292

syntax, 307-312, (577-590)

pronunciation, 19-30

pugnātum est, trans. of, 245, Note

purpose expressions:

ad with acc. of gerund or gerundive,

460(1), 461, (646(3))

dative of nouns, 366, (543)

gen. of gerund or gerundive with

causā, 460(2), 461, (646(2))

relative clause, 365, (613)

reviewed, 435

substantive clause, 353, (612)

supine in *-um*, 433, (653)

ut or **nē** with subjv., 341, 353, (611,
612)

Quam after comparatives, 250

quantity, 20

-que, enclitic, 29

translation, 245, Note

questions, *see direct and indirect ques-*
tions

Result and purpose distinguished, 375,
(614, *a*)

result clauses:

pure, 375, (614)

substantive, 469, (615)

Sequence of tenses, 399, (607-609)

stem and ending of verbs, 32

stems of nouns:

first declension, 152, *a*

second declension, 154, *a*

third declension, 164, 168, 175

fourth declension, 192, *a*

fifth declension, 196, *a*

subject, 6, *a*

and predicate, 2

of finite verb, 50 (Rule 1), (529)

of infinitive, 186, 187, (550)

- subjunctive, 10
 English and Latin compared, 332
 formation: pres., 336; impf., 338:
 perf. and plup. act., 345; perf. and
 plup. pass., 394
 * independent uses, (600, a-603)
 * optative, (601(2), 603)
 volitive, 341, 353, 365, (601(1), 602,
 611-613)
 substantive clauses, defined, 303, 352
 after verbs of *fear*, 497, (616)
 indirect questions, 397-399, (628,
 629)
 of purpose (volitive), 353, (612)
 of result, 469, (615)
sum, verb of identity, 121(1)
 compounds, 446 and *a*
 conjugation, 117, 370-372
 supines, formation, 361, D
 * use of abl., (654)
 use of acc., 433, (653)
 supplementary reading, 507-520
 supplementary syntax, 495-505
suus and **eius** distinguished, 309,
 (583)
 syllables, 24-28
 syntax, meaning of, 6

 Table, device for verb drill, 323
 temporal clauses, 495, (617-619)
 tense, meaning of, 11
 tenses, names and force, 11
 primary and secondary, 340, 399,
 (605, 606)
 tense signs, 34
 indic. pres. and impf., 34; fut., 34, 90,
 96, *c*; perf., plup., and fut. perf., 140
 subjunctive, 334
 tense systems, 92
 translating, instructions for, 141
 method illustrated, 74

Ut, four uses of, 495, *a* (617, *a*)
 * **utinam**, (603)
utor, etc., with abl., 432, (562, *a*)

 Verbals, 13
 verbs:
 agreement, 50 (Rule 3), 150(3) and
 Note, (525)
 deponent, 146, 414, 415
 semi-deponent, 411, footnote 2 on
 p. 106
 finite, 14
 impersonal, 245, Note
 intransitive, 6 *d*, 279
 irregular, 444-455
 of identity, 121(1)
 of *saying* and *thinking*, 476, (656)
 periphrastic conjugations, 437-440,
 (647-651)
 regular conjugations:
 ACT. indic., 320, 321; subjv., 331,
 343; impv., 344; completed,
 360
 PASS. indic., 384, 387; subjv. and
 impv., 394, 395; completed,
 407
 transitive, 6, *d*
 vocabulary, meaning of, 57
 voice, 9

 Word list (503 words), 489
 word order, 18(3), 63, 681-7, 85, 122,
 306
 words, phrases, mottoes, etc., 521

THE following pages contain advertisements of a
few of the Macmillan books on kindred subjects

N

name, nōmen, -minis, N.
narrow, angustus, -a, -um
native-land, *see* land
nature, nātūra, -ae, F.
near, propinquus, -a, -um, *w. dat.*
nearest, proximus, -a, -um, *w. dat.*
neighboring, finitimus, -a, -um
neither . . . nor, neque (nec) . . .
 neque (nec)
nevertheless, tamen
new, novus, -a, -um
next (*following*), posterus, -a, -um;
 (*nearest*), proximus, -a, -um
night, nox, noctis, F.
nine, novem, *indeclinable*
ninth, nōnus, -a, -um
no (*not any*), nūllus, -a, -um; **no one**,
 nobody, nēmō, —, M. (447, *Note 1*)
nor, neque or nec; *see* **neither**
not, nōn; *negative of purpose*, nē; *in*
 questions, nōnne
nothing, nihil, *indeclinable*
now, nunc; (*already*), iam
number, numerus, -i, M.
Numitor, Numitor, -ōris, M.

O

obey, pāreō, -ēre, -uī, —, *w. dat.*
off (*be, be distant*), absum, -esse,
 āfui, āfutūrus
often, saepe
old, vetus, *gen. veteris*
on (*of place*), in *w. abl.*; (*of time*),
 abl. alone
one, ūnus, -a, -um; **one another**, *see*
 each other; **one . . . another**,
 alius . . . alius; **the one . . . the**
 other, alter . . . alter
open, apertus, -a, -um
opportunity, facultās, -tātis, F.
or, aut; *see* **either**
order, iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussum *w. acc.*
 and inf.; *in order that*, ut *w. subjv.*;
 in order that not, nē *w. subjv.*
other (*the*), alter, -era, -erum; *see* **one**
ought, dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum; oportet,
 ēre, oportuit

our, noster, -tra, -trum; **our men**,
 nostri, -ōrum, M. *pl.*
out of, ex or ē *w. abl.*
overcome, superō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum
owe, dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum
own (*his, her, etc.*), suus, -a, -um

P

part, pars, partis, F.
pass (*time*), agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum;
pass the winter, hiemō, -āre, -āvi,
 -ātum
peace, pāx, pācis, F.
people, populus, -i, M.
perceive, animum advertō, -ere,
 -verti, -versum or animadvertō,
 etc.
permitted (*it is*), licet, -ēre, licuit
persuade, persuādeō, -ēre, -suāsī,
 -suāsum *w. dat.*, or *w. dat. and ut*
 w. subjv.
pitch (*camp*), pōnō, -ere, posuī, posi-
 tum
place, locus, -i, M., *but pl. loca*, -ōrum,
 N.
plan, cōnsilium, cōnsili, N.
please, placeō, -ēre, -uī, placitum, *w.*
 dat.
pleasing, grātus, -a, -um; **be pleas-**
 ing, *see* **please**
poet, poēta, -ae, M.
popularity, grātia, -ae, F.
position, *see* **place**
power (*royal*), rēgnum, -i, N.
powerful, potēns, *gen. potentis*
praise (*noun*), laus, laudis, F.; (*verb*),
 laudō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum
prefer, mālō, mälle, mālui
prepare, prepare for, parō, -āre, -āvi,
 -ātum
prevent, prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum
prison, vincula, -ōrum, N. *pl.*
prisoner, captivus, -i, M.
procure, comparō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum
protection, fidēs, fidei, F.
province, prōvincia, -ae, F.
purpose of (*for the*), ut or *rel. w. pres.*
 or *impf. subjv.*; *ad w. acc. of gerund*
 or *gerundive*; *gen. of gerund or*

gerundive w. causā; acc. supine (after verbs of motion)
push on, contendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentum
put in charge or at the head of, praeficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *w. acc. and dat.*
put to death, see kill
put to flight, see flight

Q

queen, regina, -ae, F.
quickly, celeriter
quickness, celeritās, -tātis, F.

R

race, gēns, gentis, F.
rampart, vāllum, -ī, N.
rear, novissimum agmen, novissimī agminis, N.
recall, revocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
receive, accipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum
recent, recēns, *gen. recentis*
refrain, temperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
relief, subsidium, subsidī, N., *often plural*
remain, maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsūm
remaining (rest of), reliquus, -a, -um
remember, memoriā teneō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum
Remus, Remus, -ī, M.
render, reddō, -ere, reddidī, redditum
renew, redintegrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum;
 renovō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
reply, respondeō, -ēre, -spondī, -spōnsum
report, nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
resist, resistō, -ere, restitī, —, *w. dat.*
result (the result is), fit; **(the result was)**, factum est *w. ut and subj.*
retreat, recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum
w. reflex. pron.; pedem referō, -ferre, rettuli, relātum
return (noun), reditiō, -ōnis, F.; **(verb)**, redeō, -īre, rediī, reditum;
 revertor, -ī, reversus sum *(in perf. system preferably revertī, reversum)*
revolution, novae rēs, novārum rērum, F. *pl.*

Rhea Silvia, Rhēa Silvia, -ae -ae, F.
Rhine, Rhēnus, -ī, M.
river, flūmen, -minis, N.
road, via, viac, F.
robber, latrō, -ōnis, M.
Roman (adjective), Rōmānus, -a, -um;
(noun), Rōmānus, -ī, M.
Rome, Rōma, -ae, F.
Romulus, Rōmulus, -ī, M.
rout, fugō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
route, iter, itineris, N.
royal power, rēgnum, -ī, N.
rule, regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctum

S

safe, tūtus, -a, -um
safety, salūs, -ūtis, F.
sailor, nauta, -ae, M.
sake of (for the), causā *after gen.*
same, idem, eadem, idem
save, servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
say, dicō, -ere, dixī, dictum
scout, explorātor, -ōris, M.
sea, mare, maris, N.
see, videō, -ēre, vidi, visum
seek, petō, -ere, petivī (-ī), petitum
seize, occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
senate, senātus, -ūs, M.
senator, senātor, -ōris, M.
send, mittō, -ere, misi, missum; **send forward**, praemittō
separate, dividō, -ere, divisi, divisum
Sequani, Sēquanī, -ōrum, M. *pl.*
set fire to, incendō, -ere, -cendi, -cēsum
set out, proficiscor, proficisci, profectus sum
seven, septem, *indeclinable*
seventh, septimus, -a, -um
severe, gravis, grave
sharp, ācer, ācris, ācre
sharply, ācriter
she, as subj. of verb, usually not expressed; ea; haec; illa
shepherd, pāstor, -ōris, M.
shield, scūtum, -ī, N.
ship, nāvis, nāvis, F.
short, brevis, breve; **in a short time**, brevī
show, dēmōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum

sick, aeger, -gra, -grum
 sight, conspectus, -ūs, M.
 signal, signum, -ī, N.
 since, cum *w. subjv.*
 six, sex, *indeclinable*
 size, magnitūdō, -dinis, F.
 skilled (*in*), peritus, -a, -um, *w. gen.*
 slaughter, caedēs, caedis, F.
 slave, servus, -ī, M.
 small, parvus, -a, -um
 so (*before adjectives and adverbs*),
 tam; (*before verbs*), ita or sic; so
 great, tantus, -a, -um; so that (*of*
result), ut and so that not (*of*
result), ut nōn *w. subjv.*
 soldier, miles, militis, M.
 some, nōnnūllus, -a, -um; some
 . . . others, alii . . . alii
 son, filius, fili, M.
 spare, parcō, -ere, peperci, parsum,
w. dat.
 speak, loquor, loquī, locūtus sum
 speed, celeritās, -tātis, F.
 speedily, celeriter
 state, civitās, -tātis, F.
 storm, tempestās, -tātis, F.; take by
 storm, expugnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum
 strength, virēs, virium, F. *pl.*
 strengthen, cōfirmō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum
 strong (be), valeō, -ēre, -uī, —; pos-
 sum, posse, potui, —
 suddenly, subitō
 suitable, idōneus, -a, -um
 summer, aestās, -tātis, F.
 sun, sōl, sōlis, M.
 supply, cōpia, -ae, F.; supplies,
 commeātus, -ūs, M.; grain supply,
see grain
 surpass, *see excel*
 surrender (*verb*), dēdō, -ere, dēdidī,
 dēditum, *w. reflex. pron.; (noun)*,
 dēditō, -ōnis, F.
 surround, circumveniō, -īre, -vēni,
 -ventum
 survive, supersum, -esse, -fui, -futūrus
 suspicion, suspiciō, -ōnis, F.
 sustain, sustineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum
 swift, celer, celeris, celere
 swiftly, celeriter
 sword, gladius, gladi, M.

T

take, capiō, -ere, cēpi, captum; take
 by storm, expugnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum
 tall, altus, -a, -um
 tell, dicō, -ere, dixi, dictum
 ten, decem, *indeclinable*
 tenth, decimus, -a, -um
 terrify, perterreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum
 territory, finēs, -ium, M. *pl.*
 than, quam or abl. *of comparison*
 that (*demon. pron.*), ille, -a, -ud; is,
 ea, id; (*of purpose or result*), ut;
 (*after verbs of fear*), nē; (*after*
verbs of saying), omitted; that not
 (*of purpose*), nē; (*of result*), ut nōn;
 (*after verbs of fear*), ut
 their, eōrum, eārum, eōrum, or suus,
 -a, -um
 them, *see they*
 themselves, *see himself*
 then, tum
 there (*in that place*), ibi; (*to that*
place), eō; in there is, there was,
 etc., omitted
 therefore, itaque
 they, as *subj. of verb, usually omitted*;
pl. of is, ea, id; see he
 thing, rēs, rei, F.; often expressed by
neut. of adjectives and pronouns (64)
 think, putō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum; exis-
 timō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum
 third, tertius, -a, -um
 this, hic, haec, hoc; is, ea, id
 thousand, mille, *indeclinable, but pl.*
 milia, millium, N.
 three, trēs, tria
 through, per *w. acc.*
 throw, iaciō, -ere, iēcī, iactum; coni-
 ciō, -ere, coniēcī, coniectum; throw
 into disorder, perturbō, -āre, -āvi,
 -ātum
 time, tempus, -poris, N.
 tired, dēfessus, -a, -um
 to (*indirect obj.*), dat.; (*of motion*),
 ad or in *w. acc.*; (*of purpose*), ut *w.*
subjv. etc. (*see purpose of*)
 towards, ad *w. acc.*
 tower, turris, turris, F.
 town, oppidum, -ī, N.

townsman, oppidānus, -ī, M.
 tree, arbor, -oris, F.
 troops, cōpiae, -ārum, F. *pl.*
 trumpet, tuba, -ae, F.
 trust, cōfidō, -ere, cōfīsus sum
 (*page 166, footnote 2*), *w. dat.*
 try, experior, -īri, expertus sum
 two, duo, duae, duo
 two hundred, ducentī, -ae, -a

U

under, sub *w. acc. or abl.*
 undergo, subeō, -īre, -īi, -itum
 understand, intellegō, -ere, -lēxi, -lēc-
 tum
 unexpectedly, subitō; imprōvisō
 unless, nisi
 unlike, dissimilis, dissimile
 unwilling (be), nōlō, nōlle, nōlūi
 urge, hortor, -āri, hortātus sum; co-
 hortor; urge on, incitō, -āre, -āvi,
 -ātum
 use, ūtor, ūti, ūsus sum, *w. abl.*

V

valor, virtūs, -tūtis, F.
 very (*before adjectives and adverbs*),
 expressed by superlative
 victory, victōria, -ae, F.
 village, vicus, -ī, M.
 voice, vōx, vōcis, F.

W

wage, gerō, -ere, gessi, gestum
 wall, mūrus, -ī, M.
 wander, errō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum
 want, inopia, -ae, F.
 war (*noun*), bellum, -ī, N.; (*verb*),
 bellō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum
 waste (lay), vāstō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum
 watch, vigilia, -ae, F.
 water, aqua, -ae, F.
 we, as *subj. of verb, usually omitted*;
 nōs, *gen. nostrum* or *nostrī*
 weapon, tēlum, -ī, N.
 well, bene
 what (*interrog. pron.*), quid? (*rel.*
pron.) = that which, id quod

when, cum *usually w. subj.*; ut or
 ubi *w. indic.*; often implied in *partic-
 iples*
 where, ubi
 whether, num or -ne
 while, dum; often implied in *pres.*
part.
 whither, quō
 who (*interrog. pron.*), quis? (*rel.*
pron.), quī, quae
 whole, tōtus, -a, -um
 why, cūr
 wide, lātus, -a, -um
 wife, uxor, -ōris, F.
 will, as *auxiliary, sign of fut. tense*
 willing (be), volō, velle, volūi
 wing (*of an army*), cornū, -ūs, N.
 winter (*noun*), hiems, hiemis, F.;
 (*verb*), hiemō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum;
 winter-quarters, hiberna, -ōrum
 N. *pl.*
 wisdom, sapientia, -ae, F.
 wish, see willing (be); not wish,
 see unwilling (be)
 with (*of means or instrument*), *abl.*
 alone; (*of accompaniment or man-
 ner*), cum *w. abl.*
 withdraw, pedem referō, -ferre, ret-
 tulī, relātum; discēdō, -ere, -cessī,
 -cessum
 within (*of time*), *abl. alone*
 without, sine *w. abl.*
 withstand, sustineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum
 work (*noun*), opus, operis, N.; (*verb*),
 labōrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum
 worn out, dēfessus, -a, -um
 wound (*noun*), vulnus, -neris, N.;
 (*verb*), vulnerō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum
 wrong, iniūria, -ae, F.

Y

year, annus, -ī, M.
 yet (*nevertheless*), tamen
 you, as *subj. of verb, usually omitted*;
 tū, *gen. tuī, pl. vōs, gen. vestrum* or
 vestri

Z

zeal, studium, studi, N.

.

INDEX

The references are to sections. Figures in parentheses refer to Part III. Topics not introduced in Part II are indicated by asterisks.

Ablative case :

- absolute, 424-426, (565-568)
 - of accompaniment, 113, (560)
 - of agent, 127, (556)
 - of cause, 233, (557)
 - of comparison, 251, (559)
 - of degree of difference, 252, (563)
 - of description, 231, (564)
 - of manner, 263, (561)
 - of means or instrument, 98, (562)
 - of names of persons, 80, c
 - of place whence, 110, (555)
 - of place where, 81(3), (569)
 - of quality, 231, (564)
 - of separation, 327, (554)
 - of specification, 253, (558)
 - of time, 204, (570)
 - with *ex* or *dē* instead of the part.
gen., 229, (533, a)
 - with *ūtor*, etc., 432, (562, a)
- accent, 19, a, 24-29, 155
- accusative and ablative compared, 110
- accusative case :
- of direct object, 6, c, 50 (Rule 4), (545)
 - of extent, 203, (548)
 - of place to which, 110, (549)
 - predicate, 189, (547)
 - subj. of infinitive, 186, 187, (550)
 - supine, 433, (653)
- ad* and *in* compared, 110, a
- adjectives :
- agreement, 61, 62 (Rule 6), (526)
 - comparison, 237-239, 242, 243
 - declension, 212-226
 - possessive, 284
 - predicate, 62, 189, (526, 547, a)
 - trans. of com. and sup., 240, (574-576)

- used as nouns, 64, (572)
 - with dative, 205, (544)
 - with genitive, 261, (536)
- adverbs :
- comparison, 257, 258
 - formation, 255, 256
- agent and instrument distinguished, 127
- analysis, 37
- apposition, 121(2), (527)
- augury, Note preceding 275

Base, 48

Clauses, 303-305

- participles stand for, 422, (633, 637)
 - principal and subordinate, 305, (593)
 - substantive, defined, 303, 352
 - word order in subordinate, 306
- * commands, (599, 602)
- complex sentence, 503, 593
- in ind. discourse, 504, (665, 666)
- compound sentence, 593
- conditions, 499-501, (625-627)
- conjugation, 8
- conjugations distinguished, 42, *see verbs*
- consonantal i, 22, Note
- consonant sounds, 22
- consonant stems, 164
- cum*, conj., 377, (620-624)
- cum*, prep., as enclitic, 283, (b, 592), *see abl. of accompaniment and of manner*
- Dative case :
- general force, (537)
 - of agent, 442, (542, 651)

- Dative case — *Continued*
 of ind. object, 81(1), 280, 412, (538-540)
 of possessor, 325, (541)
 of purpose, 366, (543)
 with adjectives, 205, (544)
 with compound verbs, 412, (539, III, 540)
 with intrans. verbs, 280, (539, II)
 declension, 5
 declensions:
 first, 49, 152, 153
 second, 54, 154-158
 third, 136, 162-183
 fourth, 192-194
 fifth, 196-198
 diphthongs, 21
 direct questions, 392, (594-598)
- Emphasis, 71
 enclitics, 29
 English derivatives, 18(5), *passim*
 * exhortations, (602)
- Fear*, verbs of, 497, (616)
 finite verb, 14
 fut. pass. participle, 438, (650)
 formation, 408, B
- Gender, 7
 first declension, 55, I, 153
 second declension, 55, II, 155
 third declension, 181, I, II, III
 fourth declension, 194
 fifth declension, 198
- genitive case:
 objective, 261, (535, 536)
 of description, 231, (534)
 of possession, 50 (Rule 5), (532)
 of quality, 231, (534)
 partitive, 229, (533)
- gerund and gerundive, 458-461, (640-646)
 formation of gerund, 361, C
 formation of gerundive, 408, B
- Historical present, 11, a, 77
- Identity, principle of, 121(1 and 2)
 idioms, 506
imperō, construction of, 353, (612, a)
- imperfect and perfect compared, 15,
 footnote, 106
 impersonal verbs, 245, Note
in with acc. and abl. distinguished,
 111
 increasing and not-increasing nouns,
 172
 indirect discourse:
 * commands, (663)
 complex sentences, 504, (665)
 summary, (666)
 questions, *see indirect questions*
 simple statements, 472-480, (657-662)
 indirect questions, 397-399, (628, 629)
 infinitive, 13, (630)
 as subject, 390, (631)
 complementary, 187, (632, 1)
 in ind. discourse, tenses, 480, (662)
 subject-accusative, 186, 187, (550)
 with subj.-accusative as obj., 186,
 265, (632, 2)
 inflection, 3, 18, 4
inter sē, translation of, 403, a, (590)
-iō verbs of third conj., 97
*i-*stems verbs of third declension, 168,
 175
iubeō, construction of, 265, (612, a,
 632, 2)
- Locative case, 153, Note 1, 155, Note
 1, (569, a)
 Lord's prayer in Latin, 30
- Mille passūs milia passuum*, 201,
 202
 miscellaneous matter, 521-523
 mixed stems, 175
 mood, 10
 myths, 208, Note
- Nē*:
 after verbs of *fear*, 497, (616)
 in purpose clauses, 341, 353, (611,
 612)
 * with subjv. in independent uses,
 (602, 603)
-ne, enclitic, 29
 in direct questions, 44, 392, (596)
 in indirect questions, 398(1), (629, I)

nēmō, defective noun, 447, footnote 1
neuters in -e, -al, and -ar, 171, 172, *a*
neuter words, nom. and acc. of, 56

nominative case:

forms in third decl., 183

of per. pron., usually omitted, 302,
footnote, (578)

pred. adjective, 62 (Rule 6), (526,
547, *b*)

pred. noun, 6, *a*, 50 (Rule 2), 121(1),
(527, 530, 547, *b*)

subject, 6, *a*, 50 (Rule 1), (529)

nōne, in questions, 392, (597)

num:

in direct questions, 392, (598)

in indirect questions, 398(I), (629,
I)

numerals, 267-271

table of, 523

Object:

direct, *see accusative case*

indirect, *see dative case*

omens, 208, Note, Note preceding 275

Paradigm, 5, *a*

paradigms, use of, 73

participles:

ablative absolute, 424-426, (565-568)

agreement, 132, (526)

declension, 132, 226, 362

equivalent to clauses, 422, (633)

formation: pres. and fut. act., 361, B,
perf. and fut. pass., 408, B

perf. act. missing, 426, (636)

tenses, 418, (634)

translation, 422, (637)

parts of speech, 1, 18, 2

penult, important syllable in accent, 28

perf. and imperf. tenses compared, 15,

footnote, 106

perfect stem, how found, 103

perf. system, indic. act., 102; pass.,
131

periphrastic conjugations, 437-440,
(647-651)

personal endings, 33, 299, 301, 385

prepositions, cases with, 109, (591)

present stem, how found, 43

present system, indicative, 92

principal parts, 93

prohibitions, (600, 600, *a*)

pronouns:

classified, 282

declension: *aliquis*, etc., 297, *b*;

ego, *tū*, 283; *hic*, *ille*, *ipse*, 288;

is, *idem*, 290; *mei*, *tui*, *sui*, 285;

qui, 294; *quis*, 295, 297

summary, 292

syntax, 307-312, (577-590)

pronunciation, 19-30

pugnātum est, trans. of, 245, Note

purpose expressions:

ad with acc. of gerund or gerundive,

460(1), 461, (646(3))

dative of nouns, 366, (543)

gen. of gerund or gerundive with

causā, 460(2), 461, (646(2))

relative clause, 365, (613)

reviewed, 435

substantive clause, 353, (612)

supine in -um, 433, (653)

ut or **nē** with subjv., 341, 353, (611,
612)

Quam after comparatives, 250

quantity, 20

-que, enclitic, 29

translation, 245, Note

questions, *see direct and indirect ques-*
tions

Result and purpose distinguished, 375,
(614, *a*)

result clauses:

pure, 375, (614)

substantive, 469, (615)

Sequence of tenses, 399, (607-609)

stem and ending of verbs, 32

stems of nouns:

first declension, 152, *a*

second declension, 154, *a*

third declension, 164, 168, 175

fourth declension, 192, *a*

fifth declension, 196, *a*

subject, 6, *a*

and predicate, 2

of finite verb, 50 (Rule 1), (529)

of infinitive, 186, 187, (550)





—



To avoid fine, this book should be returned on
or before the date last stamped below

10M-6.40

--	--	--

475
T92

Tx
475.2
T927

Funstall,
The Latin

NAME

DATE

10M-9-40-58772

LIBRARY, SCHOOL OF EDUCATION, STANFORD
597601

